TRAVELS

IN

SOUTHERN AFRICA,

In the Years 1803, 1804, 1805, and 1806,

BY

HENRY LICHTENSTEIN,

Doctor in Medicine and Philosophy, and Professor of Natural History in the University of Berlin; Member of several Learned Societies; and Formerly in the Dutch Service at the Cape of Good Hope.

TRANSLATED FROM THE ORIGINAL GERMAN,

BY

ANNE PLUMPTRE.

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR HENRY COLBURN,

ENGLISH AND FOREIGN PUBLIC LIBRARY, CONDUIT-STREET;

GEORGE GOLDIE, EDINBURGH; AND JOHN CUMMING, DUBLIN.

1812.
The first Part of my Travels in Southern Africa is here presented to the public. It does not appear without considerable apprehensions on my part, from a conviction that the book is far from being as perfect as I could wish; but I also cannot help entertaining a confident hope that it contains much matter which will be found of real utility; in any case, I can safely affirm that it has been compiled with the greatest care, and with a strict regard to truth. I consider the latter quality so much as the first requisite in a book of travels, that I rest my highest claim to public favour upon this ground, and desire nothing so much as that the reader may take the work into his hand with the firmest reliance upon my veracity. Deeply impressed with this idea, it was once my intention that a principal object in my Preface should be to speak of myself, in hopes that by making the reader acquainted with my modes of thinking, and my manner of observing things, as well as by giving a short sketch of my history, I might obtain the confidence I wish. It is, however, so difficult for any one to form a just judgment of himself, and concealed vanity is so apt to appear obliquely through all our efforts to preserve an appearance of modesty and humility, that upon mature consideration I determined rather to leave my friends and my book to speak for me. I rest then in the hope that my endeavours to make them partakers in my own firm and inward conviction, upon the various matters on which I treat, will not be mistaken.

I have for the same reason avoided all attempts to embellish my descriptions, lest they might endanger the throwing an improper shade over the whole of the picture; though I am ready to acknowledge that some external ornaments arranged with taste might have rendered the whole more agreeable and attractive. My Travels may therefore possibly be thought barren.
PREFACE.

of rare adventures and extraordinary occurrences; but if so, this advantage will be derived from it, that the few which are recorded will appear the more striking. The charm, however, derived from such descriptions, particularly if the writer in his manner of giving them derives much assistance from his own fancy, must, to sensible minds, be of little value, in comparison with endeavours to detail the simple truth in a clear, natural, and easy style. In my own case it has cost me the less to sacrifice imagination to truth, since I am not by nature desirous of coming forward as the hero of strange and romantic adventures.

I am well aware that this barrenness of ornament is not without its disadvantages. He who would seek to represent every thing in its most natural colours, divested as much as possible of whatever approaches to the marvellous, and who is desirous that this should be fully understood by his readers, will find himself sometimes constrained to enter into minute details nearly allied to prolixity. But too much conciseness has always to a certain degree the appearance of want of sincerity, as if by the hasty manner in which the subject is treated, the writer hopes the more effectually to escape detection. Besides, in compiling my work, it was not to German, or even to European readers alone that I wished to address myself; I had equally in view the rendering my labours useful to citizens of Africa, and to future travellers in the southern parts of that vast peninsula. I was the more desirous of this, from finding the little attention that had been paid to such objects by my predecessors both in the route that I travelled, and in the reports given of their travels. Their sole object in their publications seems to have been to make them entertaining to their own countrymen, or, at the utmost, to their cotemporaries in general;—they seem never to have thought of rendering them useful to the travelling part of the community. Thence it happens that each one in succession has found great fault with his immediate precursor, and indeed too often not undeservedly. Le Caille and Menzel are severe upon Kolbe, Sparrman criticises Le Caille and Menzel, and Le Vaillant comes under the censures of Mr. Barrow. For myself I must confess that the descriptions of the two latter, partly given without sufficient impartiality, partly too much loaded with ornament, have had a considerable influence upon the form which I have given to my work, earnestly desirous as I was of avoiding former failures.
Perhaps the above sketch of my views in the present publication may serve in some measure as my justification for not having combated with a more determined resolution my inclination to give it to the world; for having ventured, notwithstanding the many works already written upon Southern Africa, and very generally read, to hazard the writing another, nay, to offer it as a better than any preceding one. I can indeed truly say, that this inclination originated less in considerations that merely concerned myself, than in a variety of extraneous motives. I may besides call upon Aristotle and Pliny, as well as upon Sparrman, who next to them has spoken the most forcibly upon the subject, as vouchers that something new, and well worthy our attention, relating to Africa, is constantly rising, and will long continue to rise.

Almost every traveller takes a different view of things according to the colouring they receive from his peculiar turn of thinking, or from the particular circumstances under which they were seen by him. One overlooks what makes a deep impression upon another; to one opportunities are presented of obtaining information, of entering into investigations, which never occur to another. I was the earlier, during my travels in Africa, impressed with a desire of communicating my remarks to the world, from comparing the notices already given, with the information I had been enabled to obtain, and finding the one so little in conformity with the other. With this desire was soon combined the determination to strike into a new path, from that pursued by my precursors. It was never my idea to give the public a mere detail of the occurrences that happened during my travels; I wished to give a regular description of the country, as to its topography, political situation, natural history, and ethnography; above all, I was anxious to give what has hitherto been entirely neglected, a general history of the colony.

For this purpose I began early to collect materials for such a work, and the kindness of friends in power supported me in it not a little. A very favourable opportunity of travelling through the country was to my no small satisfaction soon presented me; and I had but just returned from my first journey, in which I obtained no inconsiderable stock of important information, when the means were unexpectedly afforded of greatly improving and increasing my stores. The renewal of the war gave a totally different aspect to our
situation at the Cape, and occasioned a great revolution in my destiny. Soon after my return from my second excursion I was appointed Army Physician, and in that capacity shared in an expedition, which carried me farther up the country than I had ever before dreamt of penetrating even in my most sanguine moments. During this excursion I was inspired with the idea of greatly enlarging the plan of my work, and two additional short excursions, united with the campaign against the English in 1806, put me in possession of as ample and extensive a knowledge of the country as I could desire.

I returned to Holland in the train of General Janssens, and even in the same ship. The Commissary-general De Mist returned the year before, and had in the interim been revising and arranging his observations upon his journey. When my intentions were made known to him, he in the most obliging manner lent me his manuscript, and permitted me the free use of any materials which it contained. I availed myself largely of this permission, not however following his plan, but true to my old ideas, I separated the narrative part from the descriptive, intending that this latter should be first made public, that the reader might be entirely at home upon the theatre of action before the detail of occurrences upon it was to begin. A considerable progress was made in the work according to this plan, when the advice of some very able literary judges, combined with several other circumstances, occasioned a change in my purpose, and determined me to give the precedence to the narrative part, preparing the reader by that for the descriptive. The first volume was soon completed after this idea, and I must confess with gratitude that the Commissary-general’s manuscript assisted me exceedingly in the compilation. A part only of his remarks are, however, here employed; the remainder are reserved till I come to my description of the country, where they will be more appropriate, and will not interrupt the narrative. That many things have concurred since the completion of this volume in the summer of 1809 to retard its publication till the present moment I cannot very much lament, since it is now published under circumstances peculiarly gratifying to me.

Notwithstanding all my endeavours at compressing the work, I have found it impossible to include the whole of my first journey in one volume, without making it unreasonably thick, and it is therefore broken off at the end
of the third part. It may not perhaps be amiss here to give a sketch, for the benefit of those who may purchase this first volume, of what is to be expected in the succeeding ones.

The second volume will contain six parts, commencing with our return from Graaff-Reynett to the Cape Town, which forms the fourth part of the work. In the fifth will be given a sketch of a botanical journey to Zwel lendam and the neighbouring country. The sixth and seventh parts will include the journey to the newly visited tribes of the Beetjuans, in which will be given an ample description of that people, as well as of the Bosjesmans, and other tribes of Hottentot savages. The eighth part will contain a solitary excursion to the borders of the Roggeveld; and the ninth a journey to Bosjiesveld and Tulbagh, with the contests which occurred during the campaign against the English, and our return to Europe.

The remainder of the work will be devoted to giving a systematic description of Southern Africa from Cape Agulhas to the district of the Steinbock, including all such observations as I have reserved in order to avoid splitting upon the same rock as my precursors, and interrupting too often the course of the narrative. Here will moreover be given all that concerns the most important object of the work, the correcting whatever has been erroneously represented by other writers. If the task may be invidious, I yet do not know how to dispense with myself from performing it, desirous as I am to give all possible amplitude and accuracy to the descriptive part of the work.

This division will be preceded by an introduction, in which will be given a list of all the works that have hitherto appeared upon Southern Africa, with some short strictures upon the merits of each. The materials will then be divided into nine parts. The first part will comprehend a general view of the country, and of the origin of its population; an examination into the climate, the aspect of the country, the properties of the vegetable kingdom, the general character of the animal world, and lastly, an ample account of the human race, natives of these parts, with an analysis of the influence which so many years intercourse with emigrant Europeans has had upon them. The second part will treat of the history of Southern Africa both before and since its colonization: the earliest information which could illustrate this subject has been diligently sought, and every thing written upon it even to the latest times has been carefully examined. In the third part
will be given a description of the customs and manners of the present generation; in the fourth a political and geographical description of the Dutch colony, and in the fifth a sketch of the form of its government. The four remaining parts will be occupied with the public institutions, the state of knowledge and of the arts, the objects of trade, the mode of husbandry, and lastly with remarks upon the Cape of Good Hope, considered as a military station.

Whether from the importance of these various objects, and the rich store of materials collected for treating of them, it will be possible to compress all into one volume, it is impossible here to decide. The question will be in great measure determined by the manner in which the public shall condescend to receive this first volume; and if on account of the expense attending the publication it should be found expedient to abridge my plan, I must, however reluctantly, give up some parts entirely.

Henry Lichtenstein.

Berlin, March, 1811.

The Publisher has to regret that a Map of the Dutch colony, at the Cape of Good Hope, which ought to have accompanied this work, and to which reference is frequently made in the course of it, was omitted to be sent with the German copy which he received; and it appears that no other copy of the original besides his own has yet found its way into this country. It was not possible to procure it from the continent in sufficient time to accompany the present volume; it will therefore be given with the next, which it is expected will appear the ensuing season.

ERRATA.

Page 6, line 9, dele task.
33 — 13, for the bay, read Saldanha bay.
82 — 26, dele often.
92 — 24, for frequent, read subsequent.
165 — bottom line, for bucephala, read leucophæa.
166 — 30, before the cattle, add the.
175 — 23, before other, add the.
188 — 21, for strong, read thick.
218 — 3 from the bottoms, for defence, read offence.
251 — 26, for corporal, read corporeal.
274 — 9, for is perpetually pushed it, read, it is perpetually pushed.
CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION.

Occasion of the Journey.—Voyage to the Cape.—Stay at the Cape-Town.—Journey of General Janssen to the Caffre Tribes.—Resolution of the Commissary-General De Mist to Travel through the Colony.—Preparations for the Journey.—Names of the Persons who composed the travelling Party.—Enumeration of the Things necessary to be taken for the Performance of the Journey. ........................................ Page 1

PART I.

JOURNEY THROUGH THE WESTERN AND NORTHERN PARTS OF THE COLONY.

CHAP. I.

Departure from the Cape-Town.—Rietvalley.—Troublesome Insects.—Brakkefontein.—Bad Water there.—Hartebestkraal.—Ausspannplatz. ................................. 17

CHAP. II.

The Klavervalley.—Groenekloof.—Gansekrab.—The Van Reenens’ Farms and Stud.—Musical Slaves.—Le Vaillant’s Friend, John Slabber.—Uylekraal.—Dexterity of the African Wagggoners.—Teefontein.—Collection of Plants and Insects. ....................... 24

CHAP. III.

Saldanha-bay.—Frugal Meal at Geelbek.—History and Description of Saldanha-bay.—Upon its Advantages and Disadvantages, and upon the different Plans which have been proposed for obviating the latter.—Flock of Flamingos.—The Islands of Saldanha-bay.—Interesting old Soldier. .................................................. 33

CHAP. IV.

Departure from Saldanha-bay.—Laubscher’s Farm.—Hippopotamos Hunt.—Extreme Age of a Slave.—The Mouth of the Berg-river.—Bay of St. Helena.—Teddious Passage of the Berg-river.—The Piket Mountain.—The widow Lieuwenberg’s Farm.—District of the Four-and-twenty rivers.—Leiste’s Farm.—Gelukwaard.—Forwardness of the European Plants here.—Cultivation of Rice and Indigo. ........................................ 46

CHAP. V.

The White Ant heaps.—Pikenierskloof.—Upon Mr. Barrow’s Exaggerations respecting the Barbarity of the Colonists.—The Berg-valley.—Tribes of Apes.—The Hottentok kraal.—A Hottentot of the Tribe of the Great Namaquas.—Encampment in the Long-valley.—Picturesque Mountain Scenery.—Jakhal’s-valley.—Preparation of Leather for Thongs .............................. 62
CONTENTS.

CHAP. VI.
The Elephants'-river.—Salt Lake.—Fatiguing Passage of the Nardous Mountain.—The Party lose their Way by Night in an almost uninhabited Country.—Night passed upon the Bank of the Doorn-river.—The Valley of Moederlooren.—The Lower Bokkeveld.—Cyc-valley .......................................................... 76

CHAP. VII.
The Namaqua Partridge.—The Matjes-fontein.—John Strauss.—On the Diseases of the Colonists.—The Tiger-point.—The District of Haman.—Van Reenen's Property there.—Character of the Colonists of these Parts.—Impressions of Fish in the Salt-pond.—The Sporting-Snake.—The Roggeveld Mountain.—Huntings of the Colonists beyond the Borders.—Cold Climate of the Roggeveld.—The Legplaat.—The Lower Roggeveld.—Account of the Murder of a family of Colonists by Slaves and Bosjesmans.—The Kuit-river.—Natron Rising out of the Ground ................ 81

CHAP. VIII.
The Middle Roggeveld.—Description of the Habitation of a Colonist.—Quarrels among the Inhabitants of the Roggeveld.—Large Flock of Ostriches.—Komberg.—An Instance of the increasing Population of the Colony.—The Little Roggeveld.—Visit from some Bosjesmans .................................................. 104

CHAP. IX.
The Great Karroo.—Description of it.—The Cold Bokkeveld.—Its Fertility.—Remarkable form of the Schurfdeberge.—Rocks near the House of the Cyclops-like Oversetter.—Fine Prospect from the Summit of the Witzenberg.—Arduous Descent of this Mountain.—Arrival at Roodezand .................................................. 120

PART II.
JOURNEY FROM ROODEZAND TO ZWELLENDAAM, AND ALONG THE SOUTHERN COAST TO ALGOA BAY.

CHAP. X.
Description of the Valley of Roodezand.—Character of its Inhabitants.—Prevailing Bigotry.—The surrounding Country.—The Water-fall Mountain.—Mostershoek.—Breede-river.—Goudwag.—Hot Spring in the Brand-valley ........................................... 141

CHAP. XI.
Bosjesveld.—The River Zonder-end.—Bavianskloof.—Description of the Society of United Brethren there.—Zoetemelks-valley.—Essaquashloof.—Breede-river.—Arrival in Zwellendam .................................................. 150

CHAP. XII.
Description of Zwellendam.—The Devil's Bush.—The Klip-river.—Rotterdam.—Buffeljagd-river.—Dupre's Farm.—The Krombek-river.—Preparation of the Aloe—gun.—Liske-river.—Extraordinary Appearance in the Air, like the distant Sea.—The Gyants-river.—The Party again lose their Way in the Night.—Arrival at Musselbay .................................................. 165
Contents.

CHAP. XIII.

The Government Magazines at Mosselbay.—The Dane Abate.—The Muscle Caves described.—Murray the Englishman's Coasting-trade.—Further Description of the Country.—Brakke-river.—Outeniqualand.—Woody Clefts in the Mountains.

CHAP. XIV.

Kaiman's-river, and troublesome Passage of the Kaiman's Cleft.—Krakadakow.—Silver-river.—Zicart-river.—Dankamma.—Ruinèd Farm.—The Lake of Neisa and the circumjacent Country.—Arrival at Plettenberg's-bay.

CHAP. XV.

Description of Plettenberg's-bay, and Stay there.—The Postholder Meding.—Journ over the Black Mountains to the Long-kloof.—The Pisang-river.—Diana's Bath.—Augusta's Rst.—Mathias Zoundag.—Description of the Long-kloof.—Conrad Buys.—The dea; and dumb Man, Gildenhus.—Celebration of the New-Year.—The Field-Cornet, Rademeier.

CHAP. XVI.

First Rencontre with travelling Caffres, and many particulars concerning the Interview.—Leeuwenbosch.—Magic power of Snakes.—Kabeljau-river.—Chamtoo-river, and difficult passage of it.—Beautiful Country on the other side.—Elephant-hunt.—Riet-river.—Embarrassment of the Travellers from the Delay of the Waggon.—Lead-mine at Van Stade's-river.

CHAP. XVII.

Algoa-bay.—Fort Frederic.—Baaker-river.—Industry of the German Garrison.—Description of the Bay.—The Missionary Vander Kemp.—His Hottentot School at Bethelsdorp.

PART III.

Description of the Caffre Tribe of Koossas.—Fragment from the Journal of General Janssens.—Our Own Journey along the Borders of the Caffre Country to Graaff-Reinet.

CHAP. XVIII.

The Caffres.—Name, Extent of Country, and universal Characteristic of this People.—Opinions with Regard to their Origin.—Caffreland.—The Tribe of Koossas.—Their Personal Figure, their Diseases, their Religious Opinions, with various other Particulars.

CHAP. XIX.

Description of the Koossa Caffres continued.—Their Habitations and Cattle-folds.—Their manner of keeping their Cattle.—Their Food.—The Chace.—Agriculture.—Cloathing and Ornaments.—Their Arms.—Manner of fighting.—Works of Art.
CONTENTS.

CHAP. XX.
Description of the Country of Ammahosina, or of the Koossas.—Its Political Relations and Institutions.—Power of the King.—Judiciary Proceedings, and Punishments. 282

CHAP. XXI.
History of the Koossa Tribe, and of its Wars with the Colony and with the English.—The Caffre Tribes of the Interior. 290

CHAP. XXII.
Fragment from the Journal of General Janssen.—His stay in Algoa bay, and Conference with the Rebel Caffre Chiefs.—Journey into the Caffre Country, and Interview with their King Geika.—Intercourse with him.—Transactions of the Commandant Alberti in the Caffre Country. 302

CHAP. XXIII.
Continuation of our Journey.—Departure from Algoa bay.—Zwartkop's-river.—Remarkable Salt-lake.—The Koega-river.—The Order established in pitching our Camp.—Zondag's-river.—Visits from a great Number of Caffres.—Large Flocks of Antelopes and Quaggas.—The Springbok.—The Bosjeman's-river.—The Arrival of the Caffre Chiefs expected in vain.—Hofmansgat.—Deformity of the Mimosas.—Nieuwejaarsdrift.—The Little Fish-river. 331

CHAP. XXIV.
Arrival at the Modderfontein in Agtebruinhtjeshoote.—Journey along the Bank of the Great Fish-river to meet King Geika.—Camp at Hermannuskrail.—The King does not arrive.—Conference with his Ambassadors.—Return to the Modderfontein.—Reconciliation between Geika and some of the Rebel Chiefs. 346

CHAP. XXV.
Bruinhtjeshoote.—Uniformity and Poverty of the Lives led by the Colonists there.—Camdeboo.—The African Horses, and the Manner of refreshing them upon a Journey.—The Melk-river.—The Spandau Mountain.—Arrival at Graaff-Reynett. 359

CHAP. XXVI.
Description of Graaff-Reynett.—The Character of the Colonists of these Parts, and the Circumstances which occasioned the Dissensions that prevailed there, both before and after it came under the English Government.—Regulations made by the Commissary-general for the Restoration of Order and Tranquility.—Losses sustained by the District in the Caffre War. 368
TRAVELS
IN
SOUTHERN AFRICA.

INTRODUCTION.

Occasion of the Journey.—Voyage to the Cape.—Stay at the Cape-Town.—Situation of the Colony.—Journey of General Janssens to the Caffre Tribes.—Resolution of the Commissary General de Mist to Travel through the Colony.—Preparations for the Journey.—Names of the Persons who composed the travelling Party.—Enumeration of the Things necessary to be taken for the Performance of the Journey.

By the stipulations at the peace of Amiens, which was concluded towards the end of the year 1801, the colony of the Cape of Good Hope was to be restored to the Dutch: this colony, after having been in their possession for nearly a century and a half, had been taken by the English in the year 1795. The Batavian Republic immediately began to occupy itself assiduously with considering the means of regulating this important possession so as to derive from it the greatest advantages that it was capable of affording. In this undertaking they found so much the more difficulty, since from the dissolution of the Dutch East India Company some years before (under whose direction the colony of the Cape had been till that time), and the influence which the being seven years under the dominion of a foreign power must have had upon the government, the customs of the inhabitants, and the revenues of the colony, few of the former institutions and ordinances could continue any longer in force, none could remain unchanged.

Even so early as in December, 1801, before the preliminaries were confirmed by the definitive treaty of peace, the States asked the advice of the council for the Asiatic possessions (by which department the business of the former
East India Company was now to be administered) upon the best manner of regulating the colony of the Cape on its restoration to the Batavian Republic; and a committee of the council was appointed, by whom an opinion was to be given. A member of this committee, Mr. J. A. de Mist, a man whom neither the misfortunes of his native country during the changes occasioned by fifteen years of divisions and disturbances, nor the insolence of self-erected adversaries, on whom the caprice of the populace confers a power commonly dangerous, but always merely ephemeral, could ever dishearten, or turn aside from pursuing with zeal the straight path of truth and integrity, was the person to whose lot it fell to draw up the answer. This task he with astonishing diligence accomplished in a few weeks, and it was to the no small satisfaction of the committee that on the 1st of April, 1802, the honourable post was conferred upon him of receiving the colony of the Cape from the hands of the English in quality of Commissary General for the Republic; by this appointment it fell also to his lot to superintend the carrying into effect his ideas for the regulation of the colony, as well as to instal the new governor, J. W. Janssens, into his high office. The latter had been appointed governor as early as in the month of February.

Some months were however requisite before the equipment of the vessels, the assembling and cloathing the troops destined for the possession of the Cape, the embarking the stores for the magazines, and other business necessary on the occasion could be accomplished. It was not till the middle of July that the ships were ready to sail, although it was in the first days of this month that the troops had been embarked, and between the 6th and 15th that the Commissary general and the governor themselves, with their train, had gone on board. I was myself among the train of the latter. An unconquerable inclination to try my powers amid the vicissitudes and toils of wandering through new climes and under a different heaven; an ardent desire to be acquainted with a country upon which, even in my boyish years, my imagination had eagerly dwelt, and which since my arrival at a maturer age I had always had an unbounded curiosity to explore, induced me to offer my services to the governor, who, a short time before his departure, was seeking out a tutor from Germany for his son, then thirteen years of age. He accepted my offer, when, with a cheerful heart and placid confidence in my future fate, I quitted my native country, my parents, my brethren, my friends, and blessed,
even at that moment, the determined resolution with which I was enabled to engage in the career prompted by my genius.

The dispositions of the excellent persons in whose service I was engaged forbids me to say all that I could gladly say of them. From the mouth of one who owes them so much, the most truly deserved praise, the mere expression of the gratitude due to them, might appear too much like flattery; and there is a certain class of readers, who can discover in ever so slight a tribute of applause sufficient ground for a suspicion of partiality, which would ill become a German writer. True it is, that in these people I love a whole nation, but I should consider it as the most unpardonable weakness were I to degrade my narrative with any thing that might have the remotest appearance of untruth in order to gratify that love; and I had rather remain wholly silent than forbear to speak with the frankness and sincerity which foreigners have always found so praise-worthy in the character of my countrymen. What renders the present work, however, one of the most pleasing undertakings of my life is, that I have never had any temptation, through indiscretion towards my benefactors, to hazard losing the recompense which posterity will perhaps first bestow upon my undeviating adherence to truth.

Four weeks passed before a favourable east wind permitted our sailing out of the Texel. It was on the 5th of August that we left this road in company with a numerous fleet of transports destined to the East and West Indies. We were afterwards, by the contrary winds which we encountered in the British Channel, constrained to run into Plymouth, and when still farther advanced on our voyage were detained by an unusual calm; but towards the end of September we reached the Canary Islands, and lay ten days in the road of Santa-Cruz, off the Island of Teneriffe. The wind was not more favourable to us as we pursued our course, till we passed the line, which we did on the 20th of November. From this time our voyage was fortunate and quick, so that we came to anchor in Table Bay on the 23rd of December.*

* I pass over in this place the account of our sea voyage, with several perhaps not uninteresting observations, because more important matter is here amply presented, and reserve them for a short publication by itself, which I hope to render useful to future voyagers by sea. An extract from my journal during our stay at Teneriffe is through the goodness of Counsellor Brun of Helmstadt published in the Universal Geographical Ephemerides for 1806. Many too evident traces of the original destination of this journal I could have wished suppressed in the fragment.
I say nothing concerning the early part of my abode at the Cape, and of the occurrences with which the delays in delivering up the colony were accompanied. Another part of the work, devoted entirely to the history of the colony, will give ample information and satisfactory elucidations upon this subject. Let me only be permitted here to make the following remarks.

When the Cape was taken by the English in the year 1795, the colony was in an unusual state of anarchy and internal distraction, which not a little contributed towards rendering the conquest so easy to the enemy; for in the eyes of impartial observers, the evil of falling under a foreign yoke appeared incomparably less than the probable ones which were then hanging over them. Some restless adventurers from Europe had introduced here the fanaticism of freedom, and awakened among the people, otherwise too much inclined to discord and disobedience, a revolutionary rage, which their ignorance and crude conceptions rendered no less laughable than dangerous, and which, without the intervention of the enemy, would very likely have spread ruin over the whole colony. The comfortless situation of the mother country, torn herself by political divisions, the insecurity of her existing government, and the exhausted state of her powers, which prevented any portion of her attention being turned to her colonies; all these circumstances, without doubt, contributed very much to the overthrow of the factious, and to induce the sober-minded rather to submit to a government, in whose strength they could place some confidence. It was not, however, possible for the new English administration to suppress entirely the ill consequences arising from the rage of freedom which had been excited, particularly since their true purposes being mistaken, they were considered as supporters of the orange party, to oppose which the general judgment was perfectly agreed.*

It was chiefly in the district of Graaff Reynett and the eastern part of Zwellendam, that the greatest opposition was shewn to the English government during the whole time of their continuing here. The refractory were indeed quieted by force of arms, but this was done with so little discretion and foresight, that the evil was thereby rather increased than diminished.

* This opinion became at the attack of the English so much the more universal, as she herself made it a principal object in the hasty capitulation. Colonel Gordon, who signed it, was a professed adherent of the orange party. A few days after, this otherwise upright man, made a public confession of his error to the world by destroying himself.
Thence arose discords with the Caffre tribe who inhabit the eastern borders of the colony, and as in the case of Graaff Reynett, by the most imprudent measures the Hottentots were employed in subduing the rebellious peasants. The latter thereupon, after a formal engagement, fled with their women and children to a remote corner of the colony, when a numerous body of these savages spread themselves along the sea-coast, overthrew the dwellings, destroyed the gardens and fields, made themselves a path by burning and massacre, and pressed forward to Outeniqualand, near Mosselbay. A body of English soldiers, under General Vandeleur, did indeed drive them back to their ancient borders, but the contest was not a slight one, nor was the happy termination purchased without many sacrifices; and even at the time of our arrival a great enmity subsisted between the Caffres and the English government.*

From all these circumstances, and from the deplorable state to which, through them, the eastern part of the colony was reduced, the attention of the new Dutch government was more particularly called to it. No sooner then was the colony at length restored in February, 1803, than General Janssens formed the resolution of visiting these parts himself; and he hoped by personal observations, and regulations made upon the spot, to put an end powerfully and speedily to the evil. Since the organization of the government, with which the Commissary general even then occupied himself diligently, nevertheless could not be completed in the first months, the governor, as executor of the standing laws, could at this moment better permit himself to be absent from the capital than later, when he should have received the reins out of the hands of the representatives of the sovereign power. He therefore commenced his journey early in April, and the many hardships which he had to encounter in his progress were well repaid in the complete success of his benevolent views, as well as by acquiring an accurate knowledge of the country which henceforward was to be entrusted to his administration. The particular occurrences of this journey will more properly find a place when my own travels, in the train of the Commissary general, through the country now visited by General Janssens, come to be related.

* An imperfect account of these transactions has been given to the public in the second part of Barrow's Travels. I shall give a more complete account of them in another part of this work.
In the mean time, during his absence, that is on the 6th of July, 1803, the intelligence reached the Cape, by means of a dispatch boat, of the renewal of the war between France and England. The presence of the commander was now imperiously demanded for the regulation of the defence of the place, and he returned with so much haste that he performed his journey back, of an hundred and seventy hours,* in only ten days. From the day of his arrival, the 1st of August, he occupied himself indefatigably with these regulations, while the Commissary general completed his labours for the organization of the colony task, and circulated his new code for its civil government.

He also had the intention of visiting the interior of the colony, that he might obtain from his own observations an accurate knowledge both of particular parts and of the whole, so that at his return to his native country he might be able to render an accurate account of all the advantages to be derived from the colony, as well as of all its wants and necessities. It was a question, however, for some time, whether, since an attack from the enemy might be supposed a thing not very remote, his removing to a distance from the capital could at that time be permitted: yet soon the suggestion of the utility that might probably be derived both to the mother country and to the colony from such a journey superseded all other considerations, especially as for many reasons it did not appear probable that the English ministry would immediately think of directing an attack upon it from the East Indies; and since in the activity and bravery of the governor the colony had a protection upon which it might very safely rely. Besides, in the case of an attack, the presence of a magistrate high in office, in the remoter districts, might be of great advantage towards the defence of the colony.

As soon, therefore, as this journey was resolved on, the necessary preparations for it were immediately commenced. It is expedient here to state particularly that the governor had before taken this very same journey, and his information concerning the things necessary to be attended to, and the means of performing such a journey, so as to derive the greatest portion of

* The German mode of reckoning distances is commonly by hours, and they consider a German mile, which is equal to five English ones, as equivalent to an hour. The distance that the governor therefore travelled in ten days is to be supposed one hundred and seventy German miles, or eight hundred and fifty English ones.—Translator.
advantage from it, without being subjected to greater privations and inconveniences than were absolutely necessary, were imparted to us, and lightened our way exceedingly. The captain of artillery, Paravicini di Capelli, aide-de-camp to the general, and who had accompanied him on his journey, a man of great penetration and foresight, directed these preparations with much kindness; and through the pains he took deserved on many occasions the warmest thanks of the whole travelling party.

From the travels of Le Vaillant, which have been so universally read, we know very well the necessary provisions to be made by a single traveller—an enquirer into nature, so that he may pursue his way with the best effect through the inhospitable regions of Southern Africa;—so that he may not be subjected to a want of the absolute necessaries of life, or be prevented in attaining the objects of his researches as a man of knowledge and science. Yet any one will have but a very imperfect idea through this medium of what we found requisite for the equipment of a company of forty stout men, forming a sort of little caravan.

But principally because this journey was unlike any which has perhaps ever fallen under the reader's observation, since no travels into the interior of Africa resemble it in any way, I think I may venture to dwell somewhat more at large upon our preparations, as the mode of our travelling will by that means be better understood, and through the novelty of the objects to which we were obliged to attend, a more lively interest will be awakened.

Journeys similar to that which the Commissary general was now about to undertake had at all times since the foundation of the colony been occasionally performed, and the people were accustomed to see the magistrates, who were high in rank, travel with a sort of state, and with a train of followers which would distinguish them from the people around, and point out their rank and dignity.* This custom had its origin in an imitation of the

---

* Mr. Barrow, in the first chapter of the second part of his Travels, has thought proper to laugh extremely at these journeys, which his French translator calls *Expeditions de parade*, and remarks that they are of no advantage whatever for obtaining a knowledge of the country. That was not their object, and the use which most of them had upon the whole will be pointed out in the history of the colony. Above all, it is exceedingly unjust to impute to the Dutch of the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, as a piece of mercantile meanness, the secrecy they
Batavian customs at Java, which was the model of all the ceremonials at the Cape; and since it had been once introduced here, it was not even now to be neglected by any one who would appear with the dignity attached to his post. This numerous train, and this show of armed men, was more particularly requisite on the present occasion, since the course lay in the neighbourhood of several savage tribes, and through solitary uninhabited parts, in which hordes of the Bosjesmans, and bands of run-away slaves or English deserters, might have made the travellers feelingly repent the neglect of so useful a precaution.

As necessary as was this train itself, equally necessary was it for the whole society to take with them provisions for their wants of every sort; and it will be seen in the sequel that the care displayed throughout for this purpose was not so much as to the conveniences and accommodations which are pleasant on a journey, but for things absolutely necessary to the support of life and health. If the voluntary privations of one of Robinson's pedestrian wanderers displays an interesting spectacle, I hope not to entertain my readers less with a representation of the numberless hardships sustained every step by a company of Europeans in their progress through a hot, hilly, unfruitful, thinly-inhabited, half-waste country, where scarcely even any water was to be had:—of the wants, the privations they endured, and the earnest longings with which they were sometimes seized to taste again the sweets and comforts they enjoyed in their own country. Indeed, the equipment of such a journey by land required scarcely less thought and attention to things the most minute than a sea voyage would have done; so inhospitable is the country, so entirely destitute of all the advantages which in other parts of the world art and nature combine to present for the accommodation of travellers. Scarcely is it indeed possible to give other than a general idea of the unavoidable number and variety of things with which one must be encumbered.

Before, however, we enter upon an enquiry into them, let me first be permitted to say something about the persons who composed our society,

---

are said to have observed with regard to their geographical discoveries, since the existence of the discoveries was rested upon these journeys, which they turn into so much ridicule; and it was in fact the geographical and political situation of the country which rendered them necessary.
since then the nature and number of our wants will be better understood. It consisted of the following persons.

Mr. J. A. de Mist, commissary-general.
Mr. A. L. de Mist, his son, and secretary.
C. A. H. Michgorius, clerk in the chamber of accounts of the colony, and belonging to the office of the commissary-general.
H. Gilmer, lieutenant in a squadron of light dragoons, commander of the escort. He had already accompanied General Janssens upon his journey, and took upon himself at once the inspection of the wagons and teams belonging to them, and the care of providing forage for the riding-horses, &c. &c.
P. J. Le Sueur, a cadet of the same corps, in the ordonnance of the commissary-general.

Myself, whom the commissary-general had chosen as his attendant in case of necessity to superintend the medical department. At the same time he hoped to derive some advantage from the little knowledge I had in natural history, from the observations it would induce me to make, and the objects which it was my purpose to collect. General Janssens, in whose particular service I had come to the Cape, gave me permission to undertake the journey the more readily, since his eldest son, Henry Janssens, my pupil, was destined to accompany us; besides, my having occasionally rendered myself useful in various cases of illness had made him much my friend.

F. Winters, surgeon to the Military Hospital at Cape Town.
M. Halewyn, book-keeper and house-steward.
P. Menger and H. Kummel, gentlemen of the chamber.
A corporal with seven dragoons, every one of whom followed some trade, as saddler, smith, carpenter, &c. &c.
A sergeant of infantry as superintendent of the Hottentots and slaves.
A French-horn player of the corps of Jägers, a very useful, indeed an almost indispensable person, since according to certain signals he collected the cavalcade together when they were to set forwards, summoned the cattle with their keepers from the pastures where the former were feeding, or if any one was wandering away from the company called him back to the right path, &c. &c. The care of our little camp, to blow the reveille and the retreat was also committed to him.
Twelve Hottentots, who acted as servants in all capacities; to them were added daily ten or twelve others, who belonged to the atelages of the day.

Four slaves for the service of particular members of the society, or to attend upon their horses.

Lastly, a courier of the government, who went forwards every day to order the atelages that would be wanted, and to take care that forage and provisions were prepared.

Our travelling party was moreover embellished in a very agreeable manner by the addition of female society. Augusta de Mist, youngest daughter to the commissary general, could not be restrained at his departure from Holland from following her father in his migration. This instance of true filial love, so delightful under every point of view, inspired her with fortitude to despise the dangers of the sea, and the inconveniences attending a long voyage, to leave her sisters and her friends, and readily to renounce the joys of a life of ease and social comfort, perhaps for many years. Many young women of nineteen, accustomed to live in the first circles in their own country, would have been staggered in their filial duty at the prospect of an interruption to these joys; but not so our traveller. Even the consolations which she found in the lively scenes of the Cape Town, which atoned to her in some measure for what she had abandoned, were equally given up to remain by the side of her father amid the sultry deserts of the interior of Africa. It seemed to her far preferable to share with him the dangers and difficulties inseparable from such a journey, than, at a distance, at home to tremble for his life, to think of him in illness, perhaps, confided to the care of strange and mercenary hands. Her father had not omitted to represent to her in the clearest manner every danger and hardship she might be subjected to encounter, and entreated her to reflect that the objects of his journey could not in any way be restrained or contracted by her being his companion, that she must even resolve to forego all personal wishes which might interfere with his attaining the objects for which the journey was undertaken.

All this could not awaken any terrors in her mind, or deter her in the slightest degree from pursuing her purpose; and how eagerly sover she assured him beforehand that he might rely upon her resignation, her assurances were even exceeded by the firmness with which she adhered to all that
was required of her, by the patience with which she endured every hardship, by the punctuality with which she conformed to all the regulations made by, even to all the expectations and wishes, of her father. It is not less incredible than true, that through the whole journey, which was extended to nearly six months, never was at any time the least delay occasioned either by her or her female attendants, never was the setting off in the morning postponed on her account, never was any regulation whatever broken in upon. It must indeed be remarked that such privations were the less felt by her since her richly stored mind received a constant recompense and gratification in the perpetual succession of new and remarkable objects with which it was presented. The delight of having so many of the wonders of nature hitherto known only by description placed before her eyes, and of studying a race of men, whose frame and colour of body, no less than their habits and customs, were so different from any she had yet seen, left no room to think of petty objects of ease and convenience, and sweetened even the most wearisome restraints. There was, indeed, in this young lady a singular union of feminine softness and tenderness of heart, with a manly resolution and firmness of mind not often to be found among the rougher part of her sex;—through both she often shamed one or other of the members of our society. One of her young friends from the Cape Town, Mademoiselle Versveld, had at her own particular desire been permitted to accompany her. With equal firmness did she support the toils, the hardships, and the inconveniences of the journey. Each was attended by a young European female servant.

It was determined that the whole company, those who belonged to the waggons excepted, should perform the journey on horseback. We were twenty-five horsemen, some of whose horses were always led by the slaves, to render the fatigue less. A large waggon attended, which carried all that was necessary for the general wants of the day, and the little packages of each individual; it was also provided with accommodations to carry any one who might be ill or worn down with fatigue;* and, according to the custom of

* It is worthy of remark that the chief of the expedition, probably the oldest of the whole society, a man of fifty-four years of age, was the only one who never availed himself of this convenience, but performed the whole journey of nearly nine hundred hours (four thousand five hundred English miles) on horseback.
the country, it was furnished with arms and ammunition, the carrying
which to any extent would very much have incommode the company on
horseback. Five other waggons were filled with our larger baggage; they
contained in the first place a large provision of dry food and liquors, such
as rice, sea-biscuit, pease, dried fruits, coffee, tea, sugar, tobacco, wax
candles, &c. &c. besides wine, brandy, and vinegar.

Next, that we might not be reduced in travelling through such very thinly
inhabited countries to the necessity of sleeping entirely in the open air,
which, notwithstanding the mildness of the climate, is always dangerous to
the health even of Europeans born in the country, we had ten or twelve
tents with us of different sizes, which, with the necessary appendages
belonging to them, of poles, pegs, cords, and fastenings, filled of themselves
one wagggon. Equally necessary was it to carry a provision of simple field-
beds, since the number of serpents and venomous insects rendered it very
dangerous to sleep upon the bare ground. Some new mattresses, bolsters,
and woollen coverlids, were furnished from the magazine for the hospitals,
on which, indeed, we did not lie very soft, but soft enough to sleep well
after the fatigues of the day. Much room was occupied by things necessary for
cooking in the open field, such as kettles, saucepans, &c. To give an idea
of all that it was necessary to provide in this way it is sufficient only to
refer to the number and variety of persons of which we were composed, and
to the different provisions which were to be made for each; especially as in
traversing the borders of the Caffire tribes we were several weeks without
coming into an inhabited country. Besides the society who lived with the
commissary general, there was to be provided for, the steward and the
servants, the dragoons, the Jägers, the Hottentots, and the slaves. Then in
order to eat the meat with any degree of comfort there must be field-tables,
field-stools, plates, dishes, knives, forks, spoons, and table-linen. Indeed,
it required a man with all the attention and activity of our steward to think
of such a variety of things, and have them all in such excellent order.

To be prepared against any accidents that might befall our waggons or
our horses, it was necessary to carry with us a travelling forge, with a
provision of carpenters' tools, wheel-bands, nails, and horse-shoes. We
had, besides, a chest filled with all sorts of trinkets and frippery, as presents
for the Caffres and Hottentots, or to exchange with them for the rarities
of the country and their own household implements. Another was filled with medical drugs, chirurgical instruments and bandages. There were two barrels of gunpowder with about two hundred pound of shot and bullets, and a variety of guns and other arms. There were chests with clothes, linen, books and maps, as well as spare saddles, and other appurtenances for the horses. To these are to be added the daily provision of corn for our cavalry, and the quantity of bread, meat, pulse, &c. which we were often obliged to provide when we were to travel for several days through parts almost uninhabited. It will not then appear surprising that our six waggons were no more than was absolutely necessary to contain such a number and variety of objects. Indeed, it was not long before we were convinced that most of them were too heavy loaded, and it was found expedient to increase their number.

It is sufficient here once for all to remark that the waggons used in a journey like the present are differently constructed from what would be employed in Europe for a similar purpose; and that they differ equally from those kept in the vicinity of the Cape Town for little parties of pleasure. The dry and hot weather, and above all, the extreme badness of the mountain-roads, renders it necessary to make them of much more solid materials, and to put them much more firmly together than is usual with our waggons. Many kinds of trees in these parts furnish a wood, which, from its hardness and toughness, is particularly adapted to such kind of uses, and we may safely venture to assert, that no where are such strong and durable waggons made as at the Cape. They are commonly about the size of a moderate baggage waggon, but are much neater and better finished, something like the best of the post waggon in the north of Germany, and have a canvas awning over them, called in the country a tent; they are thirteen feet in length within, and sixty-two inches broad, Rhineland measure. The iron bands of the wheels are almost half an inch thick.

Repeated experiments have taught us that carriages sent hither from Europe are of no use whatever; at least they do not last long. The English therefore made all their carriages for this place without exception with iron axle-trees.

The waggons, according to the weight of their lading, and to the length and difficulty of the way they have to go, are drawn by eight, twelve, and even sometimes by sixteen oxen. These are yoked together two and two by a
beam over the back of the neck, which is fastened by a thong of leather under the neck, and two others running on each side of the hams. In the middle of the beam is a strong iron ring, and through this is passed a cord, which is fastened to the leather thong.* In other countries it has been found more convenient rather to make the oxen draw by their beads, and Europeans have endeavoured to introduce the same practice here; but the particular form of the African oxen, which are distinguished by being very high in the haunches, should seem in their case to plead in favour of the established mode.

As drivers to these waggons, Hottentots or Bastards † are generally preferred since they know best how to keep pace with the oxen, as well as how to dress and tend upon them. No reins are used; the drivers manage the animals with merely calling to them; every ox has his particular name, and by pronouncing the word *hot or haar*, they turn to the right or left according to the signification of the word used.‡ The well-known whips with bamboo handles from fourteen to sixteen feet in length, and lashes of at least an equal length, with which a dexterous driver can readily strike any of his cattle from the first to the last, are very seldom used among a well-ordered team; never unless any of the poor creatures happen to be extremely weary, or the difficulties to be encountered in the way render a more than usual exertion of strength necessary.

This perpetual calling to the animals, which is done in a high rough-toned voice not easily to be imitated, and which is more intelligible to the oxen themselves from the tone in which it is done than from the expression used, is indescribably wearisome to the traveller, who is compelled to ride in the

---

* I cannot attempt to go any farther in describing this African mode of harnessing the oxen; since we have no words by which a thing wholly unknown to us can be accurately described, it is better to waive the attempt than to use expressions which may lead only to misunderstanding.

† These are a mixture of Hottentots and white people, or Hottentots and slaves. More will be said concerning them in the second part of this work.

‡ The drivers of carriages in the south of France will in like manner manage their horses or mules merely by calling to them. As the country is hilly, they commonly dismount in going up the hills and walk by the side of their cattle, when they have two modes of calling to them, one if they are to go to the right, the other if to the left, which the animals understand just as well as their drivers, and turn accordingly.—TRANSLATOR.
waggon. In very narrow and bad roads, however, the driver does not depend wholly upon his vocal powers for managing his atelage; a boy is then added, who leads the foremost oxen by a thong fastened to the horns. It is, indeed, extraordinary to see how a boy can with so much dexterity lead so long a team through heights and depths, over hills and crags, without risk either to himself or to the vehicle he has under his care. This is principally done when the team consists of more than sixteen oxen, for the driver alone can hardly manage above that number, partly because the most spirited being selected for the leading oxen, while the strongest are reserved for the hinder ones, they are more difficult to be kept in order, and partly because the little stones slipping about under their feet are apt to throw the middle yokes out of their ranks, and one pair will perhaps be inclining to one side while the next draws towards the other. Is a river to be passed, the poor boy must often wade through the water up to his chin, still holding the thong fast, to prevent the fore oxen stumbling or reeling in the middle of the stream, and oversetting the whole equipage. *

The strength of the draught oxen here is easily exhausted. On a level road, with only a moderate load, and if the air be tolerably cool, they will get on as far in an hour as a man who walks pretty quick; but if the way be sandy, the load be heavy, or the sun be very hot, they cannot at all keep pace with him. The distance from place to place is reckoned by hours; but in different parts they compute differently as to the quantity of ground that may be gone over in an hour. It is calculated that a distance of eight hours with a team of twelve oxen, and the customary load of twenty hundred weight, may without difficulty be performed in a day, rising early in the morning, or in the very hot season of the year rather travelling all night, and resting in the middle of the day. Such a distance is here called a schoft, and all greater distances are calculated by so many schofts, or days journeys. The keeping of the draught oxen costs little or nothing. As soon as they are unyoked they go immediately to the water to drink, and then regale themselves with the thinly scattered forage that the African fields afford. As pure grass is a thing rarely to be found, they are commonly obliged to be contented with heath plants, rushes, and even with succulent plants; to the

* We had sometimes, when our route lay over very steep parts, as many as twenty-four, or even twenty-six oxen, and yet half a day would elapse before all the wagons arrived happily at their destination.
latter indeed they are confined almost entirely in summer in the Karroo country, unless they prefer the hard stalks of the brushwood.* The oxen of the European breed are considered as stronger and able to endure more labour than the natives; but of this, as of many things now only slightly noticed, more shall be said hereafter.

The enumeration of my own little apparatus may perhaps be permitted here to find a place. Besides the books and maps mentioned below,† I was furnished with an excellent compass, and some small pocket compasses; a very good telescope and microscope, and a thermometer.‡ A case of anatomical instruments, two pound of opiment for preserving birds and quadrupeds, and a cask of brandy for keeping reptiles, &c. Some thousands of needles of various sizes for fastening insects, tin boxes for insects; and butterfly nets. Twelve wooden boxes for receiving my daily collections,§ some stronger ones with divisions for minerals; and a large provision of paper for drying plants. Such were the preparations I made for rendering our journey useful, as I hoped, in gaining a more extended knowledge of the natural history of the country, as well as by the attainment of more important objects.

* In some places this is the only provender which they can find. An extraordinary instance how long the poor animals can be subsisted upon no other than such wretched food will be found in the sixth part of this work.

† My library consisted of such travels of my precursors in the present journey as are the most generally celebrated, those of Kolbe, Sparmann, Thunberg, Le Vaillant, and Barrow. Besides some of these in the French language the commissary general had with him Stavorinus's, Degrandpré's, and Crossigny's travels, with several works in Dutch upon the same subject. In the second place I furnished myself with a variety of books of Natural History, particularly in botany and entomology, and was very exact in procuring those that had all the latest discoveries; yet still, thanks to the inexhaustible treasures of Nature in Southern Africa, I seldom found them of much use to me. And as amusement was no less necessary occasionally than instruction, I carried with me as companions for my hours of relaxation Goethe's Works, Lessing's Nathan, Schiller's Don Carlos, Sterne's Sentimental Journey, and Tasso's Aminta. During the six months that our journey continued, I read daily in some one or other of these books, yet found them such a constant source of entertainment that I never wished I had taken more.

‡ My travelling barometer was during our voyage broken and spoiled; and one intended for the same purpose which I had at the Cape was omitted to be packed up.

§ I found the simple mode of preparing insects recommended by Le Vaillant the most practicable. It is necessary for that purpose that the chests should be made strong, so that every one of them have a proper hold when stuck into the wood.
PART I.

JOURNEY THROUGH THE WESTERN AND NORTHERN PARTS OF THE COLONY.

CHAP. I.

Departure from the Cape Town.—Rietvalley.—Troublesome Insects.—Brakkefont in Bad Water there.—Hartebeestkraal.—Ausspannplatz.

As General Janssens in his travels had bent his course towards the eastern borders of the Caffre countries, and since from the menacing aspect of public affairs it seemed wholly uncertain how long the Commissary-general could continue at a distance from the Cape Town, he thought it better in the first place to visit the western and northern parts of the colony, as an assurance to the inhabitants of these districts, who were not often in like manner visited, that their welfare was no less an object dear to the hearts of the new Batavian government than that of the rest of their dependents. Perhaps also it was a great advantage to travel through these parts at this early season of the year, when we might be tolerably secure of finding a plentiful supply of water, and good feed for the cattle; whereas, parched as the country is in the height of summer, it was very likely that we might then fail of both.

The necessary preparations, as well as the multiplicity of public business which it was necessary for the Commissary-general to conclude before his departure, delayed us so long that we could not set out before the ninth of October. Early in the night the waggons were dispatched, as the commencement of the cavalcade; they were followed at day-break by a great majority of the travelling party, and at six o'clock the Commissary general himself brought up the rear, he being attended out of the town by the governor and all the principal civil and military officers of the garrison. As representative of the States, the honours due to his rank were paid him,
and the castle announced his departure to the town by a salute of one and twenty cannon.

We had halted at the Rietvalley, a spot about two hours journey from the town, at the Government Place* upon the Strand, to wait his arrival. Here were assembled some Hottentots, the commencement of a corps of these people, which was to be raised under the command of Captain Le Sueur, and which afterwards was increased to a batallion, the same officer being continued in the command as lieutenant colonel.† He inhabited the principal house, which under the English Government had been exceedingly neglected, and suffered to fall into decay; we received from him a very kind and hospitable welcome, and he regaled us with an excellent breakfast. Round the house the swarthy recruits had built themselves little huts of reeds and rush-mats, in and out of which were running women and children half naked.

The governor, with the rest of the friends who were not to be of our travelling party, here took his leave of us. The warmth of the adieus, and the concern for us expressed by those who were returning to the town, excited in our breasts the first presentiments we had experienced of the dangers and hardships we were about to encounter: hitherto every thing had appeared to us under the brightest aspect; every one had formed his ideas according to his wishes, consequently nothing was foreseen but what the mind could with pleasure foresee. We moved on silent and thoughtful: a dead calm, a deep sandy road, and the heat of noon, did not conspire to raise our spirits. It seemed as if a foreshadowing of what was one day to happen had seized the whole company, as if they saw in the order of their future destinies, that ere scarcely two years and a half were expired, the Dutch arms would be called upon to fight in that very spot in defence of the colony. For it was indeed on the plain between the Blue and the Tiger mountains, on the 8th of January, 1806,

* Place, as thus used, signifies every spot cultivated and inhabited, or capable of being so. Such provincial terms I have left unchanged, because they are more appropriate than any term that could be given them in our language, and the reader soon accustoms himself to them. For this reason also I leave all proper names, without attempting to translate them, thinking it much better to talk of the Rietvalley, and the Zout river, than to render the names laughable by attempting to Germanise them.

† In a year after the batallion was raised I was appointed surgeon major to it.
that the unfortunate battle was fought which decided the fate of the colony, and gave it once more into the hands of England.

The disagreeableness of the way was very much increased by an im-umerable multitude of flies, here improperly called musquitos, that teased us exceedingly. They were scarcely half as big as the smallest chamber-flies, and appeared particularly to abound where the ground was somewhat moist. Their sting, though not accompanied with any smart, occasioned at first a sort of involuntary shuddering, which was succeeded by a considerable itching. The gauze veils which we had had the precaution to take with us protected us very little against these troublesome insects. Their number, their extreme smallness, and the heat, occasioned us soon to give up attempting by this means to defend ourselves against them. I seldom afterwards, when we were actually assailed by the musquitos, saw them in such numbers together.

After having for several hours endured these inconveniences, about noon we reached a place called Brakkefontein, belonging to a butcher in the Cape Town, of the name of Pfeil. The owner, happening to be there himself, brought us some refreshments, which were particularly welcome after the hardships of a course to which we were as yet unaccustomed, in a hot day over a parched heath, without water, and without shade. The water of these parts, which is collected in hollow trunks from the springs in the Table Mountain, is very ill flavoured, indeed, in the hot summer months it is almost intolerable; and yet in the sequel we found that many springs along the western coast were so much more so, that we should not unfrequently have been very glad of a glass of this water which we were now so ready to spurn and despise.

When the great heat of the day was over, we again set forwards, and two hours farther arrived at a very pretty spring of fine fresh clear water, which was extremely reviving to us; our horses, who could not at all reconcile themselves to the Brakkefontein, enjoyed their present regale no less than ourselves. This place is called the Hartebeestkraal, and was one of the many stations to which the name of Ausspanplatze was given, because they

* The same reason which the German author gives in a former note for retaining the names of places, as they are called in the country, without attempting to translate them, may be
were established by the government for the benefit of travellers as resting-places at every half day's journey, and were open to every body: nobody had exclusive possession of them. These establishments were more particularly intended for the accommodation of the colonists living at a distance from the Cape, who used every year, or at least every two years, to come down to the town either to dispose of their objects of trade, such as butter, soap, elephant's teeth, aloes, hides, &c. &c. or to collect the money for the cattle purchased from them by the butchers of the Cape Town, who sent their own servants up the country for this purpose. At their return the traders carried back such things as were requisite to supply their own little wants. These objects consisted principally of linen and woollen cloth, implements of husbandry, tea, coffee, tobacco, groceries, spices, and drugs. Other objects included in these journeys were to pay the imposts to the government; to petition for new grants of lands, or for an extension of the old ones; to settle disputes which often arose with regard to the boundaries of their different properties, and in general every thing relating to law business. But a no less important object than any above enumerated was to conclude the marriages which had been agreed upon, and to baptize the children which had been born in the interim; for these were ceremonies which could only be performed in the Cape Town. One of the new regulations made by the Commissary-general in his progress through the country was, that such ceremonies were thenceforward to be performed before the Landdrost of each district.

The time when these journeys of the colonists were usually undertaken was in the early part of the summer, or rather in the spring, that is to say,
in the months which are so in these parts, viz. about September or October, since at that time the cattle are fatter and stronger, and find better feed by the way. The proper winter months, from April to August, would have been still better for the cattle, but the wet and cold of that time would have been pernicious to the human beings; besides which, there would have been danger of their being stopped on the road, even for weeks together, by the rivers being swelled so as to be rendered impassable.

It not unfrequently happened on these occasions that a whole month was spent upon the road, since it was not only by the head but by the whole family that the journey was to be performed. This was done partly because it was thought unsafe to leave the wife and children at home unprotected, liable to attacks from the neighbouring savages, and partly because it was necessary to take all the draught cattle for the waggons which were to carry the commodities, as well as most of the slaves and Hottentots, so that the wife would have been left without servants and assistants; but the women were besides very much accustomed to roving, since the colonists of many parts were from the very nature of the country compelled to follow a sort of Nomade life, and take up their abode in winter at the distance of several day's journey from their summer residence. There were even some families who had no fixed abode (though this was against the express orders of the government), but who moved from place to place with their household and cattle, living in their waggons or under tents, only remaining in the same spot as long as they could find provender and water for their cattle, and any thing whereupon to subsist themselves. It was chiefly against these rovers that a very wise regulation made by the government was directed, viz. that no company should be permitted to remain more than two days at an auss-pannplatze; if greater latitude had been given, it is very probable that such parties might not unfrequently have taken up their abode at these places till all the forage around them was devoured, and they were deprived of the means of being of general utility.

The utility of such institutions as the ausspannplätzen, which many people considered pernicious, because they said much cultivable land was lost by them, could not be more clearly evinced than by seeing the process of a halt made at them by one of the travelling families above described. The best inn could not be equally eligible with one of these places, where
they might consider themselves at home, and where they found free of expense every thing requisite to gratify their most pressing wants. An African colonist, whom circumstances compelled to travel with so large a retinue, must unavoidably be provided with most things necessary for the subsistence of himself and his family during the journey, and when he stopped he wanted little more than a supply of water, and feed for his cattle. It must here be observed, that the hospitality ascribed in general so justly to the Africans never extended to the cattle: the colonist would with the utmost readiness set before a guest who came to his habitation a superfluity both of provisions and drink for himself, without any idea of remuneration; but he would not entertain the draught oxen in the same liberal way; for every one of them he expected to be paid at the rate of about a shilling a head per day. Travellers must therefore find great convenience in stopping at an ausspannplatze where their oxen could feed gratis, and any wants they might have themselves were readily supplied by the inhabitants of the neighbourhood.

As the oxen are generally found to be stronger and not so soon fatigued by travelling in the night as in the day, the common practice was to set off late in the evening, and calculate the time so as to arrive at an ausspannplatze about sun-rise, or soon after. The women then built up a sort of hut under the shade of the waggon, where they made a fire, and getting out their pots and kettles, began to prepare their cookery. Of the salted meat which they brought with them, or of the flesh of a sheep killed the day before, a soup was made, exceedingly strong and savoury; but besides this very relishable dish, among these wanderers, whose table was nothing more than a mat spread upon the ground, was to be seen the choicest game, which they had killed in their way with scarcely any trouble; such as might be contemplated with envy by those who partake almost daily of what are commonly esteemed much more luxurious repasts. At noon they lay down to sleep, and at night the oxen were again put to the waggons, and the journey continued. Another advantage supposed to be obtained by travelling in the night was, that less danger was to be apprehended either from wild men or wild beasts. As both the animals and their masters must be more watchful and active while going on, than when lying by to rest, the approach of an enemy of either kind was more immediately perceived, and the means of defence
more expeditiously resorted to. This manner of travelling would not, however, suit those who are desirous of gaining a knowledge of the country, consequently it was never practised by us but in cases of absolute necessity.

It was not uncommon for the colonists to petition the government to grant them these *ausspannplatzen* (which were generally enclosures of from ten to twelve thousand square roods) in fee, and sometimes they were granted on a solemn engagement made that they should still be continued upon the same footing as places of public utility and accommodation. But wherever this was done it led to endless discords and contentions; for not only did the holders of these farmed *ausspannplatzen* endeavour in various ways to evade the condition of furnishing travellers with water and feed for their cattle gratis, but in countries much frequented the whole benefit was engrossed by the farmers. It is a much better regulation that at certain times of the year the colonists living in the neighbourhood of an *ausspannplatze* shall be permitted the use of it as a common place of forage. In general the spots which have hitherto been selected to be devoted to these purposes were the least cultivable of the whole neighbourhood.
To return from the digression which concluded my former chapter. Towards evening we arrived at the Klavervalley, a place made not many years before by Mr. Sebastian Van Reenen. Here we were received with the utmost kindness and friendship by the owner and his whole family, and found the rest, which, after a journey of fourteen hours, we began so much to want. Our waggons had arrived a short time before us, but they had found so much difficulty in getting through the sandy road, that it was deemed necessary to add another waggon to our former number, thereby to lighten the weight of them all. The necessary arrangements for this purpose could be made with great ease since we had determined to spend the following day in taking a survey of the neighbouring country.

The next morning, therefore, I accompanied the Commissary-general, with some others of our fellow travellers, an hour’s journey eastward to the part called the Groenekloof. This is the principal place of a district which goes under the same name, comprehending about thirty farms, some larger some smaller. In a still more extended sense the name of Groenekloof is applied to a neighbouring chain of hills broken by a number of little vallies; these hills abound in springs of excellent water, and afford besides good grass for the cattle. This domain was at the time of its first cultivation devoted to feeding the oxen destined for furnishing the garrison, the hospitals, and the slaves, at the Cape Town. It has since been judged better to farm out the furnishing meat for these purposes to private persons, and as the contractors send to distant parts for the cattle, which often grow lean upon the journey from its great length, they are kept here for a time to recover their flesh before they are killed. Six other domains have in like manner been granted by the
government to the same contractors for the purposes of husbandry and feeding cattle.

In these domains the farmers had also the liberty of carrying on salt-works, for which they paid a yearly rent of about twelve hundred dollars, they being bound to furnish the Cape Town with fine salt at the price of three dollars and a half per bushel. The salt-panes were at some distance upon the shore, but the space was so confined that the works were carried on to great disadvantage, so that the government were in the end obliged to make considerable alterations in the compact.

We returned about noon to the Klawervalley, and in the afternoon visited the brother of our host, Mr. Jacob Van Reenen, a man whose name is well known from his travels into Caffiraria.* This gentleman lives at a place upon the coast called the Ganzekraal, about an hour's distance from the Klawervalley: it formerly belonged to the government, but is now his own property. Both this place and the Klawervalley are among the best and most fertile spots, not only of these parts, but of the whole colony. No people deserve more credit for the great pains they have taken in the improvement of agriculture and the treatment of cattle than the numerous family of the Van Reenens: almost all these brothers, those even who are properly citizens, and inhabitants of the Cape Town, have some farming concerns in the interior. As an instance of Mr. Jacob Van Reenen's attention to these things, and of his ardour in the pursuit of them, it may be mentioned, that he this year has cultivated two hundred and forty acres of land † on which he has bestowed sixteen hundred loads of manure. He told us, moreover, that he could insure excellent crops by only manuring his lands every three years. One of his fields, husbanded in this way, had already produced him crops for twenty-four years successively.

Equal fertility is not observable everywhere in these parts, and it is in this instance rather to be ascribed to the neighbourhood of the sea than to the goodness of the soil: there are many other spots, particularly the Klawervalley,

---

* Journal of a journey from the Cape of Good Hope, undertaken in 1790 and 1791, by Jacob Van Reenen and others of his countrymen. By Captain Edward Riou, London, 1792.

† Wherever I speak of measures in this work I must be understood to mean the usual Rhine land measure.
much more fertile by nature than the lands of Mr. Jacob Van Reenen. The property of the latter consists almost entirely of a tract of land more than an hour in length, but seldom exceeding five hundred feet in breadth, which seems formerly to have been the bed of a river, and which towards the south is bounded by a tolerably high shore, which shelters it from the parching winds that blow from that quarter, as well as in some measure from the scorching rays of the sun, both of which have double force when they come over the water. It requires only some observations upon the draining of tracts subject to be overflowed, to render them extremely valuable. That a field of lucerne was mowed eight times in a summer is a striking proof of the great fertility of this valley. Some sorts of European grass which Mr. Van Reenen has sown here have succeeded particularly well. It must not be forgotten that it is these lands which especially require after some years to be supported by plenty of manure.

That such ample returns from the lands is not generally to be expected must not, however, be entirely ascribed to ignorance and want of attention in the owners, but much more to the great distance from the Cape Town, so that they cannot have the same supply of manure, to the want of a sufficient capital to expend upon the culture, and to not having a sufficient number of slaves for tilling the ground. As long as these obstacles continue, and the proprietors depend only on slaves for the culture of their lands, no sanguine hopes are to be entertained of agriculture being greatly improved in the interior of the colony.

Our second day of rest at the Klavervalley was devoted by the Commissary general to visiting another government station called the Groote-post, by which means we saw a different part of the Groenekloof. In the afternoon we were visited by Mr. Jacob Van Reenen and other colonists of the neighbourhood. The former gave me many very interesting details respecting his travels in Caffraria, and evinced a knowledge of the natural history and geography of the country which is seldom to be found among the inhabitants of southern Africa. In his youth he had been in Europe, and had travelled through France and Holland: his wife is sister to our celebrated Mr. Persoon.

Mr. Van Reenen had some of the best horses of his stud brought out to show us. The finest among them was an English horse, which, under the
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

former government, he had procured from England at much trouble and expence, but he hoped to repay himself by the improvement it had introduced among his breed; indeed, the colts we saw were a convincing proof that his hopes were not likely to be deceived. It is not easy to determine of what species the original race of horses at the Cape may have been, as many of these animals were brought from Europe very early in the establishment of the colony. This is certain, that in the time of Vander Stell, horses were brought hither from Persia; and in the middle of the last century some of the race from South America, here called Spanish horses, were introduced at the Cape Town. These are a sort of dapple-grey horse, of a middling size, very strong in the breast, and are found extremely useful as draught horses. Some of the pure race of the Persians have been preserved in the northern districts of the colony; the peculiar characteristics of these are, that they are very tall, have great strength in their knee bones, and can endure a great deal of fatigue; they are of a light brown colour. Few among either race are strikingly handsome.

People who have studied these matters, assert that an African horse is a third weaker in drawing than an European one, but the former have very much the advantage of the latter in climbing mountains and steep places. The Africans, besides, owing to their being accustomed from their youth to seek their nourishment upon dry mountains, are easily satisfied, and grow so hard in the hoofs that there is no occasion to shoe them. They do not bear very severe or long continued exertion, so that oxen are universally employed to draw heavy waggons destined to go any considerable distance from the Cape Town. To enable them to continue at their work they must often be suffered to rest, and must be well fed with barley or oats. If attention be paid to these things they will hold out longer than European horses under similar circumstances: it is indeed almost incredible what a prodigious quantity of ground they will traverse in a very few days. Most of them go a sort of short gallop, very agreeable to the rider as well as to the horse, and they will hold it out for a long time, if not unreasonably pressed forwards; if pressed, they soon become lame and stiff. This pace appears so natural to the race of horses in question that it is not without some difficulty the riders can ever get them into a trot or walk.

E 2
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

In the evening Mr. Van Reenen entertained the company with a concert performed by his slaves. They played first a chorus, and afterwards several marches and dances upon clarinets, French horns, and bassoons. The instruments were good, and there was great reason altogether to be pleased with the performance, though much was wanting to render the harmony complete. They afterwards played upon violins, violoncellos, and flutes, on which they performed equally well. It is not uncommon to find the same thing among many families at the Cape, and there are many freed-men in the town who gain their living by instructing the slaves in music: but neither master or scholars know a single note; they all play entirely by the ear. This practice receives great encouragement from the natural inclination that the slaves, particularly the Malays, have to music, from the passion for dancing that prevails among the young people of the colony, and from the advantage the gentlemen find in having them at hand on all occasions of festivity. I know many great houses in which there is not one of the slaves that cannot play upon some instrument, and where an orchestra is immediately collected together, if the young people of the house, when they are visited in the afternoon by their acquaintance, like to amuse themselves with dancing for an hour or two. At a nod the cook exchanges his saucepan for a flute, the groom quits his curry-comb and takes his violin, and the gardener throwing aside his spade sits down to the violoncello. *

On the morning of the 12th of October we quitted the Klaververvalley and its hospitable owner. At the departure of the Commissary general he was saluted according to the custom of the country, as the representative of the government, with the firing of some small guns. The same was repeated at almost every place we visited, or only passed by, and it seemed to be made so great a point of by the good people, that they would not have considered

* This account of the readiness with which at the Cape the slaves exchange one employment for another forms a striking contrast to the Hindoo servants in India, no one of whom is ever engaged for more than one purpose, or will ever stir a hand or foot to do any thing which is not his or her particular province. The cook, the groom, the gardener, will work indefatigably from morning till night at their respective occupations, but nothing can induce them, neither threats nor entreaties, neither the hope of being rewarded nor the fear of offending, to give the least assistance in any other, though it should be ever so much wanted.—TRANSLATOR.
any thing but an absolute want of powder a sufficient excuse for scuttling it. Even guests of an inferior rank, if they are in any way entitled to distinction, or if people wish to do them honour, are saluted at their departure with firing off a couple of common fowling-pieces. It has many times happened to me in my subsequent travels, when I was alone, that in case of having performed a cure, or done any thing else which gave particular pleasure, such honours were paid to me. The value of this token of respect will be best understood by those who are well aware how much gunpowder is an object of indispensable necessity to the colonists, and how ill they can afford to use it unnecessarily. Without this medium of defence against their savage neighbours and against wild beasts, without the power that it gives of upholding acquisitions already made, and of making new ones in the game that contributes towards the supply of their table, no African household can be long supported:—and it must be moreover taken into consideration, that from the general scarcity of powder which sometimes prevails in the colony, the government will not allow an individual to have more than one or two pounds in his possession at a time;—the value of a single salute is then indeed very great.

Our way lay at first through the hills and valleys of the Groenekloof, till at the north-west extremity of this circuit we arrived at a place called the Oranjefontein: here the country becomes more flat, sandy, and dry. After travelling four hours and a half, we arrived at a small house which stood in a solitary and mournful situation on the declivity of a steep hill, called the Klipberg. This hill had formerly been a signal station, as we recognised from an old cannon now lying upon the top, and the house had been the habitation of the watchman who attended to the signals. Here we found Le Vaillant’s well-known hunting companion, John Slaber, now a lean haggard looking old man, who had already exceeded the ordinary limits of man’s life. His venerable father, so justly celebrated by Le Vaillant, had been dead more than seventeen years. He died so poor that it was necessary to sell the Teefontein, and his children were all settled in small farms. He, as well as all belonging to him, spoke in very warm terms of Le Vaillant, and talked over with evident pleasure a thousand little circumstances of his visit. He had learned from other travellers that he was mentioned by Le Vaillant in his writings, and seemed much delighted at being thus brought into notice.
When we questioned our host upon the subject of the tiger-hunt represented by the traveller as so extremely dangerous, he did not seem to make much of it, and on our reading to him the description given by Le Vaillant, he declared that the principal circumstances were mere invention. The good old mother of John Slaber I had seen several times at the Cape Town at the house of my friend Hesse, the Lutheran minister. From her and her daughters I heard like expressions of regard for Le Vaillant, which however were sometimes accompanied with exceptions against his too minute description of their household economy and manner of living together. This worthy woman died in 1804, at the very advanced age of ninety; a length of years rarely attained in these parts.

The continuation of our way was along a stony and sandy plain, which was strewed over with some low solitary shrubs. Many sorts of heath plants enlivened in a degree the dreariness of the scene: we saw several *pelargonias*, *gnidae*, and *passerine*, with here and there a plant something of the lily kind, and abundance of *garteria*, *asters*, *elichrysea*, and others of the *syngenesia* class, the rays of which were even now expanded to the mid-day sun. To our right the great chain of hills which runs from the north to Cape Agulhas reared their rugged heads in the distance, and we could plainly distinguish the peak, at the foot of which on the other side is the ravine which runs to the valleys of Roodezand.

The place which we reached towards evening, and where we determined to take up our abode for the night, is called Uylekraal. It was the farm of a certain Conrad Laubscher, who supported himself by growing corn and breeding horses. In the rude manner in which his house was built, in the scanty manner in which it was furnished, and in the humble clothing of our host, we immediately recognised our being already at a considerable distance from the Cape Town; yet even here there was an attention to neatness and cleanliness, which we could not but acknowledge was extremely commendable; and this we never failed to see among the colonists, even in the most wretched houses upon the borders. The house was too small to lodge the whole party, so some of our tents were set up, and here we commenced sleeping in the field. As there was yet some time remaining before the hour of retiring to rest, Laubscher brought out a light waggon, to which he harnessed eight horses, and taking the reins with one hand and his long whip
with the other, drove our ladies and a part of the company (the rest following on horseback) in an hour to the Teefontein; which estate now belongs to Mr. John Van Reenen, the eldest brother of the gentlemen whom we had already visited.

All the address of our European waggon drivers vanishes entirely before the very superior dexterity in this way shewn by the Africans. In a very brisk trot, or even in a gallop, they are perfect masters of eight horses, and if the road be indifferent they avoid with the utmost skill every hole and every stone. With horses, as with oxen, the long whip serves not only to regulate the pace of the animals, but to keep them all in a strait line; if any one inclines ever so little from it, a touch from the whip puts him immediately into his place again. Laubscher gave us a singular proof of his dexterity in using his whip, for while we were in full trot he saw at a little distance from the road on a ploughed land a bird which had alighted upon the ground, when giving the whip a flourish, he struck the bird instantly, and killed it upon the spot. His talents in driving astonished us so much the more, as he took the whole management upon himself, nor had any assistance from the slave who usually sits by the driver, and holds the reins, while he only touches them when he wants to guide the horses to the one side or the other: the sharpest corners are turned in this way at full trot. This dexterity is so universal that the people seemed surprised at our seeing anything in it to admire.

The Teefontein is one of the best spots in this sandy country, and the grass it produces is particularly good for the feed of sheep and horses. In the shade of high trees these parts are wholly deficient, and those which are to be seen in Le Vaillant’s engravings are probably introduced there only with the idea of embellishing the landscape. The water is good and well-flavoured, but not in great abundance: its yellowish hue, from which the spring derives its name, is doubtless owing to particles of iron. We were here regaled with a genuine African dish, the anis root,* which has a strong spicy taste, and when cooked seems extremely nourishing. It is in perfection at this time of the year, and is sometimes brought to the Cape Town as a delicacy.

---

* Probably the *sium filifolium* of Thunberg.
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

We returned at night to the dwelling of our host, when I made use of the space afforded by my tent for arranging and putting in order the insects and plants which I had thus far collected. I now perceived that the booty I had acquired far exceeded my expectations, since I had not hoped to find much in this most unfruitful part of the colony. I remarked, extremely to my satisfaction, that these sandy downs were inhabited by insects and plants wholly appropriate to the spot, and varying extremely from those more immediately in the neighbourhood of the Cape Town. Most of them, upon a closer examination, appeared so entirely new, that I must suspect the naturalists who have gone before me of having neglected these parts exceedingly; if not, they must have travelled through them at a very unfavourable season of the year.* I should conceive that a man could scarcely explore this country without almost involuntarily becoming a naturalist. My spirit of collecting these objects seemed to be caught by many of our party; and what we acquired in a day, which we considered as tolerably productive, was always well worthy our attention. With how much trouble soever the collecting them was accompanied, how great soever were our losses through the want of foresight among the slaves, by the overturning of the waggons, or by the injury received from wet in passing through deep rivers;—or how much soever was suffered from the want of sufficient room for stowing them properly, from the necessity of sometimes gathering the plants in a high wind, or catching the insects in a heavy rain;—still with all these allays to our collections being so good as we could wish, the pleasure we derived from them was greater than can be comprehended by any who do not take delight in similar pursuits.

* The riches of Southern Africa, in objects of natural history hitherto unknown, has been confirmed by the collection of insects which I brought with me. Among between six and seven hundred sorts there were three hundred and forty which Professor Illiger found entirely new. A small collection sent over a short time before by the Lutheran minister, Hesse, to my friend, Mr. Hausmann (an account of which has been given in Professor Illiger’s Entomological Magazine), was no less rich in rare objects. This collection was chiefly made in the neighbourhood of the Teefontein, and at our visit there we found the daughter of Mr. Van Reenen occupied in completing it.
CHAP. III.

Saldanha Bay—Frugal Meal at Geelbek—History and Description of Saldanha Bay.—Upon its Advantages and Disadvantages, and upon the different Plans which have been proposed for obviating the latter.—Flock of Flamingos.—The Islands of Saldanha Bay.—Interesting Old Soldier.

Early in the morning of the following day preparations for our departure were made; when the tents being struck, and with the rest of our field equipage repacked, we set forward at seven in the morning. We came again to the Teefontein which we had visited the day before; and notwithstanding our haste to get on, that we might lie by in the great heat of the day, the friendly owners insisted upon our stopping to take a breakfast with them. We then proceeded on our way through a country very much resembling what we had traversed the day before, passing a stream, called here the Long Fountain, which proved a great comfort to our horses, as it gave them an opportunity of quenching for awhile the thirst by which they suffered so much. From hence the country grows more and more sandy, and it was really grievous to see the exertions which it cost our poor oxen to draw the waggons along. The waggoners had the good sense to propose their going along the eastern shore of the bay, while we ourselves explored the peninsula which lies between the bay and the open sea.

After three hours very fatiguing travelling, both to ourselves and our cattle, in an almost insupportable heat, we at length espied the southern end of the bay: the sight of this smooth expanse of water, surrounded by a circuit of high hills, was quite reviving to us. A house which we saw at a little distance seemed to offer us all that was wanting to the full enjoyment of the scene—protection from the heat of the sun; but, alas! when we arrived we found it entirely shut up, nor was any sign of another human habitation to be discovered within the reach of our eyes. We had therefore half resolved to set up a tent for our honoured chief and the ladies, under the shelter of a
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

half-ruined shed, when we were addressed by an old man, who appeared of Mozambique, in a language composed of Portuguese, Dutch, and Malay. He gave us to understand that he belonged to the house, and took care of the oxen in a neighbouring field—that his master was absent, but he had come to offer us his services. In answer to our request to be admitted into the house, he said that his master had taken the key with him, but we were exceedingly welcome to the use of his own little apartment. Here we found a clean table, a couple of stools, and a couch with an ox hide spread over it, but in our situation even such accommodations were most acceptable. In addition to what cold provisions we had with us, he brought us his whole little stock of bread; we enquired for eggs, as we saw poultry about the place; but this demand was not easily satisfied. As there was no roost for the hens, they laid their eggs about in the fields, and it was not till after a good deal of searching that our people could collect a dozen. Refreshed, however, by this frugal meal and two hour's rest, we set forwards again in the afternoon: we learnt afterwards from the slaves that this place was called Geelbek.

Our course was now along the western shore of the bay, sometimes upon the very sand itself; sometimes over the rocks which projected almost into the water; when we had indeed a delightful view over the bay. The fishermen's huts strewed about the shore—the still water, peopled with here and there a flamingo, and various other sorts of water-fowl—the hilly tract on the other side, bounded at last by the lofty and picturesque Piket mountain, composed altogether a very fine landscape, which from its diversity was more particularly deserving of admiration. The fault of African scenery in general is that its principal characteristic is a dry and naked uniformity: the lover of the picturesque will above all things find the want of a rich foreground, and must call to his assistance either the habitations of mankind, or their employments.

In the midst of the peninsula a rugged and lofty mountain runs directly into the bay. Over it lies the road, with deep precipices on the right hand, and on the left crags, on which were growing many sorts of succulent plants, and shrubs with leaves of a greenish grey. The noise of our cavalcade frightened numbers of little antelopes, who, starting up on both sides, fled through the bushes, so that we could only now and then catch a glimpse of them as they from time to time raised their heads to look at us. All on a
sudden the van of our troop, who were armed with fowling-pieces, stopped short, alarmed with the writhings of a frightful serpent upon the ledge of a crag, which raised up its crest, swelling and pulling itself out. One of the men aimed his piece at it, and shot it dead instantly. It proved to be a puff-adder, as we believed, one of the most poisonous species that are found in this country; but since no branch of natural history in Southern Africa has been hitherto more neglected than the reptiles, I am not able to give the scientific name with any degree of certainty. This animal is distinguishable by a disproportionate thickness, and by a body handsomely spotted with black and white spots upon a brownish ground; it has this peculiarity, that when it is enraged it swells out its neck to a very great size. It measured in length about an ell and a half, and was about six inches round in its greatest circumference.

The sun was already going down when we reached the government-post in Saldanha Bay. The superintendent of the bay, who bears the title of postholder, lives in a very convenient well furnished house upon the shore, to the left of which is a prominent hill, bearing the signal-post on its highest point. By the side of the house is a spring of tolerably good water, but the supply is so scanty that it is secured by a wall and cover, which can be fastened down. The name of the present postholder is Stoffberg: he is by birth a German, and was formerly a subordinate officer in the garrison of the Cape. He received us with great hospitality, and took infinite pains during the two days that we remained here to make us thoroughly acquainted with every thing relating to the bay. The reader will perhaps not be displeased at my inserting an abstract of the information which I obtained relative to this interesting spot.

Saldanha Bay has hitherto had the fate, the perverse fate as it may perhaps justly be called, of being falsely laid down even in the latest maps, and of being no less erroneously described. Of this the following notice, when compared with former ones, will be a sufficient proof.

Antonio de Saldanha, commander of the third division of a Portuguese fleet, which was under the supreme command of the celebrated Albuquerque, and was destined to pursue the discoveries of Vasco de Gama, landed, as Barros*

---

* *João de Barros dos factos que os Portugueses fizeram.—Lisboa 1592. A more ample account may be seen in the History of the Discoveries in Southern Africa.
relates in the year 1503, in a bay of Southern Africa, which was in the
sequel called after him, *Algoada de Saldanha.*—This was no other than what
is now called Table Bay, as is sufficiently proved by all the circumstances which
Barros minutely details. For a whole century it retained the name of the
Portuguese hero, and it was called so equally by the English, till in the year
1601 its present name of Table Bay was given it by the Dutch navigator,
George Spilberg. It was then, though I have not been able to discover by
what means, that the name of Saldanha Bay was transferred to that of which
we are now to treat. On account of its want of good water, this has
never been much used as a road for large ships, and since the commence-
ment of the seventeenth century it has been little frequented but by whale
fishers and seal catchers.

In the beginning of the eighteenth century the Dutch began to cultivate
the land in the neighbourhood of the bay, when it soon appeared that parti-
cular spots were fertile beyond all expectation. The fields on the coast,
above all, which were moistened by the vapours from the sea, afforded, even
in the poorest years, abundance of wholesome food for the cattle. How
imperfectly this bay was then known is obvious from examining the old maps,
and reading the description given of it by Kolbe. In most of the maps it is
represented as running a great way inland, in an almost easterly direction;
Mr. Barrow’s is the first in which a more accurate delineation is given,
but on comparing even his with what accompanies this work, it will be found
that they differ in many essential points. I leave this comparison to any
reader who chooses to make it, as far as the figure of the bay is concerned,
and shall only observe here that our maps vary no less as to its situation.
According to Mr. Barrow the mouth of the bay is in latitude 33° 10’ south;—
according to my calculations it is 32° 54’. *

Saldanha Bay is unquestionably the most secure and convenient harbour
on the whole coast of Southern Africa; indeed, there are not many to be

* Mr. Barrow, in the second part of his *Travels,* acknowledges the defectiveness of his map,
though not with the manly frankness and openness which might be wished. Against the
favourable testimony of General Vandeleur, to which he appeals, I must venture to set up my
own, and observe that I seldom found it of any use: as, for example, Graaff Reinet and Algoa
Bay are laid down a whole degree too far eastward.
found in other parts equal to it for size, security, and the goodness of the anchorage. Five little islands, three of which are at the mouth of the harbour, the other two towards the southern part, appear planted there by the hand of nature, to break the force of the west winds which blow into the bay: it is besides almost surrounded with hills, so that none but the north wind, which is here very rare, can disturb the smoothness and glassy surface of the water. The bay is large enough to contain several fleets; and the northern part of the bason, called the Hoetjes Bay, is of such a breadth, and the water so deep, that the largest ships can not only lie safely at anchor, but can even manoeuvre there. Towards the south the bay assumes constantly more and more the appearance of a fresh-water lake; it grows gradually shallower and shallower, and abounds exceedingly with fish. Mr. Stoffberg assured me that as much fish had once been taken in a single afternoon as when salted filled six hogsheads. As this is a sort of food that the slaves love exceedingly, many colonists have fisheries in the bay, or fetch in cart loads from the owners of the above mentioned fishing-huts, the provision for their household. The salted fish is sent from hence over the Tulbagh, even as far as the Bokkeveld and Goudinie. In the winter months the whale, called by Linnaeus balana glacialis, appears in shoals in the bay, and may be taken with very little trouble.

The land hereabouts, as has been already observed, is extremely fertile, and by improving the mode of husbandry pursued, the crops of corn might probably be increased at least a third. The garden-vegetables are thought to be particularly well flavoured.

Amid so many favourable circumstances, it may perhaps seem a matter of wonder that at the establishment of the colony this spot was not rather chosen for building a town than the open and insecure shores of Table Bay; at least it may appear strange that ships do not by preference run in here in winter; but against so many advantages one disadvantage must be acknowledged, which perhaps counterbalances them all, and that is the want of good water. The quantity of this indispensable article to be obtained here is so small that it hardly deserves to be mentioned, when the question is to supply a numerous assemblage of persons, or to administer to the wants of a fleet. The well belonging to the spring at the government-post will contain thirty hogsheads, but it is seldom that above a fourth part of that quantity can be
drawn in one day. The postholder can scarcely satisfy the wants of even a very small travelling party, without endangering the not leaving a sufficiency for his own cattle and his household purposes. Another spring upon the signal-post hill is perfectly salt, and though in flowing down it loses this quality in a certain degree, which is somewhat extraordinary, still even at the bottom it is undrinkable: the water has been found equally salt and brackish in several wells that have been dug. A question may here very naturally be asked, whether no attempts have been made to remedy or at least to alleviate this evil, and if any, of what description. It is certain that the attention of many persons who understand these matters perfectly has been exercised upon it, but hitherto to very little purpose. Mr. Barrow, in his work, has offered many well sounding hints upon the subject, but they are only such as had been brought forward long before by different inhabitants of the Cape, This induces me to dwell somewhat diffusely upon them, and to examine the question more closely, and under more variety of aspects than it has been examined by him.

This gentleman, who in some respects is undoubtedly an estimable writer, has, as well as his imitators, raised a great outcry against the confined views, the inactivity, and cupidty of the former Dutch government, which they say threw a damp upon all endeavours at improvement; and this is now become so much the general voice of all the reading part of Europe, that I should be almost fearful of saying any thing in opposition to it, were it not that better information, and a consciousness of the utmost impartiality, urges me to speak, and would render a timid silence an offence against truth. *Audiatur et altera pars.*

It should always be borne in mind that the judgment to be formed of any measure must depend much upon the relation it bears to the powers of the person or persons by whom it is to be pursued, and to the degree of benefit which may eventually be derived from it.—To apply this rule to the present case, it may be asked whether while the Dutch were masters of the colony it was ever desirable that Saldanha Bay should be provided with water and all other things in which it is deficient for supplying the wants of ships: I do not hesitate a moment to answer this question in the negative, and these are my reasons.

Granted that Saldanha Bay was on a sudden amply furnished with water,
and by this means rendered the most eligible harbour upon the whole coast, what would be the advantages derived from it?—that it would be more frequented by ships, that the situation of the country round would be improved, that foreigners would perhaps reside there, that houses would be built, that in short a new colony would be established. But this it must be well understood would continue only as long as it might please the English to remain at peace, and permit neutral vessels free ingress and egress to and from the place.

And how are these advantages to be obtained, excepting at the expense of deserting the present colony at the Cape Town. Enormous costs must be incurred for erecting fortifications, magazines, barracks, and other necessary buildings, above all, a permanent administration in the mother country would be indispensable, that the sub-government here might not be liable to be changed. Another important question is, what number of troops would be requisite to defend works so much more extensive as they must necessarily be, and to garrison the posts which must then be established all along the coast from the Cape to the bay. And for whom would all these enormous expences be incurred?—only for the English, who, at the breaking out of every new war, would probably be seized with their usual longing again to possess themselves of this settlement. Let the number of troops employed by Holland in the defence of the colony be ever so great, the English will send a greater force against it. The favourable circumstances attending the bay may be urged; the little islands at its mouth, the heights by which it is surrounded, so formed by nature for the erection of batteries and works of defence; the superiority of the English naval tactics would laugh at these things, they would sail through, spite of the batteries, and effect a landing at the back of the islands.

No, in the inaccessibility and inhospitality of the African coast, in the unfruitfulness of the soil, and want of water about her bays, has consisted hitherto the principal means of her defence. The force could at any time be concentrated on one point, and being assailable only on the side of the sea, no apprehensions were to be entertained of an attack on the rear by land. The difficulties of a landing in Saldanha Bay were sufficiently experienced by England in its expedition against the colony in 1806. It was superfluous, because the matter would have been much sooner decided in the neighbourhood of the Cape; indeed, the plan must inevitably have miscarried, if the
orders issued by the governor for the inhabitants to retire into the interior of the country, carrying with them their cattle and all their moveable property, or destroying whatever they could not carry away, had been punctually obeyed; and this would have been done, if the citizens of the Cape Town, who had possessions there, had shared in any degree the zeal and enthusiasm of the distant colonists. It would have been an unpardonable fault in the Dutch government, if they had attempted to form a settlement of any consequence in any of the bays near the Cape, since their inability to defend them either by land or water would have rendered them only a certain prey to the enemy in case of a new war.

Let us now examine the plans that have been suggested for procuring a supply of water in Saldanha Bay. Before Mr. Barrow, it had been proposed by Mr. Frederic Kirsten to make a canal from the Berg river to the bay. Against this project, which has cost its supporters many quires of paper, and some drawings, several weighty considerations may be urged: I cannot pretend here to give a complete analysis of them, but the following are among the most important.

In the first place, the little fall that this canal would have. The water for four miles* up the Berg river continues to be salt, and the canal must commence half a mile higher up, where this river joins its waters with those of the Zout, so that the canal must be carried along a course of six miles and a half. As it is then agreed that the level of the water in Saldanha Bay is the same as that in the Berg river, where it ceases to be salt, there would be no more fall for the waters of the canal through so long a course, than the Berg river has in half a mile: but it seems never to have entered into the heads of the projectors that any attention to the levels of the waters was necessary. Further, in order to conduct the canal by the nearest way, and render it of the greatest possible advantage, high hills must be cut through. Moreover, the whole work must be carried through a sandy country, which is ill suited to an open canal; and if it should be proposed to conduct the water by means of leaden pipes, it must be considered that the least injury received by them in any part would occasion an entire stoppage of the whole. Lastly, the Berg

* It must here be recollected that the writer reckons by German miles, every one of which is equal to five miles English.—Translator.
The river itself is not at all times of the year well supplied with water, as Mr. Barrow himself observes: the supply is sometimes so scanty, that vessels in Saldanha Bay, depending on this canal for furnishing them with the necessary provision of water, might run the hazard of being detained for a length of time, which would not be found very pleasant. Nay, it is not impossible that through malice the water might be stopped at a moment when large fleets are lying in the bay, which would be a very sufficient reason for deterring them from ever making a second visit of the kind. I say nothing here of the expense: it is estimated by Mr. Barrow at about ten thousand pounds sterling, a sum which might indeed be sufficient in Europe, but not in a country where nothing is done but by the hands of slaves, every one of whom costs at least half a dollar per day, while after all he does not get through above a third part of the work performed by an European day-labourer.

Another plan has been to make the canal from the spring at the White-Cliff, which is not more than a mile and a half from Saldanha Bay, and from which there is a much greater fall. But this spring would never yield half sufficient for any considerable number of vessels;—and here again the advantage derived would not answer the expense incurred.

All the abortive attempts that have been made by digging to find good water still cannot convince Mr. Barrow that none is to be found; the fault has been in the poor peasants who did not understand how to search for it, for water there must be, because at the distance of ten or twelve miles lies a range of high hills, whence it must filter through the ground in subterranean channels, and this is proved by the granite to be found at a certain depth in the earth. This theory of Mr. Barrow's is pretty much of the same nature with that formed by him upon the saltiness of the sea, and is one of the errors which in another place he has demonstrated more at large. The difficulty of bringing these lands into high cultivation, according to him, is not to be ascribed to their nature, it must be sought for in the character of the possessors and in the faults of the government, and he dips his pen in the bitterest gall, to represent both, as the ne plus ultra of rusticity, of awkwardness, of short-sightedness, and of cupidity. He cannot forgive the Dutch government that it has not expended enormous sums upon the colony
to make it a more brilliant conquest for the minister of his king;—to render the acquisition of it a more dazzling exploit in the eyes of the people.

It is proved by the registers of the former East-India Company that the establishment at the Cape of Good Hope, during one hundred and forty-three years that it remained under the government of that society, had more than a hundred millions of guilders expended upon it, without reckoning what little the colony itself contributed towards its support. The gains derived from it were at the same time small, since during peace all other naval powers shared the advantages of the establishment, without contributing anything more to its support than the trilling sum paid for anchorage there. In time of war, on the contrary, the defence of it was an immense expense to the possessors, and the little advantages it derived from its trade were almost entirely annihilated, because not only the ships of the enemy absented themselves, but it was almost equally deserted by neutrals. This colony would long ago have become the prey of one of the two great naval powers, had it not been that their reciprocal envy of each other preserved the possession of it to Holland. They preferred its remaining in the hands of a subordinate power to its passing into those of an enemy, and nothing was more natural than that England should become master of it, when France sunk only to a secondary rank as a naval power.

During the seven years that the colony of the Cape was in the possession of England, not less than sixteen millions of pounds sterling was expended upon it by the British government, as has been asserted by several Englishmen from the most authentic documents, and yet in what a wretched condition was it when restored to Holland in 1803. The inhabitants of the Cape Town alone, and indeed only some individuals among them, had derived any advantage from this enormous expenditure. Luxury was introduced, and from the inundation of merchandise sent thither, articles of clothing and fashion became cheap, without the real wants of the government being therefore satisfied on more moderate terms. The interior of the colony was meanwhile in the highest state of dilapidation, all public institutions neglected, all public buildings suffered to fall into decay. I suspect, not without good ground, that this arose very much from the English government never considering this as a permanent possession; that having resolved at a peace rather
to give up the Cape than Ceylon, they were not solicitous to make improvements for the benefit of their successors. This seems proved by the little that was done notwithstanding such enormous sums were expended: time will discover whether in their second possession of it the efforts of the British government will be more happily directed. The liberal spirit shewn by this government towards some of her colonies leaves much room for hope: I must however doubt much, whether they will ever be seized with a fancy to carry Mr. Barrow’s plans for the improvement of Saldanha Bay into execution.

Another thing in which this bay is deficient must not pass unnoticed, since for that, as well as the former, Mr. Barrow thinks he has found a remedy; this is the want of a good supply of firewood, an article of great importance to vessels which are numerously manned. He conceives that the various sorts of shrubby plants which grow all about these sand-hills might be used for this purpose, especially the thick woody roots of one particular sort (he probably means the cassania spicata), which, as he says, grow to such a size as to form almost a subterraneous forest. But here it must be remembered that the continuance of this provision cannot be depended upon in the case of large fleets requiring to be supplied from it. These subterraneous forests are of very long growth, and would be much sooner destroyed than renewed. Against the proposal to plant the oak, the poplar, and the silver-tree, no other objection need be made than that it is impracticable, since from the saltiness of the earth nothing will grow here but the proper natives of the soil; that is to say, when the question is of large trees which strike very deep roots.

To return to the continuation of our journey. It seemed a little extraordinary to us the next morning as we looked through our glasses to the opposite shore of the bay not to perceive our waggons at the appointed place. They arrived however about eleven o’clock, having toiled all night to make their way through the deep sands. At some places they had been obliged to fasten the hinder waggons to the foremost, and even then, with the united power of four and twenty oxen, great efforts were necessary to get them on. Some idea may hence be formed of the difficulties to be encountered in taking long journeys in this country.

A boat was now prepared, in which I embarked to take a more accurate survey of the bay. It is in this part about a quarter of a mile over, and fo
large vessels not navigable much farther in length. In our little boat, the
tide being at the ebb, we were obliged to steer at a considerable
distance from a vast bank of sand, which, running into the middle of the bay, reduces
its breadth by nearly a third. A large troop of flamingos, at least, as we
guessed, two hundred in number, were walking about upon this bank appa-
rently to seek for the sand-worms which had buried themselves there. We
came within a hundred and fifty paces of them, and could see very plainly
their singular manner of eating, raising their food from the ground with the
upper part of their bill and then twisting their long necks backwards to make
it pass down. I had afterwards a couple of these animals alive in my pos-
session, when I remarked that they never eat in any other way; and as they
soon died for want of their accustomed food, I applied myself to a closer
examination of their bills, when I perceived that the under part is entirely
immoveable, and locked as it were fast into the jaw-bone. It is remarked
by the colonists that these birds do not breed here. They disappear entirely
in the very hot season of the year, but no young ones are seen among them
at their return. Probably the young remain at their birth-place till they have
strength enough to undertake a long journey; and that may not be the first
year. These birds not being considered as of any use, since no Apicius,
Caligula, Vitellius, or Heliogabalus, has yet discovered that their tongues
are a particular dainty for the table, are never molested, though it would not
be difficult with a well-charged piece to kill a dozen at one shot. They are
therefore not shy, so that they will permit people to come very near them
before they attempt to fly away.

Another day a larger party of us made a voyage to the nearest of the small
islands, called Shapen-Island (Sheep Island) from the excellent feed that it
affords for these animals. This islet is about an hour in circumference, and
resembles very much the Robben-Island (Seal Island) at the mouth of Table
Bay. The foundation is granite, and here and there appear veins of loam or
argile. There is a little spring on the northern side, but the water is
brackish, and the supply scanty. The vegetation is confined chiefly to some
sorts of the *mesembryanthemum*, particularly the *mesembryanthemum crys-
tallinum*, or ice-plant as it is generally called, and some little shrubby plants.
The inhabitants of this as well as the other islands, are chiefly sea-fowl, ser-
pents, and lizards: European rabbits are also to be found, the descendents
of some which were once brought here, and which have increased exceedingly.

Up to this island, or at least within half a mile of it, the bay is deep enough for small vessels; larger must lie between this and the Mecuwen Island, and ships of war will find the depth necessary for them to the north of the islands in the Hoetjes Bay. The three other islands are called the Jutten, the Malagassen, and the Marcus, islands; the last lies the nearest to Hoetjes Bay. About six or seven miles south of these, in the open sea, lies Dassen Island, which is little visited, so that seals are still to be found there, though they are almost extirpated from the other islands. On this island is a simple inscription engraven on a stone to the memory of a Danish sea captain who was buried there. A favourable south east wind and ebb-tide had carried us in an hour from the Government-post to Shapen-Island, but for this very reason our return was tedious, and lasted three hours in a burning sun. In the evening we visited the signal station, from which we had a very fine view over the whole bay with all its islands.

In the house of our host lived an old soldier, now in his eightieth year, who had served under the great Frederick in the seven years war; he had then entered into the Dutch service, and at the taking of the Cape by the English had lost a pension which had been given him as an invalid: in consequence of the distress to which he was thus reduced, the excellent Stoffberg had taken him into his house, where he maintained him entirely. The old man interested us exceedingly, particularly from his extreme vivacity and animation. He had still his faculties perfect, and gave us an account with the utmost energy and accuracy, of the battles in which he had been engaged. He played us some marches and dances upon his violin, with more than common spirit, and remains of former excellence.

Our supper was made principally upon eggs of penguins and sea-gulls,* which we had collected at Shapen-Island; the flavour of the yolk we thought good, but not equal to that of a hen's-egg. The white acquired by cooking a sort of transparent yellow consistence, which had somewhat the appearance of opal.

* The *aptenodytes demersa*, and *diomedea exulans* of Linnaeus.
Departure from Saldanha-Bay.—Laubscher's Farm.—Hippopotamus Hunt.—Ex-
treme Age of a Slave.—The Mouth of the Berg-River.—Bay of St. Helena.—
Tedian Passage of the Berg-River.—The Piket-Mountain.—The Widow Lieu-
zenberg's Farm.—District of the four and twenty Rivers.—Leiste's Farm.—Ge-
lukwaard.—Forwardness of the European Plants here.—Cultivation of Rice and
Indigo.

On Sunday, the sixteenth of October, we took leave of the excellent
Mr. Stoffberg and his family, and having sent our horses round the day
before to the other side of the bay, we now crossed over ourselves in a boat,
and rejoined them: the cavalry had been entertained for the night at a small
house upon the strand. Our course lay still through a sandy level country,
scattered over with heath plants; but after awhile we began to ascend by
slow degrees till we came to the summit of a widely extended hill, called
the Mastenberg. After three hours travelling on the other side of this hill,
we arrived at a place called the little Spring-fountain, where dwelt a
colonist of the name of Stadler: our want of rest and his very kind and
hospitalable solicitations induced us to stop here for more than an hour.

The number of beautiful insects which I now saw wherever I looked invited
me irresistibly to loiter behind, when our company set forwards again, and lead-
ing my horse, I indulged myself awhile in pursuing my favourite occupation.
The shrubs, which were higher than what we had generally seen, united
with several sorts of protea, thus, and other small trees, confined the prospect,
and brought in some sort to my remembrance the little woods of my native
country. I followed, perhaps with too much eagerness, a beautiful chafer
which flew before me, till I lost my way, and got into a wrong road. Very
possibly I might not have rejoined the company that day, had not some of them,
missing me, sent a young colonist in search of their stray companion, when,
with the usual sharp-sightedness of his countrymen at tracing any one, he
soon found me. By him I was conducted in safety to the house of one of
the richest colonists of the country, Mr. Jacob Laubscher, where the rest of
the party had arrived some hours before. We found his house a very indif-
ferent looking one as to the exterior, but more comfortable and better fur-
nished within than any we had yet seen; while the number and size of the
out-buildings were sufficient vouchers that our host was a man of no incon-
siderable property. Indeed, he maintained a sort of patriarchal household, of
which some idea may be formed by stating that the stock of the farm consisted
of eighty horses, six hundred and ninety head of horned cattle, two thousand
four hundred and seventy sheep, and an immense quantity of poultry of all
kinds. The family itself, including masters, servants, hottentots, and slaves,
consisted of a hundred and five persons, for whose subsistence the patriarch
had to provide daily. The quantity of corn sown upon his estate this year,
including every description, amounted to sixty-one bushels.

By what is here stated, it will be seen that an African farm may almost be
called a State in miniature, in which the wants and means of supplying them
are reciprocal, and where all are dependent one upon another. From the
produce of the lands and flocks must the whole tribe be fed, so that the
surplus is not so great as might be supposed at first sight; it perhaps hardly
more than compensates the outgoings for objects which cannot be raised upon
the spot. These may be classed under three heads: first, articles of manu-
facture, as cloth, linen, hats, arms: secondly of luxury, as tea, coffee,
sugar, spices, &c.:—thirdly of raw materials, as iron, pitch, and rosin.
'Tis only through the medium of these wants that a colonist is connected
with the rest of the world; and I believe I may venture to assert, that ex-
cepting articles of the above description, there is scarcely any thing necessary
for the supply of his household which is not drawn from his own premises.
All kinds of handicraft works, such I mean as are here wanted, are performed
by the slaves, for there are few indeed among them who are not instructed in
some mechanical occupation, and the dwelling is surrounded with work-shops
of all kinds. It is really interesting to see so many different employments
and pursuits comprehended within so small a space.

Over every branch of these works the master himself has an eye of super-
intendence, and amid such a variety of objects this is no light task: how
little soever therefore he may work himself, it would be the grossest injustice
to accuse him of sloth or idleness. The African land-owner is incessantly
occupied in some way or other, nor thinks of availing himself of his situation, or his wealth, to shun business, and seek the life of ease, for which, among us, affluence would afford so just a pretence. And though, from the heat of the climate, from his sequestered mode of life, from the absence of that kind of intercourse with his fellow-creatures which is created by living in a city, from the liberality of nature in furnishing him plentifully with all things necessary to satisfy the most pressing wants of life, and other circumstances of a similar nature, the colonists around the Cape acquire a certain phlegm, a slowness in their movements which may be easily mistaken for indolence, and which forms a striking contrast to the restless bustling manner prevalent among the same class in the north of Europe: they are in reality any thing rather than indolent.

What Göthe remarks in his _Fragments upon Italy_, with respect to the indolence of the lower classes at Naples, of which so much has been said, will apply extremely well here. The northern nations, he observes, judge the nations of the south, who live under so very different a heaven, too much according to their own feelings and their own view of things, without making a sufficient allowance for the influence of external circumstances; and he cites, as a confirmation of this remark, the judgment passed by de Pauw in his _Recherches sur les Grecs._

When Mr. Barrow among the many accusations he brings against the African colonists (and he certainly has not been sparing of them) charges them with extreme sloth, he shows either that he has never paid due attention to their household economy, or that he has no discrimination with regard to the difference of circumstances created by difference of climate, but expects the same exertions from a peasant at the Cape as from an English day-labourer. I forbear here to enter upon a diffuse discussion of this subject, because a more appropriate occasion for it will occur in another part of my work; but I cannot omit observing that even in my first journey I was led almost daily to ask myself whether these were really the same African colonists which the celebrated Mr. Barrow represented as such barbarians, as such more than half savages—so much did I find the reality in contradiction to his descriptions.

The Rietvalley, for this was again the name given to the place where we were now resting, lies very near the Berg-river. Mr. Laubscher's dwelling-
house stands upon a considerable height at not above a quarter of an hour's distance from its bank. The country between affords excellent grass, and if ploughed would no doubt produce corn in abundance. The mouth of the river is about three miles distant from this place, taking a direct line, but double in following all the twistings and windings of the stream. When the north-west wind blows strong into the bay of St. Helena, the salt water not only comes up the river as far as the Rietvalley, but nearly an hour's distance beyond it, so that the inhabitants being deprived of fresh water for their cattle are obliged to drive them to other parts. To balance this inconvenience, the valley has the advantage of being a spot where a disease among cattle called the lamzichte (a sort of murrain of the most pernicious kind, since the animal infected with it becomes entirely lame) is wholly unknown. At the time when this disease prevails in any part, cattle are sent hither even from a distance to remain till the danger of infection is over, and this brings sometimes a good deal of money to the purses of the inhabitants.

The Berg-river is remarkable as being the only one within the boundaries of the colony where the hippotamos or river-horse, called here the sea-cow, is to be found. One of the governors, about the middle of the former century, Mr. Tulbagh, thinking it would be a pity to extirpate these animals, and that some ought to be preserved, set a fine of a thousand guilders upon the destruction of a river-horse. According to Laubscher's account, there was now in the river ten or twelve of these monsters, who in the day-time scarcely ever appeared above the water, but who often came on shore at night, and did great damage in the fields, not only eating the young corn, but trampling down a great deal more with their heavy unwieldy feet. On the very day of our arrival one was perceived in the valley directly opposite the house. This occasioned permission to be given by the Commissary-general for a hunt of these animals to be commenced, only one of which however was to be killed. When this was done, the skin, the skeleton, and the principal entrails, were to be carefully prepared, and dispatched to the Cape Town, since we were sufficiently near to it for this to be practicable; from the distance at which in general these unwieldy monsters are to be found, like preparations are in danger of being much damaged in the transport. But alas! our plan, however excellently arranged, was in the end wholly frustrated, and the chace was of necessity abandoned. As it can only be per-
formed by water, a boat was ordered out for the purpose, but when we came to examine it we found it was leaky, nor was there one to be procured in which we could trust ourselves upon the water without manifest danger. We were therefore obliged to be contented with examining the traces which the animal had left upon the shore: the impression of the foot was as large as an ordinary sized trencher, and in the mud close on the shore, where the creature had sunk deeper, between the marks of the feet was plainly to be discerned a furrow made by the large protuberant belly.

Another object worthy of remark which we saw in this neighbourhood was a slave who must have nearly attained the great age of a hundred and twenty. Although he could not tell his age himself, it might from many circumstances be calculated nearly to a certainty. He perfectly remembered that when he left his native country of Java, General Van Outhoorn, was governor of Batavia, and the period of his government was from 1691 to 1704. Besides, on the first of January, 1801, he came in the morning to offer his best wishes to his then master upon the commencement of a new century, when he added that it was the second time he had performed this ceremony. A hundred years before, he, with all his fellow slaves, had presented themselves before his then master at the Cape Town, to offer him the like good wishes; and it was only by his having done so that he could on the second occasion instruct his comrades in their duty, since it was a piece of courtesy which they were not aware ought to be practised. He moreover described accurately what the Cape Town was at that time, consisting only of a few small houses, without any church, and a wooden castle. He spoke with great warmth and gratitude of his master, Mr. Milde, who he said took such excellent care of him though he was not able to work any longer; praises which were echoed unanimously by all the slaves. Indeed, whoever had an opportunity of contemplating, though but for a short time, the deportment of this excellent man towards his children, his household, and dependents, the manner in which he issued his commands, administered reproofs, or inflicted punishments, must almost have fancied that he saw the days of the patriarchs revived. Nor are such instances rare. The truth is, that instead of the odious representations which have been made by some persons of the behaviour of masters in this country towards their dependents, being descriptive of their general conduct, these have rather been taken from parti-
cicular instances which ought to have been cited as exceptions: nor have any circumstances relating to the colony of the Cape been more misrepresented than the manner in which the colonists conduct themselves towards their slaves and Hottentots.

On the eighteenth of October we agreed to make an excursion to the mouth of the Berg-river. Mr. Frederic Kirsten, whose name I have already mentioned in speaking of Saldanha Bay, had invited us to a small estate of his called Fishwater, near the mouth of the river, whence we could take a nearer view both of that and the bay of St. Helena.

This bay both in its figure and situation resembles Table Bay very much; it is open to the same winds, and equally insecure. I must here observe that this was the first place in these parts visited by Europeans. Vasco de Gama landed here, according to Barros, in November, 1497, on the day of St. Helena, which occasioned the name of this saint to be given to the bay, and it is the only place upon the coast which has retained its original Portuguese name; the rest have been all exchanged for Dutch ones.* Some doubt may indeed be started whether there has not equally been a change here, since Barros expressly says that Gama did not find any river in the bay where he landed, and was obliged to procure a supply of water four Portuguese leagues farther northward; this river he calls Rio San Jago. Unless therefore it can be allowed that the Berg-river had at that time a different course, which is by no means impossible, we must suppose the bay where Gama landed to be some other than what is now called the bay of St. Helena.

The Berg-river, which is not in general broad, is about a hundred and sixty or a hundred and eighty feet over at its mouth. It shares the general fate of rivers in Southern Africa, the mouths of which are almost all choked with banks of sand. This, as well as most others, has a considerable fall, and at some parts of the year the stream is rapid indeed, carrying with it large quantities of soil and sand. Besides, these rivers with few exceptions empty themselves into the open sea, so that the winds which blow against the shore often for many months together, drive the sands up from the sea, when uniting with those that are brought down the stream, they constantly increase

* It is true that the name of Saldanha Bay is Portuguese, but it must be remembered that the bay now so called is not that to which the name was originally given.
the obstructions. According to the time of year, during one part of which the power of the waves from the sea, and during the other the force of the stream preponderates, the bank of sand spreads out in breadth, or runs in length into the sea. Most of the streams on the southern coast may be forded at the mouths at ebb-tide, some are even quite dry. As the coast runs northward, some rivers which flow to the west, running through large sandy plains, are entirely lost in the sands before they reach the sea. Nor is this confined to small streams; it is equally the case even with pretty considerable rivers. The Orange-river, which at a distance up the country has a narrow rocky channel, over which it rushes with great force, and with a violent noise, nevertheless, in its subsequent progress, when it flows through a widely extended sandy plain, becomes an easy prey to the absorbing rays of the sun: an additional instance of the impotence of broken and divided powers.

The bank at the mouth of the Berg-river is so nearly dry at ebb-tide as not to have above two foot water, so that it is difficult even for small sloops to pass in and out of the river. It was a project of Monsieur Degrandpré's to clear the bank quite away so as to make a passage for large ships; but it must be obvious at the first glance that this was the idea of a man wholly ignorant of the subject on which he pretended to treat, and one that could only be countenanced by those who understand nothing of the nature and causes of like obstructions; who are moreover wholly ignorant of the difficulties attending the opposing by works of any kind the force of the waters upon an open sea coast.

In examining the coast northwards from the bay of St. Helena, it will appear obvious that in all the maps of the country hitherto drawn, this bay has been placed far too much to the north. Its direction from hence according to the compass is north north-west. About an hour and half south from the bay lies the Partridge Mountain, between five and six hundred feet high. From this hill Table Bay may be seen very distinctly. General Janssen, indeed, when he was here in the year 1804, remarked that he and all the company with him could plainly distinguish with their naked eyes a vessel sailing into the bay. The clearness of the air, and the glittering of the white sail in the setting sun, favoured exceedingly the distinguishing such an object, yet it
seems almost incredible, if the fact had not been vouched for by several respectable
witnesses, that at the distance of eighteen geographical miles, upon such a
height, a ship could be discovered without the help of glasses.

I was once upon the Table Mountain with some friends, when we saw
by the help of the setting sun a ship in the west, which the next day came
into Table Bay. The captain on my questioning him about the situation of
his vessel, for his I supposed it to be, which I had seen the preceding evening,
referred to his log-book, when he found every thing answered my
description so well, that it was impossible to doubt its having been the same
that I had seen, though he could not at that time descry any land. This was
owing to his being so low in the offing, and surrounded by the vapours of the
sea: he calculated that he must then have been from twenty-eight to thirty
miles distant from the Table Mountain.

The estate of Mr. Kirsten, as well as several other neighbouring possessions,
abounds with excellent pasture for horned cattle: they are for this reason
distinguished by the appellation of cattle places. We were here regaled with
an excellent sort of fish, the season for catching which in the river had but
just commenced; and it was admirably dressed. Here, as in Saldanha Bay,
such vast quantities of fish are taken, that the trade to the inland parts in
salted and dried fish contributes very essentially to the support of the inhabitants of the coast.

We returned in the evening to the Rietvalley, and the next morning proceeded on our journey, after having taken an affecting leave of our hospitable
kind-hearted host Laubscher and his family. We followed the course of the
river for some time, till we arrived opposite the residence of Mr. Kirsten,
which lay on the other side. A part of our company had got into a
boat which was sent to meet them about half way, and ascending the
stream, arrived here before us. As the river is here very deep, and it is not
worth while to have a ferry-boat, since the road is too little frequented to
answer the expense of it, and as a bridge is still less to be thought of on
account of the frequent overflowings of the river in winter, so it cost us
no small trouble and delay to get our whole cavalcade over. The men
crossed in boats, and at each turn some of the horses were held by the
bridle and made to swim over. The oxen likewise swam over, but in order
to make them take the water, we were obliged to get a couple of the oxen
belonging to the house, who were accustomed to it, to lead the way. The waggons were unloaded, empty casks were fastened to them, and then they were towed over, after which the goods were brought in boats, and the waggons re-loaded. This mode of passing a river had to an European entire novelty to recommend it, and presented such a succession of pictures from the swimming cattle and floating waggons, and from the variety of objects on the bushy and already picturesque banks of the river, that it might indeed be called highly interesting.

Often was the wish entertained among us at remarkable scenes and spots like this, that we could all draw, so that the perpetual remembrance of them might be preserved to our eyes as well as to our minds; and every occasion that inspired such wishes awakened anew our regrets for the loss of one who would have been a most valuable companion to us upon our journey. This was a young man of the name of Moreauval, who, from his superior talents in drawing and engraving, was destined to accompany us from Holland to the Cape; but he was most unfortunately on board the Dutch transport, the Vrede, which in November, 1802, was wrecked in the Channel upon the English coast, where he, with many other persons of worth and talents, found a watery grave.

The passage of the river, with the unloading and re-loading the waggons occupied so much time that we soon found it would not be possible to proceed farther on our journey that day. I therefore availed myself of the opportunity afforded by our detention to sally forth as the evening closed in, accompanied by some of my fellow-travellers and a couple of stout African hunters, down the banks of the river in hopes of finding a river-horse, and if possible shooting him. My pains were however fruitless, and after a long and ineffectual search, we returned late in the evening disappointed to the house.

Our road from Kirstenfontein, which was the name of Mr. Kirsten’s house where we had passed the night, ran eastward along the right bank of the Berg-river, through a deep tiresome sand, but scattered over with some pretty little flowers, particularly several sorts of pelargonia, but nothing like a bush high enough to afford the least shade to the traveller. The great sand-mole is here in such abundance that it is necessary to attend very much to horses who are not accustomed to them and aware of them: the burrows made by
these animals are so large and deep that the leg of a horse will sink into one in a moment up to the body, when both horse and rider must inevitably fall. This happened to several of our company in the course of the day, but without any serious accident.

A bend of the river every now and then somewhat diversified our route, and at intervals we found the bank grown over with a small leafy sort of grass, the fresh colour of which contrasted in a pleasing manner with the grey green of the other plants. Although the hot season was but just set in, we found parts of the river already nearly dry, with only a sort of little gutters in the slaty and loamy bank, through which very diminutive streamlets were flowing: where the bed of the river is more level, the water collects itself again, and since these parts are commonly deeper, it remains there a much longer time. Such places are called here pits, and have commonly cattle places upon their banks. We remarked on both sides of the river a number of small houses and huts scattered about, every one of which denoted a cattle place. The care of these places is commonly entrusted by the owners to a couple of old slaves or Hottentots, and at certain times of the year the cattle are sent to them for the sake of the food they afford, or to avoid the murrain.

Having performed half our day's journey about noon, we rested awhile at the habitation of a colonist, and then proceeding onwards, found ourselves approaching the Piketberg, a pretty hill, which has its course almost parallel with the great chain of mountains that runs from north to south.

These mountains are known at a great distance from their broken summits, which on both sides give them the appearance of being as it were crenated. The enormous columns of sand-stone which rise at intervals, and occasion this appearance, give reason to suppose that there was once no breaks, that the summit was one continued ridge: their whole appearance is indeed very remarkable, and it is difficult for some time to be convinced that they are productions of nature, not works by the hand of man, so much do they resemble ruined towers, or relics of other great buildings. These natural columns extend very far northward, standing like an interminable row of isolated towers, even where the ridgy summit of the mountain flattens into a widely-extended sandy plain. My readers may, perhaps, have already seen them thus described by Mr. Barrow.
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

Just as the twilight began to come on we reached the southern point of the Piketberg, against which the stream of the Berg-river dashes, changing its northern for a north westerly direction. In a broad ravine, abounding with water, called the Rietkloof, we found the house where we were to rest for the night. We were regaled by the owner, who gave us a very hospitable reception, with a bountiful supply of China oranges, which at this distance from the sea, in a soil so favourable to them, and under the shelter of the mountains, are particularly fine. A small stream of clear water runs close to the house, which sometimes swells in winter, from heavy rains, to a destructive breadth. We saw still remains of the devastations which it had made the winter before in the corn-fields of our host. We heard heavy complaints of the murrain among the cattle, to which, at certain times of the year, they are here very subject, while the sea-coast is perfectly free from it.

On our walk to the house we first saw a woman of the Bosjesman race, and had ocular conviction of the truth of all we had previously heard respecting the uncommon ugliness of these people, particularly of the females. She sat more than half naked at the entrance of a miserable straw hut, near a fire of fresh brushwood, which exhaled a terrible smoke and vapour, and was occupied in skinning a lean hare, which her husband, a Hottentot, and herdsman to our host, had brought with him from the field. The greasy swarthiness of her skin, her cloathing of animal hides, as well as the savage wildness of her looks, and the uncouth manner in which she handled the hare, presented altogether a most disgusting spectacle. She took no further notice of us than now and then to cast a shy leer towards us.

The following day's journey was much pleasanter, from the greater variety and novelty of the objects with which we were presented. Instead of the wearisome sandy plains by which we had been so much annoyed, we had now before us hills and mountains, which not only afforded firmer footing to our horses and oxen, but presented us with many pleasing and picturesque views. We pursued our way along the heights to the southern part of the Piketberg, where, amid the gentle slopes and intersecting vallies, the plain was soon wholly lost. At the feet of these slopes we saw scattered many

* A tribe of savage Hottentots who lurk about among the shrubs and bushes, whence they sally out to plunder travellers. Bosjes signifies a bush, and bosjesman is a bushman, or a man who lurks among the bushes.
pretty dwellings surrounded with trees and corn-fields, more than one of which would have afforded a good draughtsman an excellent opportunity of sketching genuine African scenery to the best advantage. The ravine to our left was well grown over with bushes, several of which were now in bloom, and the damp had occasioned numbers of insects to fasten upon them, so that a rich harvest was collected. By noon we had left the Piketberg wholly behind us, and began to descend into the valley on the other side of it. A large farm, with a wood of towering oaks, and dark leaved orange-trees, lay before us. How delightful was it to Europeans!—what a reviving sight to travellers who had been toiling all the long day over dry parched African wastes, to behold the cool shade of trees richly clothed with the most luxuriant foliage!

The place which we now reached we all agreed was a most enchanting abode. At the door of a very neat well built house we were received by the owner, a venerable matron already advanced in years. A double row of oaks spread their shade over the turf beneath, and a little stream of clear water ran obliquely through it. In the true spirit of that hospitality which we almost invariably found, we were soon served with a simple meal under the trees, the enjoyment of which was extremely increased by the kindness of our hostess, by the charms of the spot, and by resting from the fatigues we had endured. A mandarine tree, * amid whose dark green leaves shone a profusion of golden fruit, afforded us an excellent dessert. In order to leave a memorial of our friendly disposition towards the good old widow Lieuwenberg, and our gratitude for the reception she had afforded us, the Commissary-general wrote some lines in her bible, in which, besides his acknowledgments to herself, he paid some compliments to the place, and to the nice order in which it was kept, with regrets that so few of the colonists embellished their habitations in like manner by planting trees about them.

In the afternoon we again proceeded on our way, and towards evening

---

* The mand-rin apple, called at the Cape marretjes, is a sort of sweet-orange unknown in Europe; it is distinguished from others of the species by the fruit, as well as the tree being smaller than most of them, and by the thickness of the rind. It is a native of Japan, and was brought from thence hither. The flavour is much finer than that of any other sweet-orange.
came to the foot of the great chain of mountains. The country from the Piketberg hither was more fertile, and abounding more in water than that through which we had previously travelled;—of this the much greater number of farms that we passed in our way, and saw on either side of us, was a sufficient proof. We were now in the fertile district called that of the four and twenty rivers. It has this name from the number of little streams that water the valley: the principal of these flows from an open ravine in the mountains, and in its course such multitudes of smaller ones branch out from it, that they have been fixed at the number of twenty-four. All these branches in the end re-unite, and here the stream is fordable, but not without a proper guide who understands the exact direction that ought to be taken in fording it: there are otherwise spots where the bottom is so morass, that a horse and man might sink in an instant, without the possibility of their being saved. In heavy rains this river is very subject to overflowing its banks, when the numberless little islands formed by the winding branches are entirely lost. The whole then appears one large wide stream, and all intercourse between the neighbours is precluded for weeks together. A few hours hence its waters unite themselves with those of the Berg-river.

We had quitted the direct road, and did not arrive till dark at a place called Gelukwaard, the property of a worthy honest German, by name Leiste. Thirty years before, this man had come to the Cape as an under-trader in the service of the Dutch East-India Company, and on account of his great mathematical knowledge was, by the then Governor Van Plettenberg, taken into the service of the government. He was for a long time invested with the place of sworn land-surveyor, and at the suggestion of the Governor Van de Graaff undertook several journeys for the purpose of improving the maps of the country. He afterwards by marriage obtained this place, and through his practical knowledge, his industry, and activity, was now become one of the richest colonists of the country, and the oracle of the whole neighbourhood. Besides Gelukwaard, he had an estate in Zwartland, which facilitated his trade with the Cape Town, and several cattle places in the Roggeveld and Bokkeveld. His accurate knowledge of the country which we proposed to travel over induced our chief to determine on remaining here, while our waggons underwent some repairs which now began to be much wanted: and he hoped from this very intelligent man to obtain such
information as would enable us to trace out an improved plan for the continuance of our journey.

The following day afforded us an opportunity of becoming thoroughly acquainted with all the charms of the spot. Its situation directly under the lofty, steep, and craggy mountains, the bright green of the broad avenues of old oak, the excellently husbanded pastures and corn-fields, the nicely-dressed vineyards, orchards, and orangeries, the sight of numberless well-fed cattle, and the widely extended circle of neat buildings for barns, stables, wine-presses, and work-shops, formed altogether a most delightful assemblage of objects. Easy affluence, rational utility, prudent caution, and careful attention to every thing being kept in the most exact order, were every where conspicuous throughout this little domain.

Wine, lemons, sweet-oranges, and dried fruits, are the principal produce of this place, as well as of the fertile district of the four and twenty rivers. The great distance of the Cape Town, whither every thing must be transported in waggons, derogates in some sort from the advantages which might otherwise be drawn from the fertility of the spot. It is only in years when the crops of corn have been indifferent in other parts, and the price is consequently unusually high, that the profit will pay the expense of the transport. The journey backwards and forwards occupies from ten to twelve days, so that the cost of keeping for so long a time the cattle necessary to draw the waggons cannot be repaid but by selling the corn at a very high price.

The wine is here particularly good, and Mr. Leiste has for some years turned his attention exceedingly to the culture of the vine, and the best modes of improving it; though he is well aware that, to introduce the European manner of cultivating vines under the idea of improvement, would probably be committing a great mistake. The best manner of cultivating them must indeed every where be principally dictated by the nature of the climate; the most important object here is to keep them clean from weeds, and in this the cultivators seldom fail. The three principal objects for obtaining good wine, plenty of slaves, ample buildings, and store of casks, are possessed by most of the colonists. Excellent Cape Madeira, and the Cape Pontac, as it is called, are the sorts which succeed best on this side the country; the fine sweet Cape-wine is not so good here as to the east of the Table Mountain.
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

It may be instanced as a proof of the fertility of this climate, that we saw an oak eight feet in the girth, which was only twenty-four years old: it was one of an avenue which Mr. Leiste himself planted at that time. Yet we must not omit to observe, that the growth of all plants from the north of Europe is here injuriously rapid, because they have not the rest in winter which properly belongs to them. In a month, or a month and half after they have lost their leaves, the buds and blossoms are again coming out, for the cold never sinks to the freezing point, and a clear winter's day here is as warm as our finest days in spring. The consequence is that some trees will not succeed at all, as the lime, otherwise the Dutchman's favourite tree, the elm, the beech, the ash;—that some, as for example, many of our orchard trees, the cherry, and several sorts of plumbs, apples and pears, bear very indifferent fruit;—and that other trees, as the oak, the horse chesnut, and the fir, which yet look thrifty, are very inferior in the goodness of the wood to the same sorts in their native soil. An oak of two foot diameter in the trunk will not have a kernel of above two inches good hard wood like our oak; all the rest is mere sap; and the fir-wood is so weak and porous that it is hardly useable. This pre-maturity is the character of all products about the Cape not natives of the country: it is the same with animals as with plants, and is particularly striking in horses: it may almost be said to be the same with the human race, both as to their physical and moral nature; and this may justly be considered as one of the principal obstacles to their ever arriving at their proper size and strength.

How little any object tending to improve his property, and increase the products of the country, escapes the enterprising spirit of our host, was instanced by our seeing here plantations of rice and indigo. From two hat's full of the former sown he had gathered a crop of between sixteen and seventeen bushels. The rice was very fine and white, much better than the East India rice, and nearly as good as the Carolina. Yet, notwithstanding this abundant produce, on calculating the costs of transport he found that he could not get a price for it at the Cape Town sufficient to answer the expense. This plant is besides, as he told us, particularly troublesome in the cultivation, from the necessity of keeping it constantly well watered, and of employing a number of slaves the whole summer through to frighten away the flocks of bullfinches (loria astrilda) which otherwise would almost
destroy the plantations; and during this time the slaves are lost for all other kinds of work. In very dry years moreover, notwithstanding all possible attention being paid to watering it, the harvest sometimes fails entirely. Nor could the indigo, he said, be produced without equal difficulties and inconveniences, and even then what he had gathered was of a very indifferent quality. But the most important objection to both, he observed, was, that the cultivation of them was evidently injurious to the health of the slaves employed in it. These considerations had nearly determined him to abandon his project, and the rather as the price of both articles at the Cape Town had fallen considerably since he had first engaged in it. A strict regard to the bodily health of his slaves we observed indeed to be conspicuous throughout every part of the worthy farmer’s establishment. We saw here another remarkable instance of longevity among this class, in the person of a Malay slave now a hundred and seven years old.

Through the adroitness of our friendly host’s smith, and waggon-wright, our waggons were soon thoroughly repaired, while the hospitable reception given to the whole party, even to the lowest among our slaves and Hottentots, had entirely recruited our strength, and given us new vigour to encounter the further fatigues that awaited us. A heavy rain, which had fallen during the two days that we rested here, having ceased, on the twenty-fourth of October we quitted the charming Gelukwaard, impressed with a deep sense of gratitude for the extreme politeness and hospitality with which we had been received; and proceeded onwards in a fine clear day, breathing with delight the refreshing air which in this country succeeds a heavy fall of rain.
CHAP. V.

The White-Ant Heaps.—Pikenierskloof.—Upon Mr. Barrow’s Exaggerations respecting the Barbarity of the Colonists.—The Berg-Valley.—Tribes of Apes.—The Hottentothraal.—A Hottentot of the Tribe of the Great Namaquas.—Encampment in the Long-Valley.—Picturesque Mountain Scenery.—Jakhal’s Valley.—Preparation of Leather for Thongs.

We proceeded now directly northwards to the foot of the great chain of mountains, passing many very pretty farms; but we remarked that in proportion as our distance from the valley of the twenty-four rivers increased, the dry and dull uniformity of the country, of which we had already had so much reason to complain, increased also. Many little rivulets running from gulleys in the mountains intersected our way, and the depth of their beds evinced the height to which, though now mere streamlets, the waters rise in heavy rains, or when the snow, which in winter covers the summits of the mountains, melts and flows down their sides. It was not without considerable difficulty that we sometimes got our wagons through these deeply sunken channels.

For the first time in our journey we now saw an immense number of white-ant heaps strewn all over the fields on both sides of us.* They were of the size and form of bee-hives, and so hard that a heavy-loaded wagon in going over them did not level them entirely. They abound particularly in what

* The termes fatale, or white-ants, are in some countries, particularly in Guinea, a real plague, since they eat into and destroy wood-work, houses, ships, furniture, cloaths;—nay, they will even work themselves in a short time into the trunk of a very strong tree, so as entirely to spoil it. The queen of these ants lays eighty thousand eggs in four and twenty hours. These insects live together in immense numbers, and build themselves curious dwellings in the earth, where they lead an extraordinary kind of life, as may be seen from an account of them by H. Smeathman, published in the English Philosophical Transactions, Vol. LXXI. or from the German translation of the same work, by F. A. A. Meyer, of Gottingen.
are called in this country *sour-fields,* but are never to be found on sandy plains and low moist grounds, any more than on the true Karroo-soil. This latter soil differs from that of the *sour-fields* in the greater proportion of iron that it contains, and the ants that are found in the Karroo-country must be considered as an entirely different species from these now in question, inasmuch as they are considerably smaller, and never build above the earth.

Wherever white-ant heaps abound, traces of the *myrmecophaga,* or ant-eater, are always to be found. The colonists collect these ants to feed their poultry, and they soon render them fat: the ant-heap is laid open with a pike, when the animals come out in multitudes, and the people gather them up by handfuls, and put them in bags to carry them home. The heap when broken up is found full of little cells like a coarse sponge, which, from their colour and solidity, shew that some portion of the juices of the animal must be combined with the loam to form such a building. It is probably this addition which makes the composition good fuel; at least a fire already kindled may be made to burn considerably brighter, by adding to it a piece of an ant-heap: they are not indeed so combustible as coal, but a piece between two layers of wood makes an excellent fire. In burning they lose their dark hue and hardness, and nothing seems to remain but the mixture of sand and loam of which the soil is composed. These ants do not here get into houses and destroy the provisions as in some places; they differ in this respect from those of Java, which have sometimes actually done a great deal of mischief in the warehouses of the East-India Company; and have still more frequently

* The name of *sour-fields* is given to such lands as are a mixture of sand and loam, and only produce spontaneously a coarse rushy kind of grass, though by cultivation they may be made to bear some sorts of artificial grasses. They are called *sour-fields,* because this sort of grass is very apt to turn sour in the stomachs of the cattle that feed upon it. It is nevertheless considered as a wholesome food to horned cattle, and when accustomed to it they grow lean if it be changed suddenly for milder grass. The most fertile parts where the fine grass is produced are called in contradistinction *sweet-fields.* The hillocks at the feet of large mountains, particularly on the southern sides, are commonly *sour-fields.* They are seldom to be found higher than a hundred toises above the level of the sea, and lie in about the same regions as where succulent and rocky plants generally grow. As the white-ant heaps are a certain proof of a *sour-field,* so wherever the plant _kuhnia rhinocrotica_ is seen growing it is immediately known to be a *sweet-field.*
been accused of it when an account was required of the disappearance of wares which had vanished in a very different manner. A keeper of the magazines once, when some bars of iron and a quantity of bells were missed, had the impudence even to accuse the ants of having destroyed them.

We rested at noon at the house of a widow, again of the name of Lieuwenberg, but who was by no means in the same happy circumstances as the former one of that name whom we had visited. She had the terrible misfortune of having three daughters idiots: the young women were grown up, and not ill-formed, but according to the information of the neighbours, this imbecility was a family disease: traces of it were to be found in some other of the poor woman's nearest relations.

In the evening we arrived at the foot of the Pikenierskloof, a passage over the mountains leading to the districts of the Roggeveld, and the Elephants'-river.* The house in which we were to take up our abode for the night belonged to a widow Coetzé, and was at this moment full of guests, some going to the warm bath at the Elephants'-river, some returning from it. This bath is considered as particularly salutary in gouty and rheumatic complaints, and is much frequented at this time of the year by people afflicted with them.

The guests talked to us very much of the passage over the mountain, representing it as fatiguing to ourselves, and even dangerous to our heavy-loaded waggons. Indeed, the next morning when we proceeded on our journey we found their representations in great measure verified. From the steepness of the hill it was impossible to carry the road directly over it, but it forms a zigzag turning repeatedly, though always ascending. The turnings are of necessity often pretty sharp, and this occasions the great difficulty to the waggons. At such moments the whole team of oxen cannot be made to draw at once, and the waggon is in danger either of running back, or, if it turns too sharp, of being wedged against the rock. We sent our baggage forwards very early in the morning, following ourselves an hour later, when

---

* The annexed plate shows this passage over the mountain, and in the front is our cavalcade exactly in the order in which we arrived at its foot. The farm to the left is that where we lodged. To embellish the landscape, the person who sketched the design has been guilty of an anachronism, and made the wagons already ascending the mountain.
about half way up the kloof* we found one of our waggons stuck fast, nor was there any other means for its release but to unload it, and set it right by the exertions of our own strength, instead of employing that of the oxen. It must indeed be considered as a matter of no small self-congratulation when a waggon reaches the top of the hill without any accident; since no help being near, a mischance of this kind may delay the journey a whole day.

To an European who has not been accustomed to the Alps, or any other of the mountainous parts of that quarter of the globe, it is really a curious spectacle to see the progress of an African caravan through such a pass as the Pikenierkloof. In contemplating this stupendous mountain one is tempted to exclaim at the boldness of him who first thought of drawing a carriage of any sort over such a height; nay, even to consider the attempt as a sort of presumption. Nothing but the necessity of passing with all his effects this mighty barrier, planted by the hand of nature, if desirous of inhabiting the fertile vallies beyond it, could have inspired courage to form the project, or fortitude to surmount all the hardships which opposed its execution, and finally to carry it through. The rugged wildness of these lofty regions, the gigantic masses of naked rock, the tremendous height from which one looks down upon the precipices below, makes it almost incomprehensible how a heavy loaded waggon should ever reach the summit; and the immoveable vastness of nature forms a striking contrast with the perpetual movement of man, who, when brought into such a comparison, appears little even in his greatest undertakings.

Here the African traveller is first fully convinced of the necessity of making the waggons so exceedingly strong, and understands why the patient hard-labouring ox is to be preferred for drawing the load, to the fiery, spirited, but comparatively, in point of strength, powerless horse. The nearer we arrive at the top the steeper the hill becomes, the turnings are more frequent, and it is still more and more fatiguing to the draught-cattle. Here it is, notwithstanding, that the greatest strength must be exerted, that not a

* The reader is probably aware from other travels that the term *kloof* is not appropriated solely to the passage of which we are here speaking; it is a general name given to all mountain roads of a similar kind.
moment's respite to exertion can be allowed, lest the waggon should run back, when that, with its whole lading, the oxen, and the men themselves, would be in the utmost danger, if not of being totally demolished, at least of receiving some frightful injury. We ought not therefore to be too severe upon the African waggoners, if at such a moment they employ powerful means to make the almost exhausted oxen put forth all their remaining strength, and this is the more necessary, as under such circumstances they not unnaturally become obstinate and unwilling to move, nor will mind the voice of the waggoner, or even his usual whip. It is really grievous to see the oxen, particularly the hindermost pair, when from a sharp turning in the road the fore ones cannot draw, lashed with a thick thong of Rhinoceros leather, or goaded with an iron spur; but there are moments when it is only by such means that they can be made to go on.

It is however wronging the Africans much, how rough soever their manners may be, to assert, as Mr. Barrow does, that they delight in such barbarity; but it is scarcely worth while here to controvert what this writer says, since his own assertions contradict themselves. Who can believe, for example, that a wound of seven inches long and two inches deep, and such he affirms are made by these barbarous peasants in goading on their cattle, could be healed in three days: it is impossible for such a wound to be healed in so short a time. But on this subject I must beg leave to contradict him, for I can safely affirm that I never saw an ox with scars of goads, which he asserts to have seen in such abundance. The colonists indeed shudder at the thoughts of misusing the poor animals in such a way, and I never met with but one who remembered having been under the necessity of using an iron goad to get the oxen on. This accusation is one of those which Mr. Barrow permits himself to bring against the colonists in general, in consequence of his personal dislike to particular ones. He does not seem to see how very wrong it is to take solitary examples, and apply them as the character of a whole class, though in so doing he transgresses no less against truth, and in a much more offensive way than Le Vaillant, when he indulges himself in the invention of extraordinary adventures. It may besides be made a question, supposing all Mr. Barrow says to be true, which shews the greater barbarity in his disposition, the uncivilised African, who in a moment of danger goads his oxen with the lash and the spur, or the polished European,
who without any use in the world docks his horses, or for mere wanton pastime, worries them to death by running races.

The height of the mountain which we had now ascended is computed to be from two thousand to two thousand five hundred feet above the country lying at its base, and that again is computed to be a thousand feet above the level of the sea. A widely extended prospect over the Piketberg, and the country beyond, amply repaid us the fatigues of the ascent, and not far from the top a little grotto, in the midst of which rose a spring of fine fresh clear water, afforded us a resting place, and shelter from the parching rays of the sun.

A less steep and rugged way carried us down the other side of the hill into the vale below, which was so inclosed with high and naked hills, that it seemed as if there was no way out of it. After another hour's journey through a narrow valley, we reached a fine grassy spot, where we found excellent water and feed for the cattle, and where we resolved to stop and rest awhile. It was an ausspannplatze, and called Janskraal. We perceived a very striking difference between the vegetable kingdom here, and what we had hitherto gone over, so that this day enriched the herbarium and collection of insects very much. The objects added were so much the more valuable, as they seemed to belong almost exclusively to this spot: we scarcely ever found them elsewhere.

Our farther route lay through a narrow pass among the mountains, inclosed on both sides with high hills, at the end of which we arrived at the Berg-valley: here we were to pass the night at the house of Field-Cornet Gideon Rossouw.* The valley spreads out in this part, but towards the north contracts again, and is inclosed by high and steep cliffs. The soil seemed to us extremely fertile, and the fruits of the earth standing upon it good, but

---

* 'Tis thus that this family now write their name, though they are descended originally from French refugees of the name of Rousseau. In like manner many other French families have accommodated the present spelling of their names to the manner in which they are pronounced in the Dutch language.—Field-cornet is the title given to a magistrate who decides in the first instance little disputes that sometimes arise among the colonists themselves, or between the Hottentots and the colonists bordering upon them. Their jurisdiction extends to from ten to twelve farms, over which they have a sort of sub-government. Their salary consists only in an exemption from the imposts upon common farming establishments.
the owner complained that a great part of his lands were scarcely cultivable, from the quantity of salt-petre they contain. He pointed out to us several places where this salt was to be seen rising from the ground, although it was early in the year, and rain had fallen but a short time before. In winter the rains carry the salt-petre with them deep into the earth, but it re-appears in summer in a thick rind upon the surface, and soon destroys all vegetation. This is a very general evil in the districts of the Roggeveld and Bokkeveld, and seems to prevail most in a fat and fertile soil.

On the hills that encompass this valley, we first saw a company of apes,* which, as we approached them, fled hastily to the highest summits; but the whole night through we were annoyed with their tiresome yell. They do a great deal of mischief to the gardens, and even the most watchful dogs can scarcely prevent the nightly maraudings of these nimble-footed animals. Although Kolbe somewhat exaggerates the regular and concerted manner in which their robberies are carried on, yet it is very true that they go in large companies upon their marauding parties, reciprocally to support each other, and carry off their plunder in greater security.

The stream which runs through the Berg-valley, and supplies it with water, is so strong that it turns a small mill which Mr. Rossouw has erected. We even found depth sufficient in some places to permit of our bathing in it; a refreshment which we never omitted taking when an opportunity was presented, and which contributed not a little to preserving the health of the whole party. Our dragoons and Hottentots, who were not very rich in linen, availed themselves of it also to wash their shirts; and such is the drying nature of the air in this part of the world, that, after hanging a few minutes upon the bushes, they were dry enough to carry away with them. The water that flows through the valley collects itself some miles farther, westward towards the coast into a pretty large lake, which has the name of the Lost-valley. In heavy rains this lake empties itself into the sea, but for the greater part of the year the evaporation of the waters is as great as the flow from the hills.

The field-cornet informed us that in another small valley, not far from his

---

* The simia cynocephalus of Linnaeus.
habitation, there was a Hottentot-kraal, where some families of pure Hottentots were established, who lived entirely after the manner of their ancestors. When they are reduced to great want, they come to him, and other inhabitants of the neighbourhood, to offer their services; but when they have earned a slender provision of sheep, fruits, or bread, they return home to indulge in their natural laziness, and do not come again till they are once more pressed by extreme want. But their wants must be very pressing before they do this, since they had rather suffer a certain degree of hunger, and have only a skin gilt round their body, than work to obtain a better supply of food and clothing. For awhile they will live upon vegetables only, particularly upon onions and other roots, but no African savage can live entirely without animal food, and it is this want which drives them at last to hire themselves as herdsmen to the colonists. They cannot at the same time be accused of any actual wickedness—their characteristic vice is extreme indolence. The Dutch government has recently prohibited all such societies of free Hottentots within the boundaries of the colony, unless they can prove that they have some means of gaining their subsistence.

On Wednesday, the twenty-sixth of October, early in the morning, we pursued our journey through a deep, sandy, but always ascending road. Our host accompanied us for a short distance, and carried us to his garden, where we saw a very fine plantation of orange-trees. They were so full of fruit that the branches seemed ready to break with the weight, although ten waggon loads of oranges had already been sold to the neighbours. The trees were so high in the stem that we could ride under them upon our horses, and gather the overhanging fruit. There are many parts in the interior of the colony particularly favourable for the culture of sweet-oranges, lemons, and mandarine-apples, but the harvest of them is lost to the colonists, because they cannot be sold at a price that will pay the expence of transport to any distance. Some industrious colonists bring the pressed lemon-juice in casks to the Cape Town, and some even extract an oil from the rinds, the trade in which is very profitable. It is remarkable that though the bitter-orange will not thrive in any part of the colony, the large thick-coated lemon, called the *citrus decumana,* is tolerably abundant.

* In English, the Shaddock.
At this garden was a Hottentot of whom Mr. Rossouw desired us to take particular notice. He was of the tribe called the Grosse Namaaquas, and was distinguished from the other Hottentots by his much greater size and strength. In early youth, in a war between his nation and the Dammaras, a tribe living farther northward, he was taken prisoner by the latter, and lived for some time among them. According to the custom of the country, his two middle upper front teeth were drawn as a mark that he was a prisoner, and with this token upon him (which was shown to us), the loss of his life would have been the inevitable consequence of his being made prisoner a second time. He therefore preferred living among the Christians to running this chance, and making his escape, engaged in his present service, with which he was extremely satisfied.

After pursuing our way for a considerable time over a dry sandy country we were urged by heat and thirst to seek repose in a habitation a little to the right. Although our visit here was not expected, we found every thing in readiness for our entertainment, and received such a pressing invitation from the kind mistress of the house to partake of a little repast, that we sent our escort on to an appointed place, there to wait for us, and prepare us a dinner in the open field. I mention this circumstance only as a farther illustration of the general spirit of hospitality that distinguishes the African colonists.

In a sort of hollow among the mountains, called the Long Valley, we found some tents already set up, and all our people, from the first to the last, busied every one at his post, in making the preparations we had ordered. This repast in the open field was the rather determined on as an earnest of what we might expect in future, when necessity would compel us to encamp in solitary places, and to begin practising our people in setting up and striking the tents expeditiously against they should come into more frequent use. As novelty always has in it something attractive, so every body was on this first occasion ready to take their share of the necessary business. Our ladies took the cooking upon themselves, and our young men vied with each other in their eagerness to get out the tables and chairs, to lay the cloth, to unpack the knives and forks, and prepare every thing in the most exact order; while the frugal meal, which every one now considered himself as having duly earned, was sweetened by the gaiety and good humour that reigned among us.
- We were already busied in re-packing our goods and chattels, when two colonists came to us who had set out upon a journey to the Cape Town; but learning by the way that the Commissary-general was to visit the country they inhabited, had sent their families on, and come themselves to seek us, and intreat that they might be favoured with our company at their house. They were two brothers of the name of Louw, inhabitants of the Lower-Bokkeveld. All our entreaties to them not to think of losing so much time, and of taking a double journey of more than a hundred hours, were in vain. They should never forgive themselves, they said, if they were to be absent from home at the moment when for the first time, since the existence of the colony, a regent had visited their country. They accompanied us two days farther on our road, and then took their leave to go home and prepare every thing for our reception.*

From our first entrance into the Berg-valley, we had been impressed with strong admiration of the very singular nature of African mountain scenery; but we now passed through a ravine, the bold grandeur of which raised our astonishment to a much higher pitch. Enormous masses of sand-stone were towering one above another, till their gigantic forms seemed as if they touched the arch of heaven itself. They ran nearly in parallel directions from the north to the south, while here and there their regularity was interrupted by broken masses, the clefts of which were overgrown with plants, which seemed with difficulty to raise their dark green leaves out of the solid and massy stone. These almost perpendicular walls, rising to the right and left, though for thousands of years they had braved the ravages of time, yet seemed at every moment to menace the almost bewildered traveller, with falling and crushing him to atoms.

The noise of our cavalcade frightened a number of the little lively dasses †

* The African colonists when they travel on horseback have always a led horse with them, which carries their packages, and which they sometimes change with the riding-horse to relieve him. The embarrassment they would be in if their horse was tired, or ill in the midst of a waste, makes this precaution very necessary. A Hottentot boy, who is half naked, and who rides behind his master without a saddle, carries the gun, with which the traveller now and then kills game, and which is destined equally for his defence in case of meeting with wild beasts or savages. In this way they will travel twenty hours distance in a day.

† The das or *Hyrax capensis* of Linnæus, is a small dusky coloured animal, about the size of a rabbit, with short ears and no tail, which inhabits many of the mountains in the colony.
who were reposing in their quiet solitude, and springing up before us, they ran to seek shelter in their burrows among the rocks; while at the very edges of the overhanging crags skipped the nimble antelope, called here the *klippen-springer,* and high above in the air soared the hungry vulture as he was prying into the chasms below in search of his prey.

The way through this ravine was a constant ascent, and when we arrived at last at the top, a new scene awaited us, as we looked back upon the narrow pass we had just quitted. It seemed as if the ruins of a former world lay in chaotic confusion at our feet. Not the least trace of a human being was to be discerned: all was one continued wilderness of gigantic masses of rock. A single isolated pyramid, which reared its lofty form in the midst of the broadest part of the valley, was the centre point of this vast picture, and the only object on which the eye could satisfactorily rest. Not one of us had ever seen, either among the works of nature, or of art, anything at all resembling this scene: what a world of new ideas would a painter endowed with taste and feeling imbibe from visiting it!

It was late in the evening, when, after a fatiguing course, constantly ascending and descending steep and lofty hills, we arrived at the dwelling of a Mr. Kendrik Van Zyl, in a place called the Jakhal Valley. In this solitary and mournful spot, far removed from the rest of the world, we found still the same good-will, the same readiness to serve and assist us, which is so distinguishing a feature in the character of these colonists. Notwithstanding that in this house there were evident marks of greater poverty than we had hitherto seen, and the inhabitants made a very different appearance, yet every thing was neat though humble, and the utmost diligence was exerted to accommodate us to the best of their power; equal exertions were made to do some repairs again wanted to our waggons, they having suffered much from the ruggedness of the ways we had recently passed.

These repairs were, however, not completed till noon the following day,

---

*The griesbok or grizzled deer (the antilope oreotragus of Linnaeus), known also in these parts by the name of the duiker or diver, from the manner in which when concealed among the bushes it will every now and then raise its head up to look at passing objects, and then immediately plunge down again, like water-fowl diving into the water.
when we again set forwards. Again we had to climb a steep sandy hill to get out of this valley, and when arrived at the top, still we saw nothing but rocks and sands, with some heathy shrubs scattered about them;—yet we began to be so accustomed to such scenery, that we found ourselves every day less wearied with its uniformity. We here found in abundance a plant which also grows nearer to the Cape Town, in the district of Tulbagh: the colonists call it rhinosterbosjes, because, they say, that in the time when the rhinoceros was an inhabitant of the country, it used to feed very much upon this plant. It is the same that I have mentioned before under the name of kuhnia rhinocerotis, as the sign, wherever it grows, of sweet-fields.

The place where we rested some hours at noon belonged to a widow, by name Van Wyk, whose eldest daughter, a married woman, of about eight and twenty, struck us all very much, from her extraordinary corpulence. It is, however, scarcely possible to conceive more beauty of features and complexion, more natural modesty of behaviour, and more activity in her motions, than in this woman, notwithstanding her unusual bulk. Former travellers have remarked that corpulence, particularly among the women, is by no means rare in Southern Africa. The mildness of the climate, the quantity of animal food eaten, little hard work in their household concerns, freedom from cares and sorrows, may well account for this disposition of the body.

We here learned the manner in which the leather used almost universally in this country, instead of cordage, is cured. The fresh flayed ox-hide is first cut with a knife into thongs, the breadth being regulated according to the strength and thickness wanted, which varies with the purpose for which it is to be used. The thongs are then soaked in ley for four and twenty hours, after which as many are joined together as are requisite to make the length wanted. The whole is then thrown over a sort of gallows, and a heavy weight, from eighty to a hundred pounds, fastened to it to stretch it down. Two slaves then, with a stick between the leather, keep drawing it backwards and forwards, and turning it constantly round and round, so that the weight may bear alternately alike upon every part of the leather. From thus constantly changing the place by which the leather hangs, it is soon dried, and is then used without any other preparation. The harness for the oxen that draw the waggons is made of this leather. The little trouble
necessary to prepare these things, and their durability, have acquired them such a decided preference over cordage, that no one has ever thought of turning their attention to several sorts of native plants which appear to partake of the nature of hemp, with a view to rendering them useful. This may, perhaps, occupy future generations, when the facility of intercourse being increased, new objects of trade will be sought, and ox-hides may become of much greater value than they are at present. At some distance from the Cape Town, the slaves, and upon the borders, even the children of the colonists are clothed in leather prepared by themselves, and there is abundance of plants which afford excellent materials for tanning. Even the savages of Southern Africa are very adroit in preparing leather, and have the art of giving it an extraordinary pliability. In the houses of the colonists, the seats of the chairs, and the frames of the bedsteads, are generally made of leather.

We found here some vines, though these mountainous regions of the northern part of the colony are not very favourable to them; and in a garden near the house was a profusion of apricots and peaches. The fruit, including the grapes, was dried in the sun, and sold to the neighbours: some was occasionally carried to the Cape Town.

I cannot here forbear, even at the hazard of being charged with dwelling unreasonably upon the subject, adverting once more to the very unjust representations made by French and English travellers of the rusticity and uncouthness of the colonists. But after having seen these things so much dwelt upon, we were not a little surprised even here, at the distance of eighty hours from the Cape Town, in a country where the inhabitants are, from their situation and local circumstances, deprived of every means of receiving what is commonly called a polished education—we were not a little surprised, even here, to find a degree of cultivation and good-breeding not always discernible where the opportunities of acquiring it have been much more favourable. There reigned an order and neatness in the house, a decency and propriety in the deportment and manner of expressing themselves among the inhabitants, with a friendship and kindness towards each other, and a mildness towards the slaves and dependents, which excited in us the highest admiration of the venerable mistress (now nearly seventy years of age) and her whole family. We had been accustomed,
wherever we went, to see the utmost politeness and respect shewn to our chief, and every attention that civility required paid to the rest of the party, but seldom saw these courtesies performed with the appearance of more unartificial sincerity, yet, at the same time, with a greater degree of refinement than here. I am ready to allow, that instances of so high a degree of polish are not common among the distant colonists, but I must at the same time affirm, that instances of such brutal roughness and coarseness of manners as Mr. Barrow describes, and which he gives as the general character of this class of people, are much more rare.
CHAP. VI.

The Elephants' River.—Salt Lake.—Fatiguing Passage of the Nardouw Mountain.—
The Party lose their Way by Night in an almost uninhabited Country.—Night passed
upon the Bank of the Doorn-river.—The Valley of Moedverlooven.—The Lower
Bokkeveld.—Uye-valley.

On the evening of the twenty-seventh of October we reached the bank
of the Elephants'-river. In a little valley, surrounded with hills which lay
near it, called again the Rietvalley*, we passed the night at the house of a
nephew of the brothers Louw, whom the reader will remember to have been
mentioned in the former chapter. The owner of the place was absent himself,
gone up, according to the mode of expression in the country, to the Cape
Town†; but his children, who were almost grown up, gave us the best enter-
tainment in their power.

* The reader must not take offence against the colonists of the seventeenth and eighteenth
centuries, if there appears among them a want of variety in the names they gave to different
spots. If the same name is found repeated in many parts, this arose from the spots to which
it was given being all of them distinguished by like characteristics; since it was from the cir-
cumstances appertaining to the spot, or from the animals found in the neighbourhood, that most
of the names were derived. Hence some confusion certainly arises, and it seems very expedient
that such additions should be made as would point out which, among the various places of the same
name, it is intended to allude to. Besides the number of Rietvalleys already mentioned, we shall
find another Elephants'-river in the district of Zwellendam, as well as that of which we are now
speaking; and in like manner there are more than one Hippopotamus'-rivers, Buffalo-rivers, Lion-
rivers, &c. &c. A proposal was made to the Dutch government in the year 1805 to remedy
this inconvenience, of which perhaps the English government, since the colony has been in their
hands, have availed themselves.

† It is with the Cape Town, as formerly with the holy city of Jerusalem, that being the seat
of government, the colonists always talk of going up to it, though the lands thereabouts are the
lowest in the whole country, those about the other bays excepted. Although from the Cape to
the borders of the colony the country is a constant ascent, still these remote parts are all called
the Lower-Fields; hence the Lower Bokkeveld and the Lower Roggeveld, which are thus dis-
tinguished, because they are the parts of the districts the furthest removed from the capital, not
because they are the lowest lands.
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

77

But draw two was since the little old From on steep granate-tree the bring entirely dry, in good seasons they make a very large provision, sufficient to last for three years or more.

In this valley we again found a water-mill, which is a constant proof of a fertile spot, since it evinces that there must be a very good supply of water. The wheels are none of them more than from six to eight feet in diameter. As in most parts of the colony the corn is ground by hand-mills, wherever a water-mill can be erected, it is very profitable to its owner, since their neighbours bring their corn to it to be ground, for which they pay a certain price. From five to six bushels of corn is as much as one of these mills can grind in four and twenty hours. In the garden to this house we found the largest pomegranate-tree we had yet seen in the colony: it was nearly twenty feet high in the stem, and would afford shade from the rays of the sun to several persons at once.

The next morning we crossed the Elephants'-river: it was not more than two feet deep at the ford, and about a hundred feet broad, including a little island in the middle of the stream. The sands driven so far up upon the banks, and the loosely-rooted trees near them, shewed, however, that at certain times of the year the river spread itself out very considerably, and then the property of the inhabitants must be exceedingly contracted. Directly on the other side rises a steep hill, which retains its old Hottentot name of the Nardouw. We were above an hour ascending it on horseback, and our waggons, which we overtook about half way up, here again got into great difficulties. We found one very much damaged, and most of the others, though they had a double number of oxen to draw them, too heavy laden, so that we were obliged to lighten them by nearly a half, and let the load be carried at two different times. In the lower half of the mountain, large blocks of slate, which lay in the middle of the road, so obstructed the way, that it was scarcely possible for the waggons to go on, and it sometimes required the united strength of all the people belonging to the waggons to remove them, while towards the top, both oxen and waggons sunk into so deep a sand, that it was not without extreme difficulty they could get on at all. From these specimens, some idea may be formed of the obstacles opposed
to carrying on an intercourse of trade from one part of the colony to another by means of land-carriage.

We had travelled about an hour along the flat and arid summit of the mountain, when the ground began to slope very gradually. A small streamlet of water, running from among the naked rocks, invited us to stop here, at once to rest our horses, and to wait for the wagons which were coming after us. A flat piece of rock, serving as a table, was spread with our little provision, and here we took our frugal repast. As we were seated at it, a bastard Hottentot came up to lay before the Commissary-general a complaint against his master for ill-usage. The commissary invited the lad to join us, and when some weeks after we came into the district where the master of whom he complained lived, he cited both him and the field-cornet of the district to appear before him, and redressed the aggrieved Hottentot. The latter, however, entreated permission to remain in our service, and we found him one of the most active and faithful of our whole swarthy community.

Scarcely less fatigued with our rest at noon in the burning sun, than with the ascent of the hill, as the heat somewhat abated, we proceeded onwards to encounter new and still greater difficulties. The spirit and patience of the whole party, and above all the firmness of our ladies, was at this moment to be put to the first great trial they experienced. From a very imperfect direction having been given us respecting the way to a farm-house, situated about two hours off, where we proposed passing the night, we were led to follow the fresh track of a waggon, which carried us to the left, and which promised us a much better road than what we ought to have taken. Three hours passed before we became sensible of our error, but still we pursued the same track, resting in the hope that this must carry us at length to some human habitation; but still none appeared, and in this dilemma night began to come on. To return back seemed in no case advisable, since having taken a northerly direction, it appeared as if we could not have come entirely out of our way, and that though not exactly in the right road, yet that we must still have been advancing, consequently that we must lose ground by a retrograde movement. Fortunately, the moon, being at the first quarter, afforded us some light, so as to assure us that the way we were going was perfectly safe.

Meanwhile our horses, who had not had any regular meal since early morning, began to grow extremely weary; one of mine, which perhaps had eaten of some plant that disagreed with him, as he was feeding at the time we were
resting, soon after we got out of the right track became extremely ill. Not, however, having the least idea that we had missed our way, I ordered my slave to remain with the sick horse, and wait for the waggons coming up, when his comrades might assist in getting the animal on. The comfortless situation of this poor lad, who was only sixteen, who I now found would expect assistance in vain, and who might be attacked by lions and hyaenas, traces of which we had this day for the first time discovered, gave me the utmost uneasiness: yet we had wandered on so far that it was impossible to send him assistance without danger, and the only thing I could hope was that he would be so much frightened that he would leave the horse, and try to find the waggons by himself; a hope which I afterwards found confirmed.

At every step we took, the country seemed to grow flatter, and to be spread out to a greater extent before us, and we looked around in vain, in hopes of discerning some light in the distance, which would have announced an habitation. Equally in vain did the whole party stop at short intervals to listen whether we could not hear the barking of a dog, though some fancied they could plainly distinguish such a sound. Alas! nothing was to be discovered all around by the glimmering of the moon, but a vast, and, as it appeared to us, boundless desert. The riders, not less weary than the horses, now almost all dismounted, and led their exhausted hungry animals after them, sometimes stumbling over loose stones, sometimes sinking ankle deep in the sand.

We now began to perceive plainly that we were upon a gradual descent, and were inspired with a hope that we might soon come to water, which would at least be a cordial to the thirsty animals, whom we could with difficulty drag after us. Our hopes were soon converted into a certainty, as we plainly discerned a row of trees down in the bottom. It was now ten o'clock. We came at length to the bank of a stream, along which we coasted some way, and which, according to the marks given us, we concluded to be the lesser Doorn-river. The want of rest was so general among us, that no one would have thought of crossing the stream, even if we had not conceived it unsafe to attempt fording it at night. It was therefore agreed to wait here for day-break, and to make ourselves as comfortable as we could with empty stomachs, and not a morsel of any thing to satisfy our hunger. The horses were unsaddled, and when they had drank at the stream, we tied them with halters to the trees, about the roots of which were scattered some thin tufts of grass.
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

This being done, we all set about searching for wood to make a large fire, which was rendered doubly necessary from the coldness and darkness of the night. A second fire was kindled upon the nearest height, as a signal to our people, in case the steward, who had remained with the waggons, should have sent any of them in search of us. The want of sleep was now another of our hardships, yet the cold was extremely adverse to the satisfying it. As none of the party had any warm cloathing with them, the only dependence for warming them was upon the fire, and even this was but a broken reed to rest on, for while on the right side we got tolerably roasted, to the left a cold south wind penetrated through the thin cloathing, quite to the skin. Fortunately some of the dragoons had with them the coverings for their horses, and their own riding-cloaks, and by the help of these, with some of the saddles for pillows, we made a sort of bed for our ladies, on which they got two hours comfortable sleep. The rest of us stretched ourselves upon the sand by the fire, outbidding each other in the price that we would at that moment have given for a piece of bread, a glass of geneva, or a pipe of tobacco; and every time we turned, cursing the coldness of the night, which, as we found afterwards, we ought rather to have blessed.

In fact, the Ausspannplatze, for such it was at which we had stopped, lay under a very ill-name, on account of the immense number of black scorpions by which it was infested, and which are some of the most venomous animals of the country. In warm nights there is very great danger of being stung by them, and but a few weeks before our adventure, a melancholy proof had been given of the dangerous nature of their sting. One of the best female slaves of a Mr. Van Wyk, when she was busied in collecting dry wood, had the misfortune to be stung in the hand by one, which was probably concealed under the bark of one of the oldest and dryest pieces. All the usual remedies were immediately applied, but the girl, notwithstanding, died in eighteen hours. This dangerous insect seldom comes out in the cold, and loses in some degree the power of darting its sting, so that the wound is less dangerous.

To complete our misfortunes, towards morning the heavens overcast, and it began to rain; the day, however, soon after appeared, and a dragoon, who was sent out to reconnoitre, discovered at a distance a little hut, from which came an old slave, who was stationed there to take care of a small
herd of cattle belonging to his master. From him we learnt that we were already three hours distant from the place where we should have passed the night; that we were, however, in the right way to the Lower Bokkeveld, and might very probably reach the abode of Mr. Jacob Louw in the course of the day. A couple of dollars to drink prevailed upon him to accompany two of our dragoons in search of the waggons, that our people might be made acquainted with our adventures, and follow us as soon as possible. We ourselves set forwards at sun-rise, and having passed the Doorn-river, not without some inconvenience, the bed being rather deep, and full of loose stones, pursued our way over a broad beaten road, at the foot of a chain of rocky hills.

For three hours we still kept going on, amid the constantly increasing weariness both of horses and riders; when a waggon, standing still, presented itself to our view. The appearance of a vessel in the midst of the widespread ocean cannot impart greater delight than we now felt at the sight of this vehicle. A family of colonists were upon their journey, and the waggon was stopping, while the oxen were feeding at a little distance. A pretty young woman lay sick in the waggon; she had been carried by her husband to the bath at the Elephants'-river, but to no purpose; and was now returning home. It was the track of this waggon which misled us the evening before. The mother of the sick woman was busied in cooking a hedgehog, which they had just taken, and with the utmost good-will, she offered our ladies some of the broth with a piece of bread, while hungry as they were, it was no less grateful to them than the most delicious soup. As we entered upon explanations on both sides, and they understood all the particulars of our situation, the good man immediately produced his flask of brandy to recruit the exhausted strength of the strangers; on this, and a piece of bread, which was portioned out to each, we made the best breakfast that we thought we had yet eaten.

I was happy in being afforded an opportunity of making some little return for this hospitality, by giving the sick woman, who was in strong hysterics, a little glass of naphtha, which I had with me by chance; and since our future route lay not far from her dwelling, I promised to visit her, and give her farther advice, as well as to furnish her with some medicines. Therron, which was the name of the colonist, now shewed us a little foot-way leading to a deep valley, where he said we should find a house, and some tolerable grass
for our horses. We then took our leave of the good people, with many acknowledgments, and turning our horses into the path, soon reached the valley.

We found, without difficulty, the spot to which we were directed. The estate belonged to a farmer named Wilders, whose present dwelling-house was at some distance, nor had he for several years lived at this place: it was now inhabited by a freed slave, and two bastard Hottentots, whom he had placed there as keepers of his herds. Corn is a commodity not produced in this rocky valley, so that we asked in vain for bread. The half-savage inhabitants live upon dried and salted flesh, which there was not sufficient time to have cooked, even if the looks of it had been more inviting. Some unripe lemons which hung upon the trees was all that they had to offer us, but our horses found tolerably good feed, and we stopped two hours to refresh them. This interval was employed on our side in lying down under the shade of the lemon-trees, where we enjoyed a sound sleep, and found ourselves on waking extremely revived by it. The freedman now informed us that we might go by a much nearer way, if we would quit the valley, and not follow the beaten road any more, which from the winding course of the valley necessarily made a circuit of several hours. He was with little difficulty prevailed upon to shew us the way, when he led us over a steep path, the fatigues of which exceeded any thing we ever experienced either before or after. The name of the valley, given by the person who first discovered it, is Moed-verbloren; and never was a name more highly desired, or more appropriate. The path by which we ascended out of it was so steep and dangerous, that we soon thought the time we were to save too dearly purchased, and repented exceedingly that we had not rather been contented quietly to take the circuitous road.

It was impossible to think of remaining upon our horses, for the way was often so steep, that we were sometimes obliged to use both hands in climbing, nor could we without the aid of the whip make the horse spring up a perpendicular block of between two and three feet. We afterwards proceeded a considerable way upon the slope of the hill, on a narrow path, which to the right had an almost perpendicular wall of rock above it, and to the left below a deep precipice. We were even glad when we had to ascend again, notwithstanding the fatigue attending it, to quit a path, which, though less difficult, was much more dangerous. A full hour elapsed before we reached the top,
and were out of danger of man and horse falling, and perhaps meeting with a fate which the mind shudders to think on. Even the brothers Louw, though pretty well accustomed to steep and difficult paths, assured us that they had never but once in their lives gone that way to the Moed-verlooren, and had not the least inclination to attempt it a second time. They thought it a matter on which to congratulate us, that out of a company of twenty persons no worse accident had happened to any than a bruised knee or ankle, and blamed the freedman very much for his thoughtlessness in having recommended such a way to us.

At length, towards evening, we reached Lokenburg, the dwelling of Jacob Adrian Louw, after having been thirty-two hours out in the open air, almost without nourishment, labouring through roads the most difficult and fatiguing imaginable. I leave it to the readers to conceive to themselves the situation of the ladies who were of our party. Let them but revolve in their minds the occurrences of the preceding days, and then think of two young women, scarcely twenty years of age, accustomed not only to all the conveniences, but to the superfluities of life, going through a long day’s journey on horseback, sleeping at night upon the sandy bank of a river, with only a dragoon’s riding-cloak for a bed, and then travelling a second day almost without food and refreshment, not only half the way on foot, but climbing rugged rocks, in danger every moment of wounding their delicate hands with the stones and briars, and only assisted occasionally by the servants of the company. To these things must be added, the inconvenience of a woman’s clothing, and the wearying manner of riding upon a woman’s saddle; and when they are all duly considered, there will be no difficulty in deciding, that whatever was endured by the rest of the company, it was not to be compared with what these young women suffered: yet all was supported by them with the most undaunted patience and constancy: not a complaint escaped their lips: they only confessed afterwards how much they had suffered from hunger and over-exertion. At the time, they were emulous to display uninterrupted gaiety and good-humour, and often by some lively sally dispersed the cloud which seemed to be stealing insensibly over the mind of the father. Probably, few of my female readers will now be desirous of taking the same journey.

The valley in which Lokenburg lies is called the Uye, or Bulb-valley, because many sorts of Iris and Leia grow here, the bulbs of which the Hottentots eat, and are very fond of them. The country is fruitful, and affords
excellent feed for sheep and horses. The owner of Lokenburg is the richest man in the district; the house indeed did not bear any appearance of great wealth, but that was more owing to the remoteness of the spot, and the frugal habits of the colonists living on the borders, than to a want of the means of making a greater show, or to penuriousness of disposition. The country is here thinly inhabited: in the last twenty hours we had scarcely seen a house, and our host himself said that he had not above four neighbours within reach of half a day’s journey on horseback. Corn was little cultivated: the grapes, from the height and coldness of the country, were not yet ripe; and the fruits in general were not so well flavoured as in other parts of the colony. The principal wealth of the Lower Bokkeveld consists in sheep. These animals thrive particularly well here and in the Roggeveld, but the dryness of the last year had destroyed a great many. The number of sheep fed by about twenty proprietors amounted to seventeen thousand, and might be increased to thirty thousand in favourable years: the loss in the last year was computed at ten thousand. At a moderate computation, there are besides about a thousand horses, and two thousand head of horned cattle, fed in this district. The farmers have begun to introduce here, the Spanish breed of sheep for the sake of the wool; that of the African sheep is good for nothing. The government considers this experiment as one of the most probable means of promoting the interests of the colony, by the source of profit which it may be made: but of this more hereafter.

That corn is not more cultivated, is owing principally to the difficulty of transport. Every one can, without much labour, grow a sufficient quantity for the supply of his own household, although there is a general want of water. The place where we now were is an exception to this general rule: it is the only spot in the district where the fertility of the soil can be turned to the best account, by the possibility of sufficient irrigation. Louw had even speculated upon attempting the cultivation of rice, which he thought would be very practicable; in fact, in a later journey which I made into these parts, I found that he had carried his project into execution. Tobacco is also grown here. In large trees, such as would yield wood for building, the country is wholly deficient. Willows grow on the banks of the Hantam-river, and mimosa on the banks of the Doorn: on both are also to be found nut-trees. Wood for building is brought, though not without great difficulty in the transport, from the cedar hills, and the houses in this district are therefore
much more roomy, more convenient, and built in a much better taste than in the Roggeveld. In the latter district they cannot get hard wood, such as could be used in building, on account of the almost impossibility of bringing it over the steep mountain roads.

As the Lower Bokkeveld is at the utmost extremity of the colony to the north, and borders on the solitary tracts haunted by the Bosjesmans, so in former times its inhabitants suffered much from the inroads of these ungovernable savages. For some years past, however, they have rather withdrawn from these parts, and carried their incursions more eastward, to the annoyance of the inhabitants of the Roggeveld: and the little parties who remain in the neighbourhood of the Bokkeveld live on peaceable terms with the colonists, the latter purchasing their amity by paying them a yearly tribute of sheep. The field-cornet, John Gideon Louw, the cousin of our host, contributed very much to the establishment of this peace, by collecting in the year 1798, from the colonists of the Bokkeveld, four hundred and sixty sheep and goats as a present to the Bosjesmans: upon this a sort of compact was entered into between them, which, by making them like presents from time to time, has hitherto been very well observed. But since some of the colonists, particularly those at a distance from the borders, have of late failed in giving in their contributions, some new means, it is to be apprehended, must be resorted to for the maintenance of this good understanding.

We were not a little discomposed by expecting, in vain, for the greatest part of the following day, the arrival of our waggons with their attendants; at length, about evening, our minds were set at rest by their appearing, when we found that this delay was owing to their having done like ourselves, and lost their way. Our whole company were now re-assembled, excepting two dragoons, who had loitered too much behind the waggons. Our French-horn player was here of particular use: stationed on the nearest height, he blew his far-sounding horn so successfully, that, notwithstanding the darkness of the night, the wanderers were led by the sound, till they at length rejoined us, and we were all once more collected together.

Our waggons had, however, suffered so much by the badness of the roads, that they were most of them not in a state to proceed without undergoing once more considerable repairs. This circumstance, united with the want of repose among the whole party, to recover their fatigues and recruit their strength, determined our chief to stay two days here. I was particularly
pleased with this arrangement, as it gave me an opportunity of putting my various collections into some order, and of packing them more securely. The Commissary-general employed these hours of leisure in visiting some other places in the district, and went on the first of November, accompanied by some of his train, and the Field-Cornet Louw, to Oorlogskloof,* the abode of the latter, seven hours farther northward, on the bank of the greater Doorn-river. In his way he stopped at the houses of several persons lying at a short distance from the road; and notwithstanding the poverty that reigned among them, he was received every where by the owners with expressions of the greatest pleasure, and with all the politeness which their situations would admit of.

The evenings and nights that we passed here were very cold, and the thermometer sunk to 9° by Reaumur. One night there was a strong hoar frost, a thing never experienced at the Cape, even in the middle of winter: this is owing to the height of the country in these mountainous regions. In another part of my work, when my readers are made thoroughly acquainted with the nature of the country in all its parts, I shall take an opportunity of dwelling more diffusely upon the differences of the climate in different districts.

Our host remembered with much gratitude the excellent Thunberg, who visited him in the year 1773, and to whose cares and skill he owed the life of a son then very dangerously ill: the youth recovered entirely, and is still living. As a particular curiosity, he shewed us a goblet, made of the little horn of an African rhinoceros, which, as he assured us, had the property, if a liquid poison was put into it, of changing its nature entirely by a strong fermentation, which takes off the noxious quality, so that it may be drank without any danger. It was in vain that I endeavoured to persuade the worthy man how erroneous, and even dangerous, was such a belief: it seemed to be the universal popular creed, and was not to be shaken.†

* Oorlogskloof, the War-valley, so called because of a combat which once took place here with the Bosjaams. This place is the most northern of the district. Directly beyond it begins the inhospitable country of the Namaquas.
† In the first volume of a collection of travels published at Leipzig in 1748, it is said, that the Malays consider the rhinoceros as the female of the unicorn; and it is added that they value their horns very highly, as an antidote against all sorts of poison. It is very probable that this superstition was introduced into the colony of the Cape by the Malay slaves.
CHAP. VII.

The Namaqua Partridge.—The Matjes-fontein.—John Strauss.—On the Diseases of the Colonists.—The Tyger-point.—The District of Hantam.—Van Reenen’s Property there.—Character of the Colonists of these Parts.—Impressions of Fish in the Slate-Stone.—The Sprunting-Snake.—The Roggeveld Mountain.—Huntings of the Colonists beyond the Borders.—Cold Climate of the Roggeveld.—The Legplaats.—The Lower Roggeveld.—Account of the Murder of a Family of Colonists by Slaves and Bosjesmans.—The Kuil-river.—Natron rising out of the Ground.

On Wednesday, the second of November, we proceeded on our journey, and stopped at noon at the house of a certain Peter Van Zyl. We found in the person of Van Zyl’s wife a poor but truly worthy and notable housewife, who was exceedingly bustling and assiduous in her endeavours to make our short stay as agreeable as her confined circumstances would permit. We had here a Namaqua partridge, which the husband had shot the day before: these birds are in such abundance in this country that as many as sixty are sometimes brought down in three shots; they are about the size of a small pigeon, and very delicate. In later journeys, by myself, when I went beyond the bounds of the colony, they often afforded me a very agreeable repast.

In the afternoon we went a little out of our way to visit the sick woman, whose family had a few days before so readily shared with us their slender provision of food and drink. I found her still very ill, and left her the medicines I had promised, with some directions for managing herself, particularly with regard to diet. On the evening of the same day we arrived at the Matjes-fontein,* where lived a certain John Strauss; but his house was so small that there was not even a place where the Commissary-general could sleep: we were all obliged to have recourse to our tents.

This Strauss was of German origin. His father migrated to the Cape as a

* Matjesgoed is the name given to a sort of rush, of which very pretty mats are made in this country. It grows in abundance in this place, and hence it is called Matjes-fontein.
soldier, but afterwards became a citizen, and was in exceeding good circumstances, when he had the melancholy fate of being murdered in a most horrid manner by his slaves. Strauss, though then but a child, was an eye-witness of this dreadful event, and gave us a very circumstantial account of it.

I found ample employment during the short time of my stay here, for there was a vast number of sick and infirm people in the neighbourhood, who came to ask my advice. I was much struck with the manner in which I was accosted by most of them, for placing the firmest confidence in the infallibility of my art, they called me master, seeming to have the feeling, as if I were able to perform like miracles with those recorded by the Evangelists, and of my own power alone heal their diseases.* Most of them were afflicted with long-standing deep-rooted maladies, which would have required a protracted and careful attendance to afford any chance of curing them. Chronic diseases are much more frequent in this country than acute ones. Far the greater part of the women labour under hysterical affections, which by their strange mode of managing them, contrary to all sense and reason, often come to a formidable height, and end in hectic complaints, which prove fatal. The stone is here a much too common complaint among the men: this is perhaps to be ascribed in great measure to the bad water, and the want of spirituous liquors.† In those districts where vines are cultivated, and good wine is made, or where wine is to be had cheap, the evil does not exist. There is another disease which is not very frequent among the white people, but when they are afflicted with it, from their total ignorance of the manner in which it ought to be treated, it commonly gets to a formidable height. It is much more frequent among the Hottentots, but what is extraordinary, is not so manifestly destructive to them.

Gout and rheumatism are among the diseases to which the colonists are

---

* The Dutch ship surgeons are called in the sailor’s language meester, (master) and this term, with many others used by the sailors, has been adopted as the language in common use among the colonists. Edwards, in his excellent account of the English possessions in the West Indies, remarks, that the case is the same in those colonies.

† Water tainted with earthy matter is generally assigned as a cause of the stone; but the want of spirituous liquors seems to be a novel and an unreasonable cause for that disease.—Translator.
more particularly subject. By removing to a milder part of the country, or by the use of the warm bath, these evils are, however, more easily subdued than many others. Children suffer much from quinsies, but this is the only disease prevalent among them: scrofula is seldom to be seen, and the small-pox is quite extirpated from the interior of the colony. Fevers are not frequent, and never arrive at the formidable height among the native colonists that they do among Europeans, whether in their own countries, or as emigrants in this.

Notwithstanding that our stock of medicines was very ample, yet it would soon have been exhausted, if I had administered to the wants of every body that came to consult me. I therefore found it expedient to make myself acquainted with the properties of such medicinal plants as grew in the neighbourhood, and had recourse to them in most instances, since otherwise we should have been left without resources, in case of any of our own party being sick. By the advice of a friend in the Cape Town, I carried with me a stock of Halle medicines, in which he told me the colonists placed great confidence, and that it was not easy to make them a more acceptable present than a glass of pulvis antispasmodicus, or essentia dulcis. As I did not, however, place equal confidence in these medicines, I forbore to give them as specifics in cases of real disease: I only availed myself of them occasionally when I wanted to make some little return for civilities received, or when I was for any other reason desirous of obliging. Through the medium of my medicinal knowledge, I acquired myself many friends among the colonists, and in my subsequent travels through these countries I found the readiness I had always shewn upon this occasion to give my assistance wherever it was wanted amply repaid by a thousand little courtesies, and by the universal esteem and regard with which I was received. One inconvenience I experienced from it, that many an hour was by this means lost to me, which I wished to have been able to devote to other pursuits. It occasioned me, besides, to have much less time for repose than any of my companions, since, from the number of patients I had to attend to, it often happened that no other opportunities remained for me to make my excursions in quest of the treasures I was always desirous of obtaining, except the hours which should have been devoted to rest.
The next place at which we stopped was at the foot of a little hill, the south end of which is called the Tyger-point. We met with a very friendly reception here in the house of a colonist, by name Vander Merwe: we had a great deal of conversation with him upon the diseases to which the cattle of the country are subject, and judged him, from the nature of his remarks, to be a sensible man. In the neighbourhood of the house we found a rich harvest of rare plants and insects.

A pass between two little hills which unites two plains with each other, without any difficulties or unevenness of ground in the passage, is called by the colonists a poort (a door). Such a poort is formed by the Tyger-point and the hill opposite. We passed through this poort in the afternoon, and learnt from our conductors that two years before, the pass was for some time infested by the Bosjesmans. They used to conceal themselves among the blocks of Sand-stone rock, which are nearly the colour of their skin, whence they shot their poisoned arrows at the travellers who were passing through, without a possibility of their being seen by them. We remarked, as we proceeded farther on, traces of a vast assemblage of ostriches, which must recently have passed that way. In summer these birds are fond of inhabiting the heights, but in winter they descend into the plains.

The foot of the Hantam mountain was the boundary of our this day's journey; and Akerendam, the house of the Field-Cornet Abraham Van Wyk, on the south side of the mountain, was our destined quarters for the night. This hill is in many respects very remarkable: it is almost isolated, and resembles the Table mountain very much, from the flatness of its top, and the steepness of its sides; but it is not so high, its summit being only about fifteen hundred feet above the valley at its base. What above all things, however, makes it remarkable, and occasions it to be celebrated throughout the colony, is the excellent quality of the grass produced in its neighbourhood; it is reckoned particularly salutary for the feed of horses. Another advantage enjoyed by the country is, that it is free from the pernicious droughts which in some parts of the colony do so much mischief almost every year. The cause of this peculiar wholesomeness of the grass is not yet fully understood, but the inhabitants are inclined to ascribe it principally to the mountain being covered with snow for three months in the winter, while
even the highest of the neighbouring hills do not remain white for more than a day at a time.

The land hereabouts would be fruitful enough, if, as in the southern parts of the colony, rains fell regularly in winter. But this is not the case; a want of water prevails everywhere, particularly to the south and east of the Hantam mountain; many places even, from the extreme drought, are in summer wholly uninhabitable. In the short winter days the springs sometimes begin to flow again of themselves, without any rain having fallen, in consequence of the little evaporation from above, and the melting of the snow on the tops of the hills. Even at this time of the year the salt-springs and standing waters of the Roggeveld become sweet from these circumstances.

Very little corn is gathered in the district of Hantam, though some lands are sown every year by the colonists. If heaven is pleased to grant rain, the harvest is tolerably abundant, but it too often happens that the seed is scarcely more than returned; the principal part of the corn used is therefore brought from the neighbouring districts, particularly from the Lower Bokkeveld. The consumption of corn is small in these northern parts: meat is the general food: the slaves in particular scarcely ever taste bread. This is universally the case where, as here, there is good feed for sheep, and meat is cheaper than bread. In a household of twenty people, three or four sheep, weighing from thirty-six to forty pounds each, are killed every day, and the common reckoning, as I collected from questioning a variety of persons, is a sheep a week for every herdsman. There were at this time about twenty-five thousand sheep in the district, but the dryness of the year 1804 decreased the number to about twenty thousand. Nor was this the only mischief it occasioned: for the fodder was in many places entirely destroyed, and nothing but worthless plants remained upon the spots. Very few horned cattle are kept, from the want of what is called valley-ground; by this is meant a moist soil, composed of clay and sand, since it is in such a soil that the plants good for feeding cattle thrive best.

The most considerable estate in this district is one belonging to Mr. John Van Reenen, the same whom we had seen at the Teefontein. It lies on the north-west side of the Hantam Mountain, the part which is well watered. At the next farm, called the Groote Toorn, Van Reenen has an excellent stud, consisting of more than three hundred,—breeding horses, mares, and
colts included,—all of the best English and Arabian breed. He had among others, an Arabian horse, for which he gave three thousand dollars. These animals are left day and night to run about the open field without any guard. Stables are wholly unknown here, and to steal a horse is a thing unheard of. About once in a fortnight the horses are all collected together and counted over. Now and then a colt is missed, which has probably become a prey to the hyænas, and in many of the horses are to be seen evident marks of the claws of wild beasts.

This estate of Mr. Van Reenen is an exception to the general rule respecting the unsuitableness of these parts to the growing of corn. As on his side of the Hantam Mountain several little streamlets flow from it, so that the lands can be well watered, he can grow sufficient corn for his own consumption: in a good year the corn will yield from forty to fifty fold. The garden produces excellent kitchen vegetables of many sorts; and an orchard of about six hundred peach trees, furnishes an ample supply of dried fruit for the winter.

Van Reenen’s flock consisted at this time of more than sixteen hundred sheep. As he was one of the first to introduce the Spanish sheep, many of his flock, even as far as the fifth generation, were of that breed, and bore very fine wool; an article which already brought him in great profit. The government in the year 1804 established a commission to enquire into the best mode of improving agriculture and the breeding of cattle, of which Mr. Van Reenen was appointed a member. Of this commission, at the head of which was Mr. Van Ryneveld, I shall have frequent occasion to speak. Their attention has been turned very much to the improvement of the breed of sheep, in which they have succeeded so well, that for a few years past the revenues of the colony have been much benefited by the exportation of wool.

Next to Van Reenen’s estate, that of the Field-Cornet Van Wyk, at which we were now taking up our quarters, is esteemed the best in the district:—it is, however, very deficient in water. To the south-west extends a widespread plain, about three or four hours in circumference. This plain is bounded by several isolated hills of singular forms, among which the most remarkable is the Prammeberg (the Breast Mountain), so called, because when seen in profile it very much resembles the bosom of a woman.
The inhabitants of this district are more active, move more briskly, and are less fat and unwholesome than those of the southern parts; probably owing to the climate being so much more temperate. They resemble in this respect the inhabitants of the country about the Snow Mountains, on the eastern side of the colony, whose activity has been celebrated by most travellers. Soon after our arrival, several families of the neighbourhood made their appearance, some in waggons, some on horseback, attracted by curiosity to see a magistrate high in office, once in their lives. Every one brought with him some little present of game, or other things for the table, which were no less thankfully received than they were courteously given. We could not help being once more surprised to see so much natural good breeding and civility, so much propriety in their modes of expressing themselves, under such simple garments, and among people living at the distance of sixty miles from the capital, in a dry and solitary country, fit only for the feeding of cattle, and half encircled by some of the wildest among the savages of the neighbouring districts.

A couple of sturdy young lads, whose eyes glistened with health and contentment, delighted us very much with the eager manner in which they related a number of hunting and travelling adventures they had met with; and the effect was exceedingly increased by the concise, yet expressive, African Dutch language, in which the relation was given. We had often the opportunity of remarking, that we never heard from the mouth of a colonist an unseemly word, an overstrained expression, a curse, or an imprecation of any kind. The more I saw of these people the more I was convinced of the truth of this remark; I even many times perceived plainly that they could not without a sort of honourable indignation hear our dragoons, and, indeed, others of our Europeans, in their impatience, permit oaths or other unbecoming expressions to escape them. The universally religious turn of the colonists, amounting almost to bigotry, is, perhaps, a principal cause to which this command of themselves is to be ascribed;—it may also be in some measure the result of their living so extremely secluded from the world; a circumstance which preserves them from temptation to many vices.

But what pleased us above all things in the good people of the Hantam district was, the amenity of disposition which appeared in them towards each
other. This was the first place where our active chief had not been called upon to decide any differences among the inhabitants. It must be acknowledged that the colonists in general are too much disposed to quarrelling among themselves, principally with respect to the boundaries of their several estates; and perhaps among ten near neighbours nine will be at variance. Yet, though they adhere to what they consider as their rights with the utmost pertinacity, no one thinks of aspersing or calumniating another, not even behind his back, much less does he ever proceed to active outrages. In this district there is, indeed, less cause than in some others for such quarrels, since the estates lie pretty remote from each other, and there are comparatively few horned cattle kept: the forage for them, where they are kept in abundance, is always a fertile source of discord.

The heat of the following day induced us to remain here till the afternoon; the rather as we were only four hours distant from the place where we were to rest the next night. I employed the morning in exploring the surrounding country, and visited two sick Hottentots belonging to our host. I found by the bed of one of them a musical instrument, a sort of guitar made of half the rind of a gourd scooped out, with a rough touch-board fastened over it, along which were drawn four strings. The wife of the sick man would play upon it, and produced accords which I afterwards heard from the gorrah and other instruments of these savages, and which could not without great difficulty have been produced from any of our own stringed instruments.

The place to which we went in the evening belonged to a person of the name of Gous, and was one of the poorest we had seen in our journey. It is the last in this district towards the east, and is called De onwetende fontein aan den Daunis Kloof. The cabin, for house it could hardly be called, of the owner, was surrounded by naked craggy rocks, nor, as far as the eye could see, was a tree, or even a shrub to be discovered. Low, thinly scattered bushy plants, among which the *mesembryanthemum spinosum* seemed the most abundant, was all that the earth produced; but, notwithstanding this, a considerable number of sheep were feeding all about. A little spring, which rose in the bed of a periodical river, afforded only a small quantity of brackish water scarcely drinkable, and the complete solitude of the place left the inhabitants not without apprehensions of visits from the Bosjesmans. In this melancholy spot, however, we found a curiosity well worthy the
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

utmost attention of the naturalist, and of future travellers. In the slate-stone from which the spring rose were the impressions of an innumerable multitude of fish. We perceived this extraordinary appearance first upon the surface, but the impressions were larger, more distinct, and finer, in proportion as we broke deeper and deeper into the stone. The form of the fish resembled that of the eel, and the length of the largest was about three feet. The brittleness of the slate made it impossible for us to get out a single specimen entire, and the fragments, which we preserved for the purpose of examining them at our leisure, were afterwards destroyed by the jolting of the waggon. The more I made myself acquainted with this country, by my subsequent travels, the more remarkable did the phenomenon appear to me, as being the only remains of a former world, which I found throughout the whole of Southern Africa.

We now quitted the district of Hantam, and turning to the south-east, bent our course towards the Roggeveld Mountains. Our route lay over a plain which stretched from the south-west to the north-east, between the districts of Hantam and the Lower Roggeveld, and, like the former, it was encompassed by isolated hills, rising as it were out of the plain, and presenting a variety of fantastic forms. A lofty mountain, which seemed almost as if it had been broken down perpendicularly, and which was divided in horizontal layers, towered above all the other hills; its top appearing in some points of view as if it had been a regularly shaped cone, in others, as if it was broad and flat like the Table Mountain, while over it was thrown a green carpet of well-grown plants, giving it a very picturesque appearance.

Some young colonists accompanied us as guides, who were, besides, in case of meeting with any game, to give us proofs of their dexterity in the art of shooting. But alas! such opportunities were sought in vain; the only thing that came in our way during the whole day was a vulture of the species here called the bald-head (vultur aura), which one of our jagers shot flying. The heat of the day brought out a great many snakes; we killed two of very venomous kinds, one the horned snake, as it is called (coluber cerastes), the poison of which is very much sought after by the Bosjesmans for poisoning their arrows. The other was a very rare sort of serpent, called here the spuugslang (the spurtling snake). It is from three to four feet long, of a black
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

colour, and has the singular property, according to the assertion of the colonists, that when attacked it will spurt out its venom, and that it knows how to give it such a direction as to hit the eyes of the person attacking him. This is followed by violent pain and so strong an inflammation, that it will occasion the entire loss of sight. To wash the eyes immediately with warm milk is recommended as the best remedy in such a case. The bite of this serpent is extremely dangerous. It is probably the same that is mentioned by the Capuchin Antonio Zuchelli, in the account of his mission to Congo*, where it is said that it spurts its venom from its own eyes into the eyes of the person who attacks it; and that the milk of a woman is the only thing that can prevent total blindness ensuing.†

We arrived in the mountains of the Roggeveld about noon, and in a narrow valley found the dwelling of a widow Steenkampf, called Elandsfontein. Although, from the abundance of water, vegetation was here more flourishing than in many parts, and that there were gardens and corn-fields about the house, yet the narrowness of the valley, pressed in between high, dark, naked rocks, into which the house seemed as it were wedged, made this but a dismal abode. The cold, at night, was pretty severe; and as we were obliged to sleep in tents, we had some difficulty to keep ourselves warm.

Our day’s journey, on the sixth of November, was performed by me more than half on foot, that I might be at liberty to collect plants and insects. I was obliged to carry, besides the apparatus necessary for disposing of the treasures I hoped to amass, a gun to defend myself in case of necessity, or to kill any game I might meet with; and thus loaded, a walk in the heat of the day was somewhat fatiguing. My trouble, however, was repaid by a large addition to my collection, and by a hare and a couple of very pretty birds which I shot. I quitted the road, and climbed among the rocks, now up, now down, over clefts and crags, till at length about noon I rejoined our party, whom I found in a place called the Hartebeestfontein, belonging to the son of

* Published at Venice in 1711.
† See Beckmann’s Litteratur der alteren Reisebeschreibungen. The Translator has sought in vain in Linnaeus for an account of this snake: no name corresponding to the German one is to found; nor is the animal mentioned in Nemnich’s Lexicon der Naturgeschichte.
one of our old friends the Louws. He was not himself at home: he had been absent a fortnight, having gone with some neighbours to hunt the eland.* They had now exceeded the time that they proposed to be absent by two days, and the wife was under no little anxiety lest some accident had befallen them. It was impossible not to share in her distress, and equally to participate in her joy, at seeing them return in the evening. The company had gone five days northwards, beyond the boundaries of the colony, and besides all the smaller game they had killed, which served as their daily food, they brought home seventeen elands. These animals weighed from seven to eight hundred pounds a-piece, so that the portion of each of the hunters was about four thousand pounds of pure, excellent flesh. This was cut to pieces upon the spot, salted and packed in the skins, and thus brought home in a waggon they had taken with them. Here it was to be smoked, and would then be a plentiful supply of cheap and wholesome food.

The great muscle of the thigh, smoked, is more particularly esteemed. These are cut out at their whole length, and from the resemblance they then bear to bullocks' tongues, are called thigh-tongues. They are often sent as presents, or for sale, to the Cape Town, and are there eaten raw, and cut into very thin slices, with bread and butter. Thus prepared, they are esteemed an excellent gourmandise. The taste of the eland's flesh, when eaten fresh, resembles beef, but it is less fat, and can for that reason be kept longer when dried. In this country, where bread is not always to be had, and where fatted mutton is thought not to be wholesome as a constant food, this smoked flesh comes in as a very agreeable and salutary change.

Much has been said against these hunting parties beyond the borders; and it must be confessed that Mr. Barrow does not without justice represent them as incroachments upon the savage tribe, to whom the territories properly belong. They have, indeed, been strenuously prohibited by the Dutch government, since the year 1804; a regulation which certainly has more to be said for than against it, and the best effect of which is, that it must compel

---

* The Antelope Oreas. These are a large sort of Antelopes; they go together in flocks, and their flesh is much esteemed; the marrow is considered as a particular delicacy; the skin is extremely useful, and the Hottentots make tobacco-pipes of the horns.
the colonists to be more diligent in seeking resources within themselves; that they must now be under the necessity of making improvements in the rearing of cattle, to compensate the loss of the supplies derived from the chase. I cannot, however, abstain from remarking, that the ground on which Mr. Barrow condemns this practice, can never, as it appears to me, be maintained, and that he rests his corollary entirely upon false assumptions. In my later journeys, when I went beyond the boundaries of the colony, I was fully convinced that there was a super-abundance of wild game all over the country, which the Bosjesmans, from their natural indolence, and from the imperfect nature of their arms, are by no means in a situation to make use of as an object of advantage to themselves. Nay, I have myself heard them complain of the discontinuance of these hunting parties, since they were, they said, beneficial to them, as they got the refuse, that is to say, the head, the feet, and the entrails of the animals, for their portion. It is, however, I again repeat, right that the possible mischief which might arise from this practice should be prevented.

The district in which the elands had been killed was still, as Louw told us, inhabited by the rhinoceros, and he had himself, in the course of his life, dispatched several of these creatures. Their flesh is commonly given entirely to the savages, who consider it as a particular dainty; and such a present is the more acceptable, since they cannot, with their weak arrows, pierce the thick hide by which the monster is defended. The skin is the only thing valuable to the colonists, to cut into strips for making the driving whips known here by the Malay name of Schamboks. As these whips will always sell for two, three, or even four shillings, a rhinoceros amply repays the powder and ball necessary for killing him.

The Hartebeestfontein is a very fertile spot, and affords plenty of good feed for cattle. Louw keeps two hundred horses, three thousand sheep, four hundred goats, and a great number of horned cattle. A very neat nice young wife, and five stout, healthy children complete his domestic happiness; while his cheerful, contented spirit, and frank integrity of mind, render him worthy of all they can bestow.

We found the cold again here pretty severe at night, though the thermometer rose in the day to twenty degrees by Reaumur. In the winter months
deep snows sometimes fall, and it is so cold that the inhabitants of the Roggeveldts, in order to preserve their cattle from want and disease, remove to the neighbouring Karroo, which lies some thousand feet lower. If rain falls at that period of the year, the Karroo, though it is at other times wholly dry and unfruitful, becomes a glorious meadow. Every colonist of the Roggeveld has, therefore, besides his proper habitation, a place in the Karroo, which is called a Legplaats, and for which no duty, as for a regular farm, is paid to the government. Here a small house is erected, which at the beginning of spring is forsaken again, and remains empty and open. The drought begins to come on in September and October, when the family return to the hills, where they commonly remain till May or June. As the Legplaats is sometimes several days journey from the dwelling-house, it will be easily comprehended that these migrations twice in the year, with wife and children, bag and baggage, must occasion a good deal of trouble and expense.

The country upon these heights is more level, and less wearisome for travelling, than in many other parts we had visited. The valleys are broad and open: only here and there solitary eminences rear their heads: from the summits of many of these there is a fine view over the Karroo below. The stone is covered with a very thin coat of earth, but between the crags grow a variety of delightful aromatic plants, as for instance, different sorts of oralis, diosma, pelargonium, chrysocoma, pteronia, athonna, and others; the nudicaulis, and cotula globifera abound more particularly. These afford a wholesome food for the sheep and horses, and enable them to subsist during the drought of summer, supposing the usual fall of snow and rain in winter not to fail; but this it unfortunately did in the years 1803 and 1804. When we were here, therefore, the stock of sheep was comparatively small to what it is at more favourable times. The flocks had not only suffered from want of food, but in consequence of the usual rains failing, they were infested with the sheep-louse to such a degree that many thousands died in consequence. The district contained at one time not less than eighty thousand sheep; but in 1805 they were reduced to half that number. The climate of the Roggeveld mountains has, in a course of years, undergone a considerable change. Old people remember very well, that half a century back the super-abundance of water in the district was such that in the middle of summer the nearest neigh-
bours could not get to each other, on account of the rivers being overflowed, and of the deep morasses in the valleys. There seldom at that period passed a week, even in the hottest months, that violent thunderstorms did not bring with them a profuse supply of rain: on the contrary, whole summers had of late years passed without the intervention of a single storm.

In the circle of the Lower Roggeveld almost every family has more than one place, some have even three or four, so that though consisting of forty-seven places, it contains no more than twenty-two householders. This arises chiefly from the circumstance that most of these places can only be rendered of use at certain times of the year, and that the want of water, the scantiness of feed for their animals, or diseases among the cattle, make it necessary to change their abode from one place to another. Many parts of the district are extremely favourable for the breeding of horses, particularly where the situation is high and cold: in such situations they are seldom attacked by the murrain, a disease from which they suffer exceedingly in low damp places. The number of cattle fed here is very insignificant, and yet less so than in the Middle Roggeveld. A sufficient quantity of corn is grown for the consumption of the inhabitants, that is to say, of wheat and barley. Rye (roggen, or rocken) is not cultivated here, though the name of the district might lead to the supposition that it was a principal object of cultivation; but the truth is, that the name is taken from a species of grass which grows very much among the clefts, resembling rye, and which the colonists call wild rye.

After remaining a whole day with the friendly and happy owners of the Hartebeestfontein, we proceeded forwards on the eighth of November, and about noon reached the house of Mr. Dirk Van Wyk, at the Matjesfontein. Among the children of this man, who was already advanced in years, andsingularly corpulent, we were particularly interested by the eldest daughter, from the terrible scenes she had gone through two years before. She had married a person of the name of Coetzé, with whom she was living at the house of his father not far from hence. Their domestic happiness was already increased by the prospect of her becoming a mother, and the time of her confinement was approaching, when suddenly, in a dark night, the slaves and
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

Hottentots belonging to the establishment (there being, among the latter, many of the Bosjesmans) rose upon the family, and after inhumanly murdering her husband, her father and mother-in-law, and a sister of her husband's, before her face, plundered the estate of every thing worth carrying away. She herself was, wonderful to relate, spared. It could only be supposed that even these barbarians were moved with something like compassion on seeing her situation. She was, however, dragged away, gagged, till after several days travelling, they arrived at a place of concealment, whither also they carried all their plunder in cattle, in goods, or in money.

A whole week was she detained in this horrible situation, often a witness to the debates among the plunderers respecting her ultimate fate. The Bosjesmans contended for her being put to death; but the milder slaves, to whom she had done several acts of kindness, interposed to save her. At length, however, her death was determined on, as intelligence arrived that a party, which had been sent in pursuit of them by the commandant of the district, was at hand. They were accordingly leading her to a lonely chasm among the rocks, there to complete their purpose, choosing this place, as thinking that there would then be no danger of the corpse being found by their pursuers, when a party of colonists, headed by the brave Field-cornet Nel, rushed from the opposite side into the valley, and falling upon them, rescued the poor woman, and taking most of the wretches prisoners, delivered them over to the hands of justice.

It is probable that the Bosjesmans were principally incited to this horrid deed by the great wealth of the old Coetzé, as no less than twenty-five thousand dollars in paper-money was found in their hands. But it is likewise possible that ill-timed, or over-strained severity on the part of the master, accelerated the crime, as the slaves had been induced to become partakers in it, and had been restrained from disclosing the plot. The poor young woman was restored to her parents, and was not long after brought to bed of a son, whom we now saw, a fine boy of a year and a half old, the delight of his grand-father and grandmother.

In the evening we arrived at the house of the Field-cornet Nel, mentioned above. He was a very sensible, well-informed man: indeed, he and his father and brothers, had the reputation of being the most intelligent and active
cattle and sheep feeders of the country. They had among them six places, of which only four had a supply of water the whole year through. The sons had therefore recently made an agreement for another, which was watered by two never-failing springs, and thought of disposing of the unprofitable ones. The price of this new place was twelve thousand dollars, but it is not their absolute property: they only paid this sum for the house, the garden, and such improvements as were made by the late proprietor, and for his rights as lessee of the lands under the government.

The place where we now were is called de Kuil, and the little periodical river that runs through it the Kuil's-river. In this river was now a pit so full of water that we could bathe in it; and yet Nel assured us, that a few weeks before there was scarcely sufficient to satisfy the thirst of a couple of horses. The water was very brackish; and what was used for family purposes was drawn from a neighbouring spring. The whole plain before the house was whitened over with the natron rising from the earth: it looked perfectly like a thin layer of snow. I availed myself of this abundance, the like of which we had not seen before, to collect a quantity of it, and clearing it from the sand, carried it with me, thus crystallised, for further examination.

One of our waggons having again, the day before, had an axle-tree broke, the repair of it made a day's rest here necessary. We did not, therefore, proceed on our journey till the tenth of November, on which day, after making a halt at noon at the Kruis-river, we arrived in the evening at a delightful little valley called Koornlandskloof. This was the scene of the horrid murder above related: it was now in the possession of Ocker Coetzé, son to the old man who was murdered, and brother-in-law to the unfortunate woman we had seen. He had with him an unmarried sister, who in that fatal night fortunately escaped the hands of the robbers. She gave us a minute detail of the tragical event, led to it almost irresistibly by our being in the very room which had been the principal theatre of it. This young woman besides excited our interest very much from speaking, with fluency, the languages of the Calibes, of the Hottentots, and of the Bosjesmans. The purity, moreover, with which she spoke her own language (the Dutch), and a certain refinement in her manners, shewed a higher degree of polish than we
had found among the rest of the women in these parts. In this place the same inconvenience is experienced, as in so many others already mentioned, that though, in humid seasons, it is very fertile, and will produce corn abundantly, yet in some years the springs are entirely dried up, during the hot months, and the inhabitants, from want of water, are obliged to seek another abode.
The Middle Roggeveld.—Description of the Habitation of a Colonist.—Quarrels among the Inhabitants of the Roggeveld.—Large Flock of Ostriches.—Komberg.—An Instance of the increasing Population of the Colony.—The Little Roggeveld.—Visit from some Bosjesmans.

After having seen nothing for several weeks but a very dull and uniform country, we were this day agreeably surprised with the pleasant road we travelled, turning and winding now on this side, now on that of the little Fish-river. The road was smooth and level. The frequent fording the river, as it was no where deep, was rather pleasant than troublesome, and the banks on both sides were fringed with willows and mimosa, which, if the foliage could not be called luxuriant, at least reminded us of coolness and shade. He who smiles at the pleasure we received from only being reminded of shade, or thinks this observation trivial, must feel the force of an African sun to have an idea of the value of shade and water. This stream must not be confused with the great Fish-river which lies to the east of the colony, on the borders of the Caffre country: the stream, though small, yet even in the places where the water was lowest, had greater depth than any we had passed since the Berg-river.

With our spirits very much cheered, we arrived at the house of a widow named Korf, where, in compliance with the pressing invitation of the mistress, we stopped, and partook of a repast which she instantly prepared for us: we could not, in civility, decline doing so, though we should all have preferred sitting down to take our usual rest at noon by the side of the river. Early in the evening we reached the place of the Three Fountains (Dreifonteinen), belonging to a Mr. Gerrit Viseher.

We were now in the district of the Middle Roggeveld, where there are sixty-two places belonging to thirty-six householders. Each of these has from two to four thousand sheep, and upon a moderate computation, the whole number kept by them may be estimated at a hundred thousand. The soil is an irony loam mixed with sand, resembling the Karroo soil very
much, but from its greater elevation, and the quantity of loose stones, it is much cooler and more fertile.

The Roggeveld lies from two thousand to two thousand five hundred feet above the Karroo below it. Northwards it slopes gradually towards the Riet-river, and the Nieuweveld. The course of all the little streams which have their sources among the mountains of the Roggeveld is not towards the Karroo, but towards the Agterveld, as it is called, that is the thinly inhabited northern part of the district. What has been said of the climate, and productions of the Lower Roggeveld, as well as of the objects of profit to the inhabitants, will apply equally well to the middle. It lies upon the whole higher, and therefore suits the breeding of horses better; but the people have so strong a prejudice in favour of their own race of horses, that they will not introduce English or Arabians to cross the breed. Their’s are certainly the best among the different races of African horses: they are large and strong, but they are thick at the joints, and any thing rather than handsomely formed. Formerly as much corn was grown as would serve for the consumption of the district, and the seed returned about forty fold; but for some years it has been diminished, and the consumption of flesh has increased. Fewer cattle are kept here than in the Lower Roggeveld, on account of the want of Valley-ground, which is every where hereabouts the principal object in breeding cattle.

In large trees, the country is wholly deficient, for which reason the dwelling-places of the inhabitants have a naked forlorn appearance. The want of trees is so striking, that some insignificant hedges of European elder attracted our attention exceedingly. We also saw some single peach-trees, and several hedges of quince. Snow falls earlier here than in the Lower Roggeveld; and as the cold and thick fogs are very injurious to the cattle, the inhabitants are driven down in winter into the Karroo. In October they return home, but they are not long at rest, for in summer they are often compelled by the drought to go northwards to the banks of the Riet-river. A long experience has taught that these removals, however inconvenient they may be to the masters, are very salutary to the animals, particularly the sheep: the oftener their place of feeding is changed, the better they thrive.

On account of the circumstance above stated, the buildings are in no part of the colony smaller, poorer, and less convenient than here. The dwelling-
houses are seldom more than from thirty to forty feet broad, and about twenty high. From the entrance by a little low door, the roof, which is composed of rough unshewn spars of the mimosa-tree, or sometimes of bamboo cane, may be seen. The room by which we enter is that where the family sits; it serves also in many places for the kitchen, and is equally the room for the servants as for the masters; but in the best houses there is a small place backwards for the kitchen. By the side of the large room is another, to which there is a little narrow door: this is the sleeping-room of the whole family, and is often used besides as a place for keeping provisions and other stores. The household furniture consists of some simple tables and stools, with leather thongs for seats: instead of shelves, drawers, or closets, open niches are made in the wall where things are stowed: in one corner of the room commonly stands a tub filled with water, into which any body who wants to drink dips a tin pot, or perhaps the shell of a gourd. A pot with tea stands upon one of the tables almost all day long, of which the women drink perpetually, and thereby lay the foundation of those hysterical disorders to which, as I have already mentioned, they become so subject. The only thing that can excuse this excessive drinking of tea is, that the flavour of the water is in many places so bad, as to be very disagreeable without something to correct it. Beer is no where to be found in the colony, excepting at the Cape Town; wine must be fetched from a great distance to the Roggeveld, and even brandy is very scarce. Milk is only to be had where there is good feed for the cattle, and then it is generally made into butter: the colonists, besides, who live so much upon animal food, do not like milk to drink; they seldom even use it with their tea, and mixed with the brackish water, it has a very vapid disagreeable taste.

The materials of which the walls of the house are built are not to be brought from any great distance. A coarse kind of slate, abounding all over the Roggeveld, serves extremely well in the place of stone for building: this laid in rows like bricks, and cemented together with clay, makes a very thick, solid, and cool wall. From the want of wood, it is impossible to adopt a better style of building here. I have heard those among the inhabitants of the country, who are in good circumstances, assert that if they had but better timbers, they would build as handsome houses as could be seen. But they are not able to afford the enormous sums that must be expended to bring timber over
the steep and rugged mountain roads by which it must be transported from the parts where it can be procured.

The exterior of the house is, however, sufficiently neat: the thatch is well laid, and the walls are plastered both inside and out, so as to make a very good appearance: it is only where there is a want of lime to make the plaster, or of money to buy it, that a surface of clay is substituted. The floors are everywhere of clay, and are washed every day with a mixture of water and cow-dung, which keeps them cool, and free from vermin. The utmost neatness reigns throughout the house, and the good mistress with her daughters are indefatigable in sweeping and cleaning it.

About the dwelling-house stand a number of smaller buildings, simply constructed, which are partly for the slaves and Hottentots, partly for workshops and store-houses. Near these are the folds for the different sorts of cattle called here *kraals.* The kraals for the horses and oxen are enclosed by a wall five or six feet high, those for the sheep are only enclosed by thorn-hedges. As the draught cattle, the cattle destined to be slaughtered, and the cows and calves, have each separate kraals; as the sheep that bear the fine wool are separated from those with the fat tails; and as the ewes and wethers are also kept separate from each other; so there are often as many as seven or eight kraals about a house. An equal number of shepherds and herdsmen are also necessary to watch each separate flock or herd: they go out early in the morning to the place where they are to feed for the day, and all return back to the kraal at sun-set. The dried dung often lies three feet high, or even more, in these kraals, wholly neglected and unused. From the number of cattle kept, and from their being always thus separated, it will appear obvious why such extensive domains are requisite to the colonists. Few estates are less than an hour long, and of equal breadth, containing thirty-six thousand acres; yet even these, on account of the scarcity of water, and the infertility of the soil, are often insufficient for maintaining so large a number of cattle, and the farmer is therefore constrained either to have more than one, or to

* Kriaal signifies in the first place a glass or coral bead, in the second place a necklace, in the third place the circle in which the Hottentots formerly constructed their assemblage of huts, so that their cattle were enclosed in the centre, and protected from the wild beasts, and in the fourth place any fold for sheep or cattle.
drive his cattle into the common fields near his estate; and since all the neighbours consider themselves as having an equal right to do this, thence arise the frequent quarrels among themselves as to their respective boundaries.

These disputes are no where more frequent than among the inhabitants of the Roggeveld. There are few of the colonists here who have not had a law-suit with their next neighbours; and this country being at so great a distance from the Cape Town, where only all law business can be decided, the difficulty of coming at the grounds of dispute, and of having the proper data on which to make a decision, occasion them often to be of very long duration. Thence comes it that the field-cornets, who give the decision in the first instance, are held in very little respect; they have no means of enforcing their authority, and their competence is often denied by both parties: they are accused, perhaps not always unjustly, of partiality, since they are themselves settled in the district, and are most likely either related to, or at variance with, most of those over whom their jurisdiction extends. The government have therefore had an idea of establishing a commission from the College of Justice at the Cape Town, which shall make an annual progress through some of the distant parts of the colony to hear and decide these disputes upon the spot. This seems a very desirable regulation, as they will then be able to enquire more circumstantially into the subject of disagreement, and having no connections themselves in the country, their decisions will not be liable to the imputation of partiality, while at the same time they may enforce submission to the inferior jurisdictions.

At the place where we now were we found numbers of these kind of dissen-
tions, the parties concerned in which were very eager to lay their grievances before the Commissary-general. Notwithstanding that he wanted rest very much, he heard them all with the utmost mildness, patience, and attention, and took infinite pains to reconcile their differences. With many he succeeded, but others were deaf to his truly kind and paternal advice and exhortations, and were only to be subdued by his juridical decisions. Yet here we had occasion to observe, not without some degree of astonishment, that among so many rough unpolished men the outward forms of decency were never violated. Even in their utmost warmth not one unbecoming word escaped them, not one injurious expression: to such things these people seem
wholly strangers: they are things which never meet their ears. It is indeed sometimes amusing to hear the manner in which they express themselves towards each other: how, even when they mean to make use of reproaches, they employ terms which in the ears of an European would have the most inoffensive meaning. Such is the poverty of their language, and so imperfect are their ideas with regard to those defamatory terms which generally characterise the lower classes of the people in civilised countries.

As the wives of the colonists in general interest strangers very much, both from something agreeable in their persons, and from the gentleness and kindness of their manners, with which, however, is often united an evident firmness and resolution, to be ascribed perhaps to the solitary pastoral kind of life they lead, and to the necessity of watchfully maintaining their authority over such a number of servants and dependants;—much as we had often been interested by the happy union of these qualities, never did we meet with a woman by whom this kind of interest was more warmly excited than by our present hostess. She was now about forty years of age, and though the mother of fifteen children, still in the bloom of health, and with evident remains of former beauty. She had lost three of her children, and the youngest was now at the breast. When I visited her a year and a half after in my third journey, I found that she had made another addition to her family.

Among the colonists assembled here were both the field-cornets of the district, as well as the field-commandant,* by name Krüger:—these, with several others, accompanied us part of our this day's journey. Our way lay oncemore by the valley of the little Fish-river, and we had again to complain of the same dull uniformity which had so often annoyed us. If there be no river in the neighbourhood where there is water, at least in winter, a person may travel for weeks together without seeing any thing but miserable low bushes. Wherever a tall bush or a tree is to be discerned, there he may be sure of finding the bed of a river; yet, unless in the cool season between May and August, he must not, therefore, flatter himself that he is sure of finding

---

* In every district there is a field-commandant, who has the supreme command of the parties which are occasionally sent out against the Bosjesmans, or against plundering-parties of fugitive slaves and Hottentots. He is generally chosen from among the field-cornets, but has no higher judicial authority than his colleagues.
water. More than three-fourths of the rivers in Southern Africa are in summer entirely dry.

The uniformity of our route was, however, agreeably interrupted by several flocks of ostriches which appeared on both sides of us, and which we came tolerably near before they perceived us. They then fled in haste, crowding close together, and running against the wind: an eye unaccustomed to such a sight might easily mistake them at a little distance for a squadron of horsemen. To the right we remarked some single ones which had strayed too far from the main body, and were now easily cut off from joining them by our horsemen. As we had no fire-arms with us, and as it was about their breeding time, when the feathers being good for nothing, the Africans do not think of shooting them, so that it would have availed us little if we had had our guns, we resolved on taking another method of getting as near a sight as possible of one of these cavalier-like figures, and encircled him with our horses, drawing so close to him on all sides, that no way remained for him to escape, but by running directly through the midst of us. Two of our dragoons endeavoured to stop his way, presenting themselves directly before him, and even ventured to strike at him with their drawn sabres. By this manoeuvre we got a complete sight of his gigantic figure, for raising his head as high as he could stretch it above the rider, he pushed forward, and evading the stroke of the sabre, ran away. This rashness was much condemned by the Africans, as they assured us, that if the bird in its flight had given them a flap with its powerful wing, and this might easily have happened, an arm or thigh would probably have been broken. The number of ostriches we saw in this place could scarcely be less than three hundred. I never on any other occasion saw so many together.

On the highest point of this wide-spread desolate mountain-plain, whence every now and then a prospect into the Karroo below opened upon us, we found under the shelter of a sort of broken ruinated natural wall of rock a small hut, the herdsman's abode while tending his master's cattle at the dry season of the year, when they are sent into these cooler regions. It was open and standing empty, yet offered a welcome shelter from the wind that blew over the mountains, and from the rays of the sun. The door, which was made of reeds bound together, was soon taken off, and by the assistance of four fragments of rock converted into a table: this was immediately set
out with cold provisions, wine, and bread: blocks of stone served us as seats, and good humour united with hunger to give a high relish to our simple meal. Throughout the whole journey similar resting places presented to the party, who could not be expected in so long a course always to have an equal flow of conversation, an opportunity of joking and amusing themselves exceedingly with the contrivances to which it was necessary to have recourse in making out the apparatus for our meal; and I really think they were, even from the very inconveniences we had to combat, some of the most mirthful and enjoyable moments we passed.

This spot was not only the highest of the surrounding country, but was, according to Colonel Gordon’s calculation, the highest we visited in the course of our journey. He considered it as two thousand feet higher than the summit of the Table-mountain, consequently it must be five thousand three hundred feet above the level of the sea. The air was indeed so dry and thin, and we found ourselves so singularly heated and irritated by it, that our lips and skin broke out in blisters. In the night, which we passed at the habitation of a certain Mr. Olivier, we felt the cold very severely, and the tents in which we slept were by the morning quite frozen. This place had the singular name of Tondeldoosfontein (the tinder-box fountain), a striking proof again how much the first inhabitants of the colony must have been at a loss for names to give the places.

The road we took from hence was to descend at last to the Karroo, which we must cross to arrive, as according to our plan we intended to do, at the Cold Bokkeveld. This might have been performed by a shorter way, if we had descended immediately from the Roggeveld when we quitted the little Fish-river. We should then, however, have had five days journey through the uninhabited Karroo, whereas having taken the road of the Little Roggeveld, though the journey would upon the whole be longer, we should have only three nights to spend encamped in this dreary waste.

The hill we were now to descend is called the Komberg; it takes this name from the valley below, which is called the Kom-valley (the Tsub-valley), as being enclosed with hills, so that it has the appearance of a vast tub. It is impossible to give an idea by any description of the prospect which at this spot opened upon us. It is one of the most extensive that I saw in all my travels over Southern Africa. Never having appeared during the last fort-
night to ascend very much, we were exceedingly astonished to find ourselves at such a height, to see at what a depth below was the country that lay spread before us. From this point the greatest part of the Karroo is seen, with the hills that bound it to the west and south. To the right and left the margin was formed by the gently inclining circuit of the Roggeveld mountains: deep chasms broke at intervals the continuity of this ridge, forming repeated steep and lengthened declivities, which were covered with loose fragments of stones, or slate of a whitish grey. Over these was thrown a thin light clothing of plants, which, mixing their verdure with the fallow ground, threw a hue of faint green over the whole face of the monstrous landscape. Far to the south the view was bounded by the lofty hills which inclose the Hex-river, in the vallies of which live the inhabitants of the Cold Bokkeveld. The space between is the great Karroo, as it is called, a parched and arid plain, stretching out to such an extent that the vast hills by which it is terminated are almost lost in the distance. The beds of numberless little rivers cross, like veins, in a thousand directions, this enormous space; the course of them might in some places be clearly distinguished by the dark green of the mimosas which spread along their banks. Excepting these, no where, as far as the eye could reach, was a tree to be seen, no nor even a shrub—no where any signs of life, not a point upon which the eye could dwell with pleasure. The compass of human sight is too small to take in the circumference of the whole—the soul must still rest upon the horrors of the wide spread desert.

We began to descend, leading our horses in our hands, slipping over the loose rolling stones which crossed our way at every step. The first quarter of the way is steep as a staircase; all the wheels of the waggons were locked, so that they slid down over the loose slates with which the whole way was strewed. The road then begins to take a different direction, and after many turnings and windings, comes to the front of the declivity, when, looking down, a house is seen so directly below that we seem almost upon it, yet there is a full hour still to wind and turn before it can be reached. The African hills have this resemblance to Mount Sinai that they are much less difficult to ascend than to descend.

We now found ourselves in the Kom-valley. A thousand greetings of welcome resounded on all sides of us from the farm, and at the door of a
house, not wind and water tight, we were received by two hosts, who lived here with their families in a joint *domicile*. We were conducted into the grand apartments, where the perforations in the thatch were covered over with mats as well as they could be managed to keep out the weather. A large chest served as a table, and some smaller ones as seats: our dinner was a good soup made of mutton, and a wild goat roasted; while, for a great treat, by way of dessert, our hosts set before us some white bread and milk, which had been just sent as a present to them: we found here, besides, some fresh butter, the first we had seen, which also was a present from a neighbour;—and yet amid all this manifest poverty, every thing was perfectly clean. The women took upon themselves to do the honours of the house, and were exceedingly active in their posts: they had cheerful contented countenances, and the house swarmed with children, some of whom were even handsome. The number there seemed to be, occasioned us to count them, when we found that five couple, inhabitants of the last three houses we had visited, had fifty-one living children: four out of the five mothers had each a child at the breast, and a wager might very well be laid that none of these would be the last. It is moderate in this country to reckon upon ten children to each family, allowing for what may have been carried off by death, as it is scarcely ever to be supposed that the whole number of children born will be reared. In these five families, we were informed, that if all had lived there would have been sixty-two. From this example, as well of the number born, as of the mortality among them, a general estimate of the population may be made, which will agree pretty well with what I found afterwards upon a more accurate enquiry to be the fact.

We were shewn here as a curiosity, a youth of the nation of the Briquas, who both from his slender form, and more noble physiognomy, was strikingly different from the rest of the Hottentots. The extraordinary accounts here given me of this nation was in part the occasion of the resolution which I made, and executed a year and a half after, to visit the Briquas myself. I defer what I have to say with regard to them to the time when I shall give an account of this journey.

We proceeded onwards, still descending, till we came to a very remarkable hill, which brought us in the evening to a place called the Hoop (the *Hope*), inhabited by the brother of the same Vischer who has been already mentioned. We were now at the centre point of the Little Roggeveld.
The district which goes under this name is directly at the foot of the great Roggeveld mountains, and forms a sort of terrace directly above the Karroo. It differs from other parts of the Roggeveld, since, notwithstanding that it is rather high land, there is a constant supply of water from the springs the whole year through, so that it is always habitable. The breeding of cattle is therefore a principal branch of industry here, and the soil is, besides, very good for the cultivation of fruit-trees. Corn is sown every year, but it does not yield abundantly. In some cases, however, if any quantity of rain falls at the time of the corn coming into ear, which indeed does not often happen, the harvest is very plentiful. Six years before such an instance occurred, and Vischer told me that in that year he gathered a hundred and forty bushels of wheat from only two bushels of seed. Yet since the feed of sheep and horses is but indifferent, the inhabitants, on the whole, are poorer than in the higher parts of the Roggeveld; and this district contains only fourteen families of colonists.

Our waggons did not arrive till late at night, and had suffered so much from the bad roads, that they came in at last with broken shafts and axle-trees, so that they were with difficulty got on at all. Some of the neighbouring colonists, who were good workmen in this way, were called in to assist in repairing them, and in conjunction with our smith the work was completed the next day. The object in which their lading consisted had not suffered less: the furniture of our table was almost all broken to pieces, as were many of the bottles of wine and oil; and we considered ourselves as very fortunate that we were now approaching a more inhabited country, where we could repair our misfortunes, and make some fresh provision for our future travels. The difference of the climate was here strikingly evinced by the change in the thermometer: in the higher parts of the Roggeveld it had been at 64°, according to Fahrenheit, in the middle of the day; it was now at 86°.

As we were sitting at our dinner this day, we were surprised by the entrance of two Boshjesmans. They belonged to the troop with whom some years before the colonists had made the sort of treaty mentioned above, by which they engaged themselves to abstain from their usual maraudings, on condition of a certain tribute of cattle being paid them yearly. They had heard of one of the principal magistrates of the colony being in the neighbourhood, and were come in hopes of receiving some presents. They approached the company assembled at table not without manifest symptoms of apprehension and embar-
rassment, but a glass of wine, which was presented to them, and the looks of kindness with which they were received, soon inspired them with confidence. One of them produced a paper wrapped up in a piece of cloth: it was a sort of passport given by the Field-commandant, as a sanction to the troop for begging, from time to time, of the inhabitants of the district a few sheep, or other things of which they might stand very much in need: in return for which, they had promised, on their part, to remain quiet, and not murder or steal. Four years before, a collection had been made among the inhabitants of the northern districts of sixteen hundred sheep and thirty head of cattle, as a present to them for beginning a regular establishment, that they might be enabled to breed their own flocks and herds, and live a quiet and orderly life. The experiment did not, however, succeed. As they had no government, no secure dwelling-place, no social compact, nay, were even without individual property, the people from the remote parts had come down upon them, and spunging on their little stock, it was soon completely annihilated. Since that time the neighbourhood had been compelled to give them, from time to time, sheep, tobacco, brandy, beads, buttons, and other trifles, happy if by this means they could so far purchase their good-will as that they would abstain from stealing their cattle, and murdering the Hottentots who were guarding them.

But since the number of the whole nation is little known, and while people are at peace with one horde, another may suddenly come down upon and plunder them, a peace of this kind can avail but little. Indeed, these friends themselves are very burthensome, since they will come, by twenty or thirty in a body, to visit the estate of a colonist; that is to say, they will remain there days, and even weeks, expecting to be fed and attended upon; nor will go away at last without handsome presents of cattle. Nay, it has sometimes happened that the guests, in return for having been thus entertained, since opportunities had been afforded them of knowing thoroughly the state of things in and about the house, have, after departing in the morning as friends, returned by night as enemies, and breaking in among the herds, carried off numbers of the cattle, with which they have escaped to the neighbouring mountains, trusting to their poisoned arrows as a security against their being reclaimed by their owners. Should it, however, happen, that a sufficient number of the inhabitants could be collected together to venture upon pursuing them, and they are obliged to fly, they do not quit their plunder till all the
cattle are killed, or hamstrung, so as to render it impossible for them to be carried away alive. It cannot, therefore, be matter of surprise if the antipathy of the colonists to like plunderers is carried pretty far, and that it is scarcely considered as a crime if in the pursuit of these flying hordes some of them are, from time to time, killed. That regular parties, however, are made by the colonists to hunt them down, as some late writers have asserted, I must say is untrue.

Equally untrue is the assertion that the nation of the Bosjesmans is composed of fugitive slaves and Hottentots. They are, and ever have been, a distinct people, having their own peculiar language, and their own peculiar customs, if the terms language and customs can be applied to people upon the very lowest step in the order of civilization, as the Bosjesmans may certainly be esteemed: one might almost call this extraordinary race without customs and without language. No Hottentot understands a word of the Bosjesman language; and the nation was hated by all others on account of its habits of plunder, and disregard of the rights of property, long before the Europeans settled in Southern Africa. The Bosjesmans always lived in enmity with their nearest neighbours, over whom they had this advantage, that they had themselves nothing but their lives to lose in the strife, whereas they could gain from the Caffres and Koranas their herds and their flocks. At this moment the enmity between the Bosjesmans and the Caffres is greater than between the former and the colonists; nay, they are even more gratified by depriving a Hottentot of life than a white man. This is not, however, the place to discuss the subject more fully; these sketches are sufficient to shew how erroneous have been the descriptions hitherto given of this extraordinary race, and how little the truth with regard to them is really known.

The hordes who now live upon the borders of the colony, or within its boundaries, are become more peaceable than their distant brethren: those, in particular from whom the present embassy was sent, have, for several years together, abstained from plunder. But since the Bosjesmans have no national interest, and any compact made with them, even if it were ever so well observed, could have merely a partial effect, binding individuals only, not the whole nation, it is easy to comprehend how little such agreements can afford security to the colony at large. The experience of the following years only shewed, alas! the inefficiency of the compact made with them at this time.
More distant hordes came down, and not only made terrible devastations upon the property of the colonists, but vented their rage equally upon their own peaceable countrymen, when they found that the latter would not make a common cause with them: but more of this hereafter. The colonists ought not, therefore, to be arraigned very severely if, finding the compact burthen-some, they were unwilling to continue paying tribute to an enemy too weak to have the power of enforcing the agreement it had made. There seems, however, nothing better to be done at present, if the utter extirpation of the whole race is not desired (an idea which must be deprecated by every person of common humanity), than to endeavour, by conciliatory measures, to purchase the good-will of the numberless scattered hordes, though this may not be a thing very easy to accomplish.

I shall not enter further in this place into the modes of life of these untamed people, since at a proper place the subject will be amply treated, but shall return now to the two individuals whose arrival among us gave occasion to the present digression. They were scarcely four feet high: the colour of their skin was only discernible in particular places: a thick coat of grease and dirt covered their faces and meagre limbs like a rind. Under the eyes, where the smoke of the fires by which they delight to sit, had somewhat melted the grease, was a little spot quite clean, by which the proper yellow hue of the skin could be seen. A wild, shy, suspicious eye, and crafty expression of countenance, forms, above all things, a striking contrast in the Bosjesman with the frank, open physiognomy of the Hottentot. The universally distinguishing features of the Hottentot, the broad, flat nose, and the large, prominent cheek-bones, are, from the leanness of the Bosjesman, doubly remarkable. Their figure, though small, is not ill-proportioned, and they would not be ugly if they had more flesh; but the withered thigh, the large knee-bone, and thin leg, are very far from handsome. Yet the men may be called handsome in comparison with the women. The loose, long hanging breasts, and the disproportionate thickness of the hinder parts, where, as in the tails of the African sheep, the whole fat of the body seems collected, united with the ugliness of their features, makes a Bosjesman woman in the eyes of an European a real object of horror. The Hottentot women, though they in some respect resemble those of the Bosjesman race, yet from their greater height, and more justly proportioned limbs, may in comparison with them be called handsome.
The cloathing of our visitors consisted only of a sheep-skin worn over their shoulders as a sort of mantle, with the woolly side inwards, and tied round the neck with a leather thong. On their heads they had greasy leather caps, ornamented with glass beads of a great variety of colours: they had strings of the same beads round their necks, and round their wrists were broad bracelets of iron and copper. The middle part of their bodies were covered with the skin of a jackall, fastened round them with a thong of leather, and they had sandals of ox-leather bound round their feet. They had each a small leather bag hanging on their arms, in which they carried their provisions, with some tobacco, and a reed which served as a pipe. Such, with very little variation, was the costume which I found worn by these people when I visited them in their own wild state. They were then sometimes without their beads and bracelets, and wore the skin of an antelope instead of a sheep. Their woolly hair smeared over with grease and dust, and tied in a number of knots, hung down below their leather caps.

We found it at first very difficult to enter into conversation with our guests, since they could not make themselves understood either by the colonists who were present, or by our Hottentots, and their fright made them unable to express their wishes by signs. Some little presents, however, and the wine, at length encouraged one of them so far as that he began to be talkative. He spoke with much animation, and in a chattering, clacking kind of tone, by which he seemed to express his thanks and respect, mixing now and then with his own language some words of Dutch which he had occasionally collected, and which assisted exceedingly in explaining his meaning: in particular, he often introduced the words *Groot Baas*, (Great Master), by which he meant to signify our chief. The Hottentots commonly call the masters they serve *Baas*, and the governor of the colony had ever since its establishment been always called both by them and their wild fellow-countrymen *Groot Baas*. At every object which excited their astonishment or

* Many mistakes have been made, I know not by what means, respecting the situation of the Hottentots in the service of the colonists. They have been supposed their property, and that they take them in their early youth to make slaves of them. This is not the case: the Hottentot is a hired servant, and there is this great distinction between them and the slaves, that the former only address their master by the title of *Baas* (Master), while the slaves address him as *Sieur* (Lord), pronounced here *Szohr*. A Hottentot in consequence takes it extremely amiss
gave them pleasure, they exclaimed *mooi! mooi!* (fine! fine!) which words were pronounced with a slow and lengthened tone that was not unpleasing. As they were by degrees inspired with more confidence, their still increasing curiosity and astonishment was expressed by gestures; if the admiration was moderate, they made a sort of whistling noise, clapping their fore-finger hastily upon their lips; but if they wanted to express it in a high degree, they threw their right arm over their head, throwing the head back so that the hand touched the neck. The objects which more particularly pleased and astonished them were the presents we made them, of tobacco, and tobacco-pipes, of looking-glasses, beads, buttons, &c. &c.—a watch which we shewed them—-the white skins and long hair of our women—-the whiskers of our dragoons—-the sound of the bugle-horn and violin—-and our tents with their furniture.

The Commissary-general carried them into his tent, offering them a seat, which they rejected, and sat down immediately upon the ground. He then wrote a sort of passport, which he gave them, requesting the good-will of the Dutch christians towards the Bosjemens; and signified that as long as they should keep that paper, and abstain from robbery and plunder, there would be peace and friendship between them and the Dutch. As a confirmation of the treaty, a present was made them of twenty sheep, which they were to carry away, and eat with their companions.

Before they quitted us, two others of their party came, one of whom was presented by the colonists as the chief of the horde, though there was nothing by which he seemed to be distinguished as such. He could, however, speak a sort of broken Dutch, and was therefore the speaker when the peace was finally concluded. As an emblem of his dignity, and as a memorial of the compact, he hung round his neck a piece of brass, which seemed to have been formerly the lid of a tobacco-box, upon which was inscribed on one side the word *Friede*, and on the other, *Jas*; it had been given him by one of the colonists. It is a remarkable instance of the total absence of civilization among these people that they have no names, and seem not to feel the want of such a means of distinguishing one individual from another.

if he is addressed by the words *Pay* or *Jonge*, as the slaves are; he expects to be called by his name if addressed by any one who knows it; and by those to whom it is not known he expects to be called Hottenlot (which he pronounces *Hotnot*) or boy.
The Great Karroo.—Description of it.—The Cold Bokkeveld.—Its Fertility.—Remarkable form of the Schurbideberg.—Rocks near the House of the Cyclops-like Overseer.—Fine Prospect from the Summit of the Witsenberg.—Arduous descent of this Mountain.—Arrival in Roodezand.

On the fifteenth of November we again set forwards towards the Karroo, and at noon reached the last place on the terrace of the Little Roggeveld, called Standvastigheid, the house of Mr. Abraham Botman. An incredible number of flies* made the short rest that we proposed to take here extremely disagreeable, and we found ourselves in danger, every morsel we put into our mouths, of eating some of these insects. They have an odd contrivance here for destroying them. A large wisps of straw is dipped in milk, and hung by a string to the beams of the roof, and when this is covered with flies, they come with a large bag slowly under the straw, and getting it in to a certain depth, shake it well, so that the flies are shaken to the bottom of the bag; in this way they assured us that they had sometimes taken as many as a bushel of flies in a day. In the Tulbagh the colonists employ the slaves, whose office it is to go out for wood, to bring home with them bundles of the sticky bush, *Roridula dentata*, which they lay about the room, and it is incredible how soon they are covered with flies, provided the precaution has been taken not to leave the window or door open.

As we proceeded onwards, we met a family of colonists with their waggons and herds of cattle, who had been for some time in the Karroo, but were now driven back to their own habitation in the Roggeveld, from the springs below being entirely dried up. In the evening we reached an uninhabited place in the Karroo, called the Brand-valley, where we already found our oxen unyoked from the wagons, and our people busily employed in pitching the tents. The remains of buildings which were here conspicuous on the naked

---

* Our common chamber flies; the *Musca domestica*, and *Stomoxys irritans*.
sand, proved that formerly, at certain times of the year at least, this place was inhabited. For some generations the spring has constantly grown worse and worse, and the spot is not now even fit for an Ausspannplatz. In the middle of summer it is entirely dry, and at this moment there was nothing but a little puddle of muddy brackish water.

This was the first night that we passed entirely in our camp far from any human habitation. It happened to be the birth-day of one of our young ladies, so we celebrated the double solemnity with assembling the whole party in the evening in the large tent, where we had a cheering bowl of punch, the enjoyment of which was not a little heightened by the contrast it presented to the cold south-west wind that blew over the desert, and to the wretchedness of the water afforded by the place.

It had been determined that we should remain here the following day, and wait for the cool of the evening to proceed on our journey, as we might travel with the utmost safety by night over the smooth and level roads of the Karroo. As, however, contrary to our expectations, the weather had turned very cool, and as our cattle did not find here either food or water that was very relishable, the resolution of the former day was by unanimous consent rescinded, and we agreed to proceed onwards as soon as every thing could be made ready. We had now an admirable proof of the readiness our people had acquired, by five weeks practice, in striking and repacking the tents and their furniture, for the whole business was accomplished in so short a time that it was scarcely half an hour after the resolution was passed before we were ready to march.

One of our horses had slipped his halter in the night and run away. A Hottentot who was sent after him, traced him so well, that in the course of the day he caught him again and rejoined us: this readiness of the Hottentots in tracing animals is really wonderful. Let the ground be ever so hard, so that scarcely any impression of the hoof or foot remains, still their pursuit is never made in vain. A stone fresh rolled, a fresh broken or bent bush or blade of grass, is sometimes the only mark left of any thing having been there, yet it seldom happens that by pursuing these imperfect impressions a little while, they cannot tell by what animal they have been made.

We proceeded now farther and farther into the Karroo, and could not help, at every step, expressing our astonishment to each other, at finding it so very
different from the idea we had formed of it. Indeed, the descriptions hitherto given of this tract appear to me so little correct, and so imperfect, that it cannot be superfluous to describe it somewhat more amply. Under this name is comprehended a large extent of uninhabited country, towards which nature seems to have acted like a step-mother, lying between the two first great chains of mountains which stretch across the African continent from east to west, parallel to each other, and parallel to the southern coast. The length of this waste, according to the general computation, is sixty geographical miles, its breadth from fifteen to twenty; its surface is computed at one thousand square miles. It is bounded to the east by the Schneeberge (Snow-mountains), Koub and Kamdeboo; to the west by the Cederberge (Cedar mountains), and a part of the mountains of the Bokkeveld: it declines from the northern chain of mountains, and from the Nieuweveld towards the south; its medium height above the level of the sea being estimated at three thousand feet. Almost all the rivers that flow from the northern chain of mountains take the same direction, and at many points break through the southern chain, which separates the Karroo from the fertile lands on the coast; only in the western part of this tract, where a considerable passage is opened between the Cedar mountains and the mountains of the Roggeveld, some streams bend their course to the northward.

From what has been said of the Karroo by the writers who have hitherto described it, the readers have been led to expect an immense level plain like the deserts of Asia or of South America; but this is not the case. In the midst of this waste rise some pretty lofty slate hills, which are only considered as eminences scarcely worthy of remark, because they come into comparison with the lofty mountains by which it is surrounded; and for this reason alone have never been thought worthy of being noticed in maps. There are large spaces which are perfect plains, particularly towards the west, and at the very eastern extremity of the Karroo, some of which comprise from thirty to forty square miles of entirely level surface, but these are intermixed with eminences which in other parts would appear not inconconsiderable. The soil throughout is a sand mixed with clay or argilaceous earth, and contains every where more or less of particles of iron, from which all yellow tinted soil throughout the colony has obtained the name of Karroo ground.
Such a kind of soil is the product only of the ruins of nature, if I may be allowed the expression, so that there is no where any thick coat of it: in digging to a foot below the surface, we come to a hard and impenetrable stone. From these and other concomitant causes, the vegetation must, of necessity, at all times be extremely poor, and in summer, when the sun has dried the soil to the hardness of brick, it ceases almost entirely. The *mesembryanthemum* and some other succulent plants: some sorts of *gorteria*, of *bergia*, and of *asters*, whose roots, like the bulbs of liliaceous plants, nature has fortified with a ten-fold net of fibres under the upper rind to protect them against the hardened clay:—such plants alone resist the destructive nature of this inhospitable soil.

As soon as in the cooler season the rains begin to fall and penetrate the hard coat of earth, these fibres imbibe the moisture, and pushing aside the clay, the germ of the plant, under their protection, begins to shoot. As by successive rains the soil gets more and more loosened, the plants at length appear above it, and in a few days the arid waste is covered with a delicate green clothing. Not long after, thousands and thousands of flowers enamel the whole surface: the mild mid-day sun expands the radiated crowns of the *mesembryanthemums* and *gorteria*, and the young green of the plants is almost hidden by the glowing colours of their full-blown flowers, while the whole air is filled with the most fragrant odour. This odour is more particularly delightful, when after a calm day the sun declines, and the warm breath of the flowers rests quietly on the plain.

At this time the whole dreary desert is transformed into one continued garden of flowers; the colonist with his herds and his flocks leaves the snowy mountains, and descending into the plain, there finds a plentiful and wholesome supply of food for the animals, while troops of the tall ostrich and the wandering antelope, driven also from the heights, share the repast, and enliven the scene. On the western side of the Karroo stand the winter habitations of the Bokkeveld colonists who come from the south, near those of the inhabitants of the Roggeveld. Long separated friends and relations see each other again, are neighbours for a time, and enjoy in each others’ society a life of quiet and content. The attendance upon the flocks and herds is here light and easy: for in this plain, though the sheep may sometimes stray, they are never finally lost: no ox or cow falls down the precipice and is seen no
more; the cattle feed secure from the lion, the tyger, or the hyæna, since there is no hole or cave where these plunderers can conceal themselves: the murrain is unknown among them, and the plants upon which they feed are a remedy, if they are diseased, which speedily restores them to health. All occasions of strife between the different inhabitants are averted by the lands being common property, and spreading out to such an extent, that there is feed in plenty for the cattle of every one.

Before the inhabitants of the mountains descend into the Karroo their fields and gardens are put into winter order, but while the field-work ceases, and the seed above rests quietly under the moist covering of snow, another kind of work commences. The children and slaves are sent to collect the young shoots of the Channa bushes.* The ashes of these saline plants produce a strong ley, and of this, mixed with the fat of the sheep, collected during the year, the women make an excellent soap, from the sale of which a considerable profit is derived: large quantities are sent to the Cape Town, where it is sold at a high price. In the mean time, the men prepare, from several kinds of plants, and the bark of certain trees, a sort of tan for curing the skins of the wild animals taken at their hunting parties in the summer. The quantity of leather thus prepared is more than sufficient for clothing their children and slaves, and much of it is also sent to the Cape Town, or sold to the colonists who live in the parts principally devoted to agriculture. Thus the trouble and inconvenience occasioned by these two-fold removals in the course of the year is amply repaid, and the people by whom they are performed talk with a delight, which seems extraordinary to the more indolent part of their colonist brethren, of the time spent in the Karroo.

But how soon is the country again deprived of all its glory: it scarcely continues more than a month, unless late rains, which must not often be expected, call forth the plants again into new life. As the days begin to lengthen, the revived power of the mid-day sun checks once more the lately-awakened powers of vegetation. The flowers soon fade and fall, the stems and leaves dry away, and the hard coat of earth locks up the germs till the time arrives for the return of the rains: the succulent plants alone still

* Salœla aphylla, and Salicornia fruticosa.
furnish food for the herds and flocks. Soon the streams begin to dry, the springs scarcely flow, till at length the complete drought compels the colonists to seek again their more elevated homes; yet even then, they quit the plain with reluctance, and the flocks, accustomed to endure thirst, still linger behind, feeding on the succulent plants which afford at once food and drink, and are particularly salutary to those that bear the wool. Every day, however, the Karroo grows more and more solitary, and by the end of September it is wholly deserted. The hardened clay bursts into a thousand cracks, which evince to the traveller the vast power of the African sun. Every trace of verdure is vanished, and the hard red soil is covered over with a brown dust, formed from the ashes of the dried and withered plants. Yet amongst these ashes is the seed nourished that is to produce future generations, and the relics of one year's vegetation furnishes the manure that is to cherish the germs till the next year's rain again brings them forth.

In some places, particularly in the beds of the rivers, water remains a longer time by the supplies afforded from concealed reservoirs, but the power of the sun soon corrupts these standing pools, so that they are wholly unavailing to the traveller. It is better for him when the bed is quitedry, since then by digging he can sometimes find good water, deep below the surface, beyond the influence of those parching rays by which that above has been rendered useless.

It was in this desolate state that we found the Karroo, when we travelled through it. The road was level and easy, even over the heights that we had sometimes to ascend. The beds of the rivers, a considerable number of which we crossed, were all entirely dry: we saw not a footprint of either man or animal; the shrubs were withered and dried: scarcely did we find even a solitary beetle flitting like a shadow among the thinly scattered remnants of the shrubs: nothing could be more ennuyant than travelling over such a country. Towards evening we came to a rock where was a spring, and before it a rough bason formed in the stone, containing still two or three pails full of stagnant brackish water: here we resolved to pass the night. This place is called Smitswinkel. A few miserable clay huts pointed it out as the winter habitation of some family of colonists. The ground was so hard that we were obliged to peck holes in it with our iron tools, to drive in the poles which were to support our tents, and even then they had such indif-
ferent hold, that if a brisk wind had sprung up in the night, our houses would probably have fallen over our heads.

At noon on the following day, the sun being particularly hot, we stopped by the side of the Great-river. From the name, something distinguished might be expected, but this stream is only great in comparison with the other rivers of the Karroo, which are scarcely more than gutters: in itself it is small, and miserably destitute of water. A few places only afforded a little standing in holes in the rocky bed; and though it was cool and looked clear, it was so ill-flavoured and brackish, that our cattle, notwithstanding their thirst, could not drink it. Probably it came from some springs deep in the ground, and not discoverable, for there were mimosas growing about of a tolerable size, and beginning already to be in bloom, while in other places that we had seen them, both before and after, they were still very backward. A number of beautiful insects, especially of the mylabris and buprestis, were hovering about these trees, and I caught several sorts which I never saw either before or after. The smell of the mimosa flower is particularly agreeable: the bees are exceedingly fond of these flowers, and the flavour of them may be distinguished in the wild honey collected near them. Their foliage is always the finest at the time when they begin to blow; they then even afford a tolerable shelter from the sun. Under their shade, and by the side of the river, we found a little grass, which afforded no small delight to our horses and oxen. The Great-river divides the Karroo of the Roggeveld from that of the Bokkeveld.

Through the same level, but dully uniform road, we arrived about sun-set at the place where we intended to rest for the night; it was called the Plat-fontein, from a little spring of very bad water. We found here, in consequence of having sent a courier forwards, relays of oxen from the cold Bokkeveld, with the Field-cornet and some inhabitants of the district. They proposed to us to continue our journey through the night, since there was here neither grass for our cattle, nor water enough for them to drink; the horses they said would besides be less tired with going on now in the cool of the night than if they were to wait till morning, when they must travel in the heat and with empty stomachs. As we all thought there was much reason in what they urged, the proposal was assented to unanimously, so we took a little repast in haste, and then, under the guidance of some of the party,
proceeded on our way. The Field-cornet rode on before to prepare every thing at his house for our reception.

At break of day we came to a narrow pass, called the Bokkeveldspoort, at the first entrance of the mountains which separate the Karroo from the Bokkeveld. We arrived there just at the moment when the rising sun began to gild the lofty summits of the mountains, while the twilight was still glimmering in the depth of the ravine. The return of the morning light threw magic shadows upon the naked rugged rocks, and on the green bushes that bordered a deep torrent. Our minds were particularly attuned to feeling the whole effect of the scene: the night had been spent in watching and travelling over a dreary desert, and now, as if by enchantment, we found ourselves in the mild twilight of this contracted valley, the living vegetation of which formed so fine a contrast with the dry, barren, and almost, as it appeared, boundless plain which we had quitted; while the contrast was no less striking between the sharp points presented by the profiles of the mountains before us, and the curved heads of the slate hills, over which we had so recently passed.

Narrow as was the pass at its entrance, we soon found a wider valley spread out before us, from which the road gradually ascended. The ridges of lofty towering hills rose to the right and left, while looking upwards the eye was carried into dark and broken chasms. High above, enjoying the first warm rays of the morning sun, was a little red antelope feeding at the very edge of a prominent piece of rock, but frightened at the sound of the African whip, re-echoed from every part, it quickly fled into the valley on the other side.

We soon arrived at the Field-cornet's house.—He was of French descent, and his name properly Bruyere, though he was now called Martin Bruel. His farm was kept in excellent order, and was surrounded with very fine orchards and corn-fields: but what charmed us more than anything, unaccustomed as we had now been for some time to the sight of forest trees, was a little wood of old oaks and lofty poplars, near which ran a fine clear stream of excellent water: when to these things is added the situation of the house, between high and steep mountains, the reader will easily conceive how truly romantic must have been the scene. Not above a thousand paces from the house was another, belonging to a neighbour, resembling it in every respect,
both as to the natural charms by which it was more distantly surrounded, and in the cultivation that appeared in its immediate vicinity; but, sad to say, these neighbours had long been at enmity on the subject of feed for the cattle and the boundaries of their corn-fields. A father had some time since unadvisedly divided this fine inheritance between his two sons, when one selling his share of the property, estranged himself from the family, and thereby sowed the seeds of an irreconcilable enmity between his brother and the new neighbour whom he had given him. It is much to be lamented that the peace of this lovely little valley should be interrupted by strife and discord. I have seldom seen a spot more silent and sequestered, without being confined and gloomy—it was the very place of all others for one who was altogether weary of the world, and of living among mankind, to retire to. The soil is fruitful, and it is richly watered with plentiful springs, while it bears excellent corn and fruit of every sort, even some fruits that will not usually thrive in an African climate. Sheep, cattle, and horses, are abundantly supplied with wholesome food; and the murrain, so destructive in many parts, never has intruded itself into this delightful retreat.

As to this valley, so to the whole circuit to which it belongs, has nature been superlatively kind. Two and thirty estates are comprehended within it: the name of the Cold Bokkeveld has been given to it from its high mountainous situation, in opposition to the Warm Bokkeveld, which lies towards the south in a much lower plain. The northern part of the district is particularly cold, whence it has the name of Friesland. The snow sometimes lies there in winter ankle deep, which compels the inhabitants to descend into the Karroo. In the southern part, where the houses are in lower valleys, the flocks and herds only are sent into the Karroo, the families remain at their own houses.

Every one grows as much corn as will serve for his own consumption, where the springs are abundant, and will permit of channels to be made from them, so that the lands may be supplied with water all the year. Much more land might be cultivated if the transport were easier, and the mountains between the district and the Cape Town were not so steep and difficult of ascent. A little traffic in tobacco, wine, and brandy, is carried on between the Cold Bokkeveld, and some of the northern parts through which we had travelled; but the wine here is not very good. The fruits and pulse, con-
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

siderable quantities of which are sent to the Cape Town, are much more advantageous objects of trade. Yet here a great drawback is experienced, for the merchandize must all be carried over the mountains either by men or horses; the waggons can only pass empty. Oranges, lemons, peaches, apricots, figs, melons, and grapes, are the fruits principally cultivated, and they are finer flavoured here than in any part of the colony: both fresh and dried are sent to the Cape. Apples and pears, from the coolness of some parts of the district, are likewise to be had very good; and it is almost the only spot in the whole colony where cherries are produced; but as these cannot be transported in any considerable quantity, they are seldom sent to the town except as presents to some of the principal people. The greatest part of the pulse for ship stores is furnished by the Cold-Bokkeveld.

All sorts of European woods are here tougher and harder than in other parts, since they have more rest in winter, and do not come into leaf again so immediately. Whether any experiment has ever been made to plant limes and beeches, which have so often failed near the Cape Town, I do not know; but they are as little to be found here as in other parts of the colony. Poplars grow particularly well, and are planted generally in preference to oaks, because the wood is more useful for many little purposes, and wood for building is not so much wanted. Firs are not planted at all.

Another proof of the great advantage derived from the coolness of this climate is the superiority of the poultry bred here, both as to the numbers and quality. This forms a principal object of food to the colonists of the Cold-Bokkeveld. In most parts of the colony it is extremely difficult to rear turkeys, but here they are reared without any trouble, and without any particular attention being paid to the chicks.

The district has generally been considered as very much resembling that of the Roggeveld, both as to the coolness of the climate, its high situation, and as to the time requisite in each for fattening the different sorts of cattle: but on a nearer examination, many striking differences may be observed. The Roggeveld is a flat hill, or it might with greater propriety be called a very elevated plain, consisting almost entirely of masses of slate; whereas the Cold Bokkeveld is composed of granite-hills, mixed with layers of sand-stone, intersected by deep vallyes; some amply furnished with springs; some very deficient in water. The soil of the latter is found extremely favourable for the cultivation
of fat grass and fruit-trees, neither of which grow well in the Roggeveld; while this latter district abounds with the aromatic herbs, so excellent for feeding sheep, in which the Bokkeveld fails entirely.

In our day's journey yesterday over the Karroo we had seen the melancholy sight of more than seventy sheep lying dead in the road. They belonged to a drove which was going to a butcher at the Cape Town, and probably had been permitted, inadvertently, while they were heated with travelling, to drink of the bad water in the Great-river. On our mentioning this, the people of the neighbourhood immediately dispatched some waggons to collect the skins and tails, the fat of the tails being extremely useful both for making soap and candles, and for waggon-grease. They employed the utmost dispatch in doing this, and not without reason, since the large vultures, who assemble very soon about carrion, had they been some hours later, would probably have left them nothing but bones. These birds followed us through our whole journey, particularly in uninhabited places; and scarcely had we quitted a spot where we had made a meal or encamped for the night, before they were upon it to gather up whatever we had left. It is owing to them, and to the number of carnivorous quadrupeds haunting these regions, that even in the wildest parts we never met with a dead animal, nor even a complete skeleton of one.

The place where we now were is called de Uitkomst, as being the entrance to, or rather exit from the Karroo. The day which we rested here was passed in business of various sorts, and in receiving visits from many of the neighbours. We found in them a higher degree of polish than in the inhabitants of the Roggeveld, accompanied with a great deal of kindness and frankness of manner. I must here be permitted to mention more particularly the Field-cornet, Pienaar, as one of the most worthy, honest, active men in the whole colony.

Lieutenant Gilmer set off immediately from hence for Roodezand, that he might attend himself to all the requisite preparations for our reception being duly made. We followed him the next morning under the guidance of the Field-cornet, having sent our waggons forwards in the night. As the valley is enclosed on all sides with high hills, we commenced our journey by labouring up a very steep ascent, which obliged us to stop several times for our horses to take breath. When we had reached the top, we could not help pausing awhile to contemplate the delightful valley we had left behind us,
and to look over the wide spread plain of the Karroo, beyond the door of the Bokkeveld. In the sand-stone of which these mountains are composed, we found abundance of crystals of calcareous spar; a considerable space was covered with them, but they were very small.

The other side of the hill descended gradually to a long valley, in which we saw before us many farms at a moderate distance from each other. We made our way up to the nearest, where we found a man far advanced in years, by name Erasmus Rasmus, who, with his wife, not less aged than himself, lived here childless. We stopped for a few minutes, and were regaled in the true patriarchal style with new milk. We took our dinner about noon at the next farm, which belonged to a widow of the name of Janssens; and, according to our usual custom, stopped till the heat of the day was over. We had here the satisfaction of meeting Mr. Michgorius, the first clerk in the Commissary-general's office, who at our departure from the Cape Town had been detained by illness, but was now come to join the party. Our hostess had the misfortune to have a son and a daughter deaf and dumb, both near thirty years of age; the son was very active in husbandry, and the daughter equally so in every thing within the female department in the house: both were exceedingly ready in the use of signs, and by the assistance of them made themselves perfectly understood by their relations, and all who were accustomed to them.

The way out of the Long-valley was again over a considerable ascent; on the other side of it was a farm, at which the Commissary-general, true to his principle of shewing his good-will towards all the subjects of the States, stopped, intending to have a few minutes conversation with the owner. He was not at home, but one of his relations stepped forwards in his place, and gave us the first specimen we had found all over the colony of true boorish coarseness and roughness of manners:—he scolded the slaves who were to hold our horses, using the most gross and abusive language; at the same time as an intimation how little agreeable our visit was, he did not attempt to enter into conversation with us, or shew the smallest particle of that attention, which even a traveller of the lowest rank makes himself sure of recieving in this country, wherever he goes. He looked at the same time so exceedingly ill-humoured, that Pienaar jocosely observed, with the naïvité
common to an African colonist, that he made up such a face it was enough to frighten the flies from settling upon his nose.

Farther on, we came to a gentle declivity, over which were scattered great numbers of large rough blocks of sandstone, some as much as forty feet high, and which must have been of many hundred weight: they seemed to have rolled from the heights above, and in several instances held to the ground by a single point, threatening at every moment to fall and crush to atoms whatever might be near. Directly after followed a valley of a very different character. It was at the foot of the Schurfdeberge, one of the great chain of mountains which runs from the north parallel with the western coast, and which we had traversed in part in our way from the Pikenierskloof to the Elephants' river. This mountain has a very remarkable form; it presents the appearance of a high sunken overshelving wall, and continues to run thus, unbroken, from the north towards the south for three miles and a half, forming the western boundary of three districts, those of Friesland, and the warm and cold Bokkeveld. The inclination of this wall is every where the same, and may make an angle with the eastern horizon of a hundred and ten, or a hundred and twenty degrees. In figuring to the imagination an immense long table-mountain, which by some tremendous revolution has been overthrown, and its flat surface turned so as to be wedged into the earth, not perpendicularly, but inclining over, a tolerable idea will be formed of this enormous shelving wall. Over the whole length of its flat surface there is not the least appearance of vegetation: it looks like the roof of a house washed clean by the rain; it is equally broken every where, without any considerable rent, and is of a dismal dark grey hue. It is in no place perfectly flat, but has every where a kind of appearance as if full of blotches, though they are stronger and more abundant towards the top; and from these the name of Schurfdeberge (Scabby Mountain) has been given to it.* The top of the wall is about three hundred feet above

* The first Europeans who settled in Southern Africa, when they were obliged to teach their language to the savages, might probably by way of facilitating the task to their scholars as much as possible, convey their instruction through the medium of sensible objects. Thus they called every hill a back, every point of a mountain a head, a Hottentot village, from its resemblance to a necklace, a kraal,* all sorts of fire-arms reeds, horned cattle beasts, the whole family of the ante-

* See the explanation of this word in a note to page 107.
the valley at its foot, but from the Warm Bokkeveld, which lies so much lower, it must rise at least between seven and eight hundred feet.

From this extraordinary production of nature, the valley at its foot has a gloomy and melancholy appearance. A small stream, the Leeuwen-river, runs through it, parallel with the mountain, down to the Warm Bokkeveld, and there uniting itself with the waters of the Breede-river, rushes with them through the pass of the Mostershock into the sea. The valley is rich in grass and liliaceous plants, and resembles an European meadow more than any thing we had yet seen. About the middle of the valley, at the foot of the mountain, stands the house of the field-cornet Hugo, where we stopped for the night. The buildings here are more roomy, and executed in a better style than in the Roggeveld; the beams, as well as the walls and thatch, are of much neater workmanship. The sitting-room is decorated with neat shelves, on which the household utensils in glass and earthenware are arranged with a sort of taste, which evinces affluence of circumstances; and the manners of the inhabitants have more of the citizen-like polish to be seen among the burghers of the Cape Town, than the blunt but kind-hearted simplicity of their country-men in the more northern parts of the colony. They talked much of the severe cold felt here in winter, and said that they commonly removed at that season to the Warm Bokkeveld, where also they had an estate. At present it was so warm that the whole family made up beds for themselves in the outer room, in order to leave the inner one entirely for our party. They assured us that they often did this in summer, to be more out of the way of the heat, and of the flies.

The fatiguing road which we were to travel the next morning was one of the principal subjects of our conversation, when for our consolation they assured us, that there were few passages over mountains throughout the colony more troublesome and fatiguing than this. As a proof, however, of the facility with

lopes boks, &c. &c. It is to this cause probably that we must ascribe the poverty and corruption in the expression of abstract ideas which is now universal among the colonists, and that conciseness and naïveté which borders on the figurative language of oriental poetry. All bodies with a rough uneven surface are from the same cause called schurfide (scabby or blotchy). When we visited the Caffres, it was curious to observe that if among the presents we made them any of the metal buttons had an impression, they always returned them as being schurfide, and desired to have such as were quite smooth and shining.
which it was possible for both human beings and animals to surmount these hardships, the good woman of the house assured us, that after every lying-in, and this had been hitherto an annual ceremony with her, she went on the second or third Sunday herself with her child, to have it baptized at the church at Roodezand. She had a very safe horse, she said, which carried her so well over both the mountains between her house and Roodezand, that she could go and return in the same day; he would go the whole way in a trot without ever stumbling, and she was never afraid of suckling her child even in the most dangerous parts.*

One of our waggons having again been damaged by being overturned in a morass at the entrance of the valley, was repaired in the night, and we set out early in the morning, desirous if possible of reaching the top of the Witsemberg before the great heat of the day. We travelled along the foot of the Schurfdelerge a full half hour, before we reached the passage by which it was to be ascended. A power far beyond all mortal comprehension has here made a vast rent in this enormous mass of stone, and opened a way from five to six hundred feet wide, through which the road is made. It was, however, a very arduous undertaking, and attended with great difficulties, particularly in the lower and narrow part of the cleft. Vast immovable blocks of stone, which lay in the way at every step, must be pulverised before it could be possible for a waggon to pass. It was among these awe-inspiring ruins that we were to ascend, but to our great surprise, considering the details of hardships which had been given us the evening before, and which brought naturally to our imaginations the idea of the Nardouw, and the valley of Moed-verlooren, we found the road perfectly level, and the ascent easy; after what we had previously passed, the present adventure seemed quite a joke. In half an

* A very remarkable effect of the climate of Africa, and of the modes of living among the women there, is the facility with which they bear their children. A woman dying in child-bed is a thing almost unheard of; on the contrary, by the fourth day they generally begin to return to their household affairs, and by the seventh or eighth leave the house, and are perfectly recovered: and this not only among the hard-working women in the country, but among the ladies in the town, though in many respects they are delicate enough. Perhaps, however, this facility may be a principal cause of their propensity to growing so extremely corpulent, and of that disposition to hysterical affections which has been mentioned, and may therefore be balanced by its concomitant evils.
hour we reached the top of the mountain. Here a sandy plain presented itself, the opposite side of which we reached in another half hour, when descending again, amidst these massy blocks, we reached a pleasanter little plain, richly carpeted with green.

And now, looking back, we were presented with the western side of the Schurideberge. From the top to the bottom it was one continued succession of broken masses of rocks, heaped one upon another. Their deep shadows, the dull grey of the stones, and the dark leaves of the bushes, which raise their heads as if coming forth not without the most painful exertion, impress the traveller involuntarily with a sort of feeling of pensiveness. Except along the beaten road, the mountain is almost as inaccessible on this side, from its extreme ruggedness, as on the other from its steep, flat, and unbroken surface. Large troops of apes were climbing about these masses, and their horrid yell was rendered a thousand times more horrid from being echoed every way by the surrounding clefts; while little wanton goats, resembling the Klippenspringer, were bounding about on the very top, seeming to mock their persecutors, from whose weapons they were now perfectly secure.

More abundant traces of the crafty panther were to be found here than in any other part of the colony, while his harmless fellow-inhabitants of the rocks above-mentioned, often become his prey. Often, too, do the flocks of the industrious farmer suffer severely from his ravages. But the enemy most to be feared here is man. A thousand places of concealment offer the wished-for asylums to slaves deserting their service, and bands of these robbers not unfrequently take advantage of the favourable nature of the spot to harbour in it for a long time together, living upon the plunder of the neighbouring flocks and herds, gardens and fields. From time immemorial this mountain has never been free from such marauders, notwithstanding that parties have frequently been sent out against them, and numbers have been brought to justice. Some half-instructed travellers have confounded these people with the Bosjesmans; but they have no relation whatever with them. They are much less addicted to murder; but are not so easily taken, on account of the fire-arms which they have for defending themselves.

A plain of more than an hour in breadth now carried us to the foot of the other high mountain, which we were this day to cross. This plain has for its eastern boundary the Schurideberge, and runs from north to south between
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

that and the Witsemberg. Directly on coming out of the cleft through which we had crossed the Schurifeberge we found a solitary house standing under a projecting piece of rock: it was inhabited by a person of the name of Scholz, who was overseer of the road, and stationed there to collect a dollar and a half from every waggon passing the mountain, to be applied to keeping up the road in a proper state. The money thus collected, and the free use of the circumjacent lands, was farmed by him at a stipulated sum, to be paid into the chest of the district; and he was besides to attend to the proper repairs of the road. Some repairs are perpetually wanted, on account of the damage done by the heavy rains of winter upon a pretty rapid ascent.

A few oaks by which the house was shaded seemed to offer us a desirable place of rest, and bringing out our tables and benches, we sat down upon the turf beneath to take our refreshment. The overseer, called in the country the padmaker, was one of the largest and most corpulent men I ever saw, and throughout the whole colony a man with less intelligence of any useful kind, or one less fit for his post, could hardly have been found. He assured us that it was only within a few years he had become so corpulent: he was before rather lean than fat. He had a little waggon in which he was drawn about to inspect the roads; but the overlooking of the workmen employed upon them was deputed to one of his slaves. The neighbours complained much of his duty being very ill performed, and asserted that the road had been mended in a hurry against our arrival, but that for two years before it had been scarcely passable.

An object which here particularly attracted our attention was a gigantic assemblage of blocks of stone, piled together in such a manner, that spaces were left sufficient to walk in and out between them, and thus a sort of labyrinth was formed; here the owner of the place kept his flocks and herds, each different species having their distinct apartments. In exploring this singular place, I was struck with the resemblance it bore to the cave of the Cyclops, according to the description given of it by the sublime author of the Odyssey, while the gigantic figure of the host, who had been long afflicted with a disorder in his eyes, and had one bound down with a handkerchief, seemed a not unappropriate representative of the monstrous master of this cave.
When to the nearest verge of land we drew,
Fast by the sea a lonely cave we view,
High, and with dark'ning laurels cover'd o'er,
Where sheep and goats lay slumbering round the shore.
Near this, a fence of marble from the rock,
Brown with o'er-arching pine and spreading oak.
A giant shepherd here his flock maintains
Far from the rest, and solitary reigns,
In shelter thick of horrid shade reclin'd,
And gloomy mischiefs labour in his mind.
A form enormous, far unlike the race
Of human birth, in stature, or in face;
As some lone mountain's monstrous growth he stood,
Crown'd with rough thicketts, and a nodding wood.

ODYSSEY, BOOK IX. LINE 211.
Pope's Translation.

A rumour was abroad in the neighbourhood, that Scholz had many more of these sort of caves than were known to any person, his slaves excepted, where he concealed the sheep which by the help of the same slaves he stole from the butchers as they passed with their droves that way. In fact, about a year after, upon the complaint of some butchers, Scholz and all his crew were apprehended, and more than half convicted of the robberies alleged against them. The slaves confessed that the master was guilty of asserting most abominable falsehoods; but before the process was concluded he died in prison. I myself visited him there several times in my medical capacity. In his gigantic form, his one-eyed face, his craft and deceit, his disposition to solitude, and in having abjured vegetable food, it would perhaps have been difficult to find a stronger resemblance to the monster Polypheme, than in the owner of these caverns at the foot of the Schurideberg.

In the afternoon arrived some deputies from Roodezand, to welcome the Commissary-general, and they accompanied us across the plain between the mountains. This plain is morassy, and abounds with rushes and liliaceous plants: it is even so morassy as to be dangerous passing over in very wet weather. Here and there a little stream flows through it. We now ascended, in about half an hour, the inner side of the Witsemberg, and the whole party
agreed that a more striking view than was presented from its summit could hardly be seen. There is here no level ground: the descent begins almost as soon as the ascent is finished, and a valley is spread out three times as deep below the summit as that on the other side, the little space that there is at the top placing them both, as it were, at the same moment, before the eyes of the almost awe-stricken traveller. Forty rich farms lay spread before us as upon a map, each with neat-looking houses, shaded by oaks, and surrounded by green meadows and corn-fields. Smooth roads crossing each other in various directions, going from one farm to another, seemed like a sort of net-work thrown over the green carpet, while numbers of bluish streams that wound prettily from the sides of the valley, and met at last in the centre, formed there a wide stream, which sought a way out of this confined spot through a vast chasm in the opposite row of hills. Over this row, which in the parts about the chasm is lower than the place where we now were, we could see the well-known hills that rise above Saldanha bay, and farther still, in the south-west, was to be discerned the Table Mountain, with its summit now lost in a white cloud. Those who had friends on the shores of Table Bay could not help greeting with delight, though at the distance of three days journey, the flat eminence towering above the place of their abode.

As the traveller begins to descend, he can scarcely contemplate without a sort of shuddering the danger which appears manifestly to be attached to the task he is undertaking; and he feels disposed to rail in secret at the person who planned the road, that he could require of any one to descend this steep wall, by so madly bold a path. Nothing is to be seen here of the bottom of the hill. The road has to the eye, as it looks down, the appearance of terminating; after a short descent, at the edge of a precipice; and when arrived at this edge, it is not much less frightful to see a perpetual zigzag all down the side of the steep descent; while at the same time it is curious to observe how carefully the most convenient places for making the turns have been selected. Farther down, the road comes to the edge of a wide-spread chasm, along which it descends more rapidly, but more safely, to the bottom. By the side of the road, in several places upon the declivity, little springs trickle from the slate-stone, which, to travellers exposed as they are on this almost perpendicular hill, in the midst of a burning sun, afford a most wel-
come cordial. One half of the hill is well clothed with bushes: the naked stone changes gradually into fertile soil, and there are even spots that furnish grass sufficient for cattle to feed on them. These reminded me strongly of the meadows upon the Swiss mountains.

Wearied with descending for an hour and a half, we arrived at last at the first farm in the valley, directly at the foot of the mountain, where we were received with the most friendly welcome by a large family of worthy inhabitants, and all sorts of refreshments were immediately set before us.

Twenty-five years before, there was no passage over this mountain, and the only way of coming from the Cold Bokkerveld hither was by a wide circuit of almost double the distance, through the Mostershoek, and by the bed of the Breede-river. At that time a man of an enterprising spirit, Mr. Pienaar, the father of the Field-cornet, formed the bold plan of constructing a road over the Schuruldeberg and Witsemberg, and under the favour of the government, happily accomplished it, so that now the passage of the Witsemberg, when kept in good order, is preferred by all the neighbourhood to the road of the Mostershoek. This Pienaar was a friend of Colonel Gordon's, and accompanied him in all his travels. He was a man whom no danger could deter from any undertaking: the more arduous the task, the more was he determined upon accomplishing it. To this undaunted courage he fell a sacrifice. As a band of the slave-robbers once attacked his domains, he went out among them alone and unarmed, in hopes by his presence, his remonstrances, and exhortations, to induce them to quit the course they were pursuing, and return to a life of honest industry; but the men misapprehending his purpose, fell upon him and murdered him.

Lieutenant Gilmer had occupied himself exceedingly in providing good accommodations for the whole party at Roodezand, since it was resolved that we should make some little stay there, partly to wait for intelligence from the Cape Town respecting the political affairs of Europe, on which the determination whether or not we should proceed on our journey principally depended; partly to put our whole equipage in good repair, in case we were to proceed. The Commissary-general, with the ladies, were lodged in the house of the clergyman, which was near the church, almost in the centre of the valley: the
rest were dispersed in the farms that lay nearest, none of which were more than a little half hour distant. I myself, with my pupil, and my friend Winters, took up my quarters at the house of a widow by name Du Plessis, where I employed the time of our stay in putting in order and packing my different collections, and sent them off to the care of my friends at the Cape Town, to make room for the accommodation of new treasures.

END OF PART THE FIRST.
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

PART II.

JOURNEY FROM ROODEZAND TO ZWELLENDAM, AND ALONG THE SOUTHERN COAST TO ALGOA BAY.

CHAP. X.

Description of the Valley of Roodezand.—Character of its Inhabitants.—Prevailing Bigotry.—The surrounding Country.—The Water-fall Mountain.—Mastershoek.—Breedc-river.—Goudinie.—Hot Spring in the Brand Valley.

The highest part of the great chain of mountains, which runs from north to south through the colony, is in latitude 32° 30' south: here is formed an assemblage of heads or knobs, the most lofty of which is covered with snow in winter, and thence has the name of the Winterhoek (Winter point). On the northern side of this mountain is the source of the Elephants'-river; towards the west its foot borders the district of the twenty-four rivers, and on the east it is met by the mountains of the Cold Bokkeveld. To the south the chain divides into two branches, one of which, turning to the south-east, terminates in the Witsemberg, Mastershoek, the Hex-river mountain, and at length at the ridge which forms the boundary of Zwellendam. The other branch runs directly south, and joining the chain which has its course from east to west, spreads into the Franschehoek, Drakenstein, Stellenbosch, Hot-tentotsholland, to the False-Cape, where it is lost in the sea.

In the circle formed by these two chains as they branch off, lies the valley of Roodezand, formerly called Van-Waveren's Land, though, at the first planting of the colony, when it was the principal place in its northern parts, and the seat of a Landdrost, it was distinguished as the Tulbagh. The breadth of this valley is about a geographical mile; its length, as far as the district of Roodezand extends, is from two miles to three and a half. On three sides
it is enclosed by high hills, but it is open to the south, and bounded by the Breede-river and Goudinie. This circuit is inhabited by forty families, so that each domain is small, but fertile in corn and fruit. The wheat here is considered as the best in the whole colony, and is in great request at the Cape Town. Very few cattle are kept, as there is a great want of pasture, yet every one breeds as many as will furnish him with the oxen necessary for his own use: he only keeps sheep sufficient for his household consumption.

The church was built in the year 1743: it is a very humble, simple edifice. Service is performed there every Sunday: the congregation being collected from many miles round: most people attend who are at the distance of no more than half a day's journey on horseback. The inhabitants of the Roggeveldts, of the Bokkeveldts, and of the district of Hantam, may be considered as parishioners here, since they bring their children to this church to be baptized. They do not, however, make a point of coming for this purpose immediately after the child's birth; they wait till some opportunity presents itself, perhaps till they take a journey to the Cape Town. Both Sundays that we were here, there were as many as four and twenty children baptized, a proof of the flourishing state of population in the colony. Marriages are also solemnised here,* children are confirmed, and once in the year at least, even the most distant of the colonists come to partake of the sacrament of the Lord's Supper. How assiduous the African farmer is in praying and singing in his own house shall be hereafter shewn.

Near the church is a row of ten or twelve small houses, inhabited chiefly by handicraft workers and little traders, who, from the neighbourhood being so much more inhabited than many other parts, and from the road being much more frequented, gain a very good livelihood. Every house has a little garden, on the other side of the road, opposite his door, and many of the inhabitants have a small quantity of land in the open field, from which they gather their provision of bread-corn for their families. At the end of this row stands the house of the clergyman, the neatest and best house in the valley.

---

* Formerly marriages could only be solemnised in the Cape Town, and for this purpose the parties to be united were sometimes obliged to take a journey of more than a hundred miles. The government has now altered this regulation, and marriages may be solemnised before the lairds of each district.
Before it is a court, enclosed with a palisade, and near it is the garden and the corn-fields. The clergyman is by birth a German, and his name is Ballot. He was educated at the German Universities, and afterwards went as Dutch preacher to Malacca and Batavia, whence he came hither. His wife, a very mild, amiable woman, is of one of the best families at the Cape Town; from the kindness and hospitality of both these people their house is one of the most agreeable at which a traveller can be entertained.

The inhabitants of Roodezand, owing to their frequent intercourse with the Cape Town, have more of civilization than the distant colonists, are more active and industrious, and more attentive to their own interests. There is more taste about their houses, more luxury at their tables, the wives and daughters are better clothed, and they make some pretensions, not wholly without reason, to polish and education. Unfortunately, through the mistaken zeal of a swarm of missionaries, who within a few years have established themselves here, a degree of bigotry has been introduced, which has very much changed the frankness of character and good-will towards each other, which was once so prevalent here, and made them devotees and scandal-mongers. Music and dancing are entirely banished; and they can scarcely forgive their regular clergyman, that he is more tolerant and would encourage cheerfulness among the young people. The youths do indeed still occupy themselves with agriculture, hunting, and travelling, but the women sit at home in pious inactivity; or if they do move, it is with an affected solemnity, stiffness, and starchedness of manner, that even the youngest seem as if they had taken their grandmothers as the model for their air and carriage. Every lively feeling of youth is suppressed in prayers and psalm-singing; and they often go to the arms of the husbands whom their fathers have chosen for them with pale countenances and half-ruined health.

The first disposition to this vexatious bigotry, for so it is to a true christian, was created by the predecessor of the present clergyman, an ignorant, illiterate man, without any of the true dignity of the clerical character, who, with a canting affected humility, preached the doctrine of every one devoting himself entirely to the salvation of his own soul; a doctrine not only utterly destructive of all social affection, but even of all attention to the necessary occupations of life. Such a doctrine, the offspring of sloth and ignorance,
could only find complete admission into the minds of silly, ignorant people: but unfortunately it gained a partial admission with many, otherwise sensible men, while it was highly commended by the elderly women, and soon became that in which the young women were to be educated. This influence over the minds of the female part of his flock was employed by the pious preacher for the base purpose of seducing a young woman, who soon, by giving birth to a child, brought both him and herself to public shame. Notwithstanding this event, there were but too many who still wanted their favourite to remain among them; but he went, if I am not mistaken, with the English to Ceylon. There are still, however, many persons who very much lament the loss of him, and wish ardently for his return: in fact, the doctrine he taught was a very convenient one; it was, that if a man is only with a true, humble, broken, and contrite heart, convinced of his sinfulness, it is no matter how great may have been the sins he has committed, he is certain of being saved.

Among the mountains that encompass the valley of Roodezand,* the Witsemberg and the Winterhoeksberg are particularly distinguished: the summit of the former is two thousand nine hundred feet above the spot on which the church stands, the latter, which is at the northern corner of the valley, is one hundred and fifty feet higher. The mountains become lower as they advance towards the west, till the Roodezandkloof, a long narrow pass leading to the Cape Town, and continue decreasing to the Water-fall mountain, the last in the chain towards the south. In one of the clefts of this mountain, a large stream of water falls from a high rock above, which in winter, when swollen by the rains, presents a glorious spectacle. We spent one of the days of our stay at Roodezand in a visit to this spot. A ride of an hour and half brought us to the foot of the hill, having in our way crossed the Little Berg-river. Here we left our horses, and climbed to a considerable height over the steep and broken rocks which form one side of the mountain, and when we arrived at the top, we saw the fall on the other side. Its height may be between eighty and ninety feet, its breadth between thirty and forty. The sublimity of this scene was however lost to us, since there not having been any rain

* The valley has the name of Roodezand (Red-sand) from the colour given to the soil by the particles of iron with which it is every where impregnated.
for a long time, a very scanty portion of water trickled down the deepest part of the chasm. It was in a very different state when I saw it a year and a half after, in the winter of 1805; there had been abundant rains, and it was in full beauty.

I cannot omit recommending this water-fall to travellers as one of the objects which they will find the most worthy their attention of any in the country. To a painter it would afford excellent matter for a picture, the principal object of which, with the surrounding ones, would give a very good idea of the scenery of Southern Africa. It is not often that really picturesque views are to be found here. The country makes a strong impression upon the mind from the extensive horizons which it so often presents, and from the vastness of the objects comprehended within the space over which the eye is wandering; but it is seldom that near objects, that single points are interesting when separated from the grand whole of which they form a part. African landscapes therefore fail entirely of the suavity, the mildness, the animation which are to be found in so many spots under the European heavens: they may be given as descriptions by which the nature of the country will be more clearly understood, but they will scarcely be studied for their innate and abstract beauty.

In the valley beneath, the water is collected in a vast basin excavated in the stone, granite if I am not mistaken, the bottom of which I could not reach with a pole ten feet long: by the side of the stream is a grotto, which runs within the rock to the depth of between thirty and forty feet: the arched entrance to this grotto is close to the falling water when the stream is full. The rocks round about are thickly grown over with shrubs, which are then sprinkled by the spray. As often as I visited Roodezand in my subsequent travels, I never omitted a pilgrimage to this enchanting spot.

Our excellent and respected chief was confined almost entirely to the house during the whole of our stay here, by the variety of business which claimed his attention. Dispatches from Europe and India occupied him not less than the affairs of the Cape Town, or the many regulations he made for improving the situation of the countries through which we had travelled, and of the place we now inhabited. Happily nothing had occurred to interrupt the prosecution of our journey, or to render the Commissary-general's presence in the Cape Town necessary. The damages, therefore, which our waggons
had at various times received, being now very completely repaired, we ourselves and our whole suite being thoroughly recruited, and a new supply having been laid in, partly by purchase, and partly through the kindness of the inhabitants, we quitted Roodezand on Thursday, the first of December, after a stay of eleven days.

We had experienced very considerable heats during our stay here, and at three different times the thermometer had risen above the heat of blood. We did not set out therefore till the afternoon, when commonly a cool breeze rises from the south-east; sometimes indeed it brings a storm with it, but never attains the degree of heat here that it does at the Cape. Some of the most considerable people of the place accompanied us a part of the way as an escort of honour, and at every farm we passed we received the customary salutes of honour from the old German muskets. We crossed several arms of the Little Berg-river, and went up and down several pretty little hills, from the tops of which we had interesting views of the richly cultivated country around. To the right we had the Water-fall mountain, to the left Mostertshoek,* which projecting some way into the plain, contracts the breadth of the valley half a geographical mile. We crossed the Breede-river several times: this stream issues from the steep ravine that leads from the Warm Bokkeveld, and spreads into many branches which wind about the valley, and form a number of pretty little islands.

About sun-set we reached the house of the Field-cornet Hugo, which has the name of Liebe (Love). In this house we found every appearance of the owners being in affluence. The farms hereabouts are altogether as fertile as those in Roodezand, and have the advantage of a more extensive circulation for their commodities. The wine is much better; the Cape Madeira in particular which grows here, is very much like that in the district of the Four and Twenty Rivers. But in this place also we found a great degree of bigotry, the offspring of a swarm of idle missionaries, who find it more agreeable to be fed by the devout colonists, than to pursue the proper object for which they were sent out—the endeavouring to instruct and civilize the neighbouring savages. When we were seated at table, six children of the Field-cornet placed them-

* Mostert was the name of the man, long since dead, who first inhabited this place: thence the name of Mostertshoek, (Mostor's Point.)
selves in a row, according to their ages, behind the seats of their parents, and there gabbled over a long grace, all from the eldest to the youngest speaking together. It was not, however, one learned from the prayer-book, which they might have understood, but it was composed of a parcel of high-sounding words devoid of meaning, to which it was plain neither they or their teachers could annex any distinct ideas; and from the tone in which it was spoken, and the jangle of so many discordant voices speaking together, one might have thought oneself in Bedlam.

On the following day we arrived in the district of Goudinie, having passed in our way a pretty deep ford of the Breede-river. Our nearest road to Zwel lendam would have been by following the left bank of the river directly out of the valley: we should then have reached it in four or five days. But the dulness and uniformity of the country, and the want of places where we could stop to rest, besides the wish to visit many interesting objects which lay out of this course, determined the Commissary-general upon taking a more circuitous route.

Goudinie is a low flat district, in a recess formed by the western chain of mountains, where it runs parallel with the mountains of the Hex-river, and encloses the valley of the Breede-River. A number of little streams flow from the clefts of the mountains through this plain into the latter river, by which the district is not unfrequently overflowed in winter. From this low situation grass is produced in profusion, and oxen and horses may soon become fat here, but there is no place in which they are more liable to the murrain. Little corn is grown, and that of a very moderate quality; but the fruits are fine, above all, the grapes: the raisins of this district are considered as the finest flavoured in the whole colony.

We rested for the night at the house of a certain Daniel du Toit, whose family was of French origin: they are now spread so numerously over the country, that there is scarcely a family in the neighbourhood who is not related in some degree to the Du Toits. In our journey to day we had passed several houses inhabited by persons of this name. Our host was seventy-one years of age, but still healthy and active. He was married for the third time to a woman not now more than thirty, who had borne him several children, the youngest being only three years old. His eldest son was already a grand-father, and the whole number of his descendants, children, grand-
children, and great-grand-children included, amounted to eighty-three. The house was neat; the family were kind and hospitable, having the appearance of being in very comfortable circumstances, and they seemed anxious to make every thing agreeable to us. Some tall oaks shaded the house, and the meadows around with cattle feeding in them brought strongly to my imagination the idea of the Netherlands.

This place was formerly called the island, from being surrounded by several little mountain streams: these are sometimes so swollen in winter that there is no stirring out. We here, for the first time, saw a cow afflicted with the kunziekte. She had for a whole month lain entirely on the ground, excepting when sometimes by the assistance of the men she was raised up for a short time, but she could neither rise or stand without assistance. It appears to be a disease of the nerves, particularly of those of the buttocks and hinder legs; but neither the cause of, or remedies for it, are yet well understood. When, as in the present case, the disease continues a long time, and the animal is always able to eat, great hopes may be entertained of an entire recovery.

The next day we proceeded to the hot-spring in the Brand-valley, travelling for two hours through a low, flat, morassy country, intersected with many little streams. This spring has been hitherto little visited by travellers, yet it is an object well worthy their curiosity. It rises at the foot of a high hill, from a basin which contains forty square feet. The bubbling up of the water, the vapour rising from it, and the spray blown about with any considerable breeze, gives this basin a strong resemblance to an immense boiling kettle. By the side it flows into a canal, which it furnishes with more than four hogsheads of water in a minute: the supply of water, even at the very source, is sufficient to turn a mill: the heat is 180° by Fahrenheit. The water is clear, tasteless, and has no colour: it flows in an equal quantity the whole year. The bottom of the basin is covered with sand: it is enclosed round with granite-stone, and directly above the water, begins a strong layer of argile. The vegetation is here particularly luxuriant: the margin of the basin is fringed round with thick bushes of the freshest green, and but a few paces from it, some poplars that were planted became in a very short time large trees. Faded plants and leaves, held in the water for a few moments are perfectly revived: eggs will not harden in it, though from the degree of
heat in the water this might be expected. None of the mineral acids that I had with me occasioned the least trouble or fermentation in it, and the vapour that rose from the basin seemed like the gas of pure coal. A flask of the water well closed up, which I carried away with me for farther examination, had purified itself entirely in four days.

This bath is said to be extremely salutary in cutaneous diseases, or for healing long-standing sores. It is not, however, of equal efficacy with the warm springs at the Elephants'-river, and at the Zwarteborg, and is of no use in arthritic complaints. It is sometimes imprudently used for hysterical affections, but from its great degree of heat, it has generally proved pernicious in these cases. Little provision is made for the accommodation of guests who come to bathe. A small house, about four hundred paces from the spring, contains six very small and poor apartments; four of these were now inhabited, but none of the patients could boast of much amendment. The first necessaries of life are scarcely to be procured from the inhabitants of the adjacent farm at the foot of the mountain, notwithstanding that the owners of it draw a revenue from the bath, and are paid for the hire of the rooms. The invalids must bring every thing with them, or have things brought to them, for the little that they can get in the neighbourhood is charged immoderately dear. Opposite the house, on the other side of the canal, is the bath-house, a wretched little building, with two of the walls tumbling down. Notwithstanding the distance mentioned above of the bath from the spring, four hundred paces, the water when it arrives there is as hot as at the spring, and must remain some time to cool, before it be possible to bathe in it. Near the principal spring are several smaller ones, one of which is perfectly cold. At an hour's distance the stream from this spring joins the Breede-river.
Bosjesveld.—The River Zonder-end.—Basianskloof.—Description of the Society of United Brethren there.—Zoetemelks-valley.—Essaquashloof.—Breede-river.—Arrival in Zwel lendam.

We now quitted the valley of the Breede-river, taking a southerly direction. The country through which we travelled is a part of the district called the Bosjesveld, extending to the right bank of the Breede-river. Our road lay through a broad ravine of easy ascent, inclosed between two rows of hills running almost parallel; here are several very pretty looking places. After having passed a considerable eminence, from which we could see to a great distance southwards, we arrived at our quarters for the night.

Here we were received by a venerable aged couple with four unmarried daughters; none of the latter were now young, and both parents and children were of almost colossal size and stature. The name of this veteran was Van der Merwe: he had twelve children now living, all of the same gigantic figure as the four young ladies whom we first saw. Indeed, as far as I could learn, the whole family of the Van der Merwes, in all its branches, are equally colossal. The good man prides himself not a little upon his family being one of the oldest in the colony. Schalk Willem Van der Merwe, the founder of it, was sent hither from Holland soon after the establishment of the colony as an able agriculturist, and in 1675 married Anne Prevot, one of a number of orphan girls also sent by the then government to promote the population of the colony. They had ten sons and six daughters, who were all married, and all had large families. Our host was grandson to Schalk. The father of our host, one of Schalk’s ten sons, had been dead only twelve years; he died at the Cape Town, being then a hundred and eight years old. Not very long before we were here, one of the Van der Merwe family had celebrated his golden wedding-day (the fiftieth), to which the nearest of kin, with their children and grand-children, were invited, and the number of guests amounted to a hundred and seventy.
At noon on the following day we reached the end of the valley, and stopped till the heat was over at the house of one of the Du Toit family, where we were very kindly received. We did not find the houses here either so good or so well furnished as those at Roodezand; the lands are less fertile, and could not be made much more profitable, even if the difficulty of transport offered no impediment to the industry of the inhabitants. A person on horseback can go in two days from hence to the Cape Town, passing through Hottentots-holland, but with a loaded waggon the road by Roodezand is preferred, as being much better, though more circuitous. Du Toit gave us an excellent sort of wine, called here Pontac, a sweet deep-red wine, which is sold at the Cape at thirty dollars the hogshead.

The road from hence to Bavianskloof runs along the declivity of a hill, and is not passable for loaded waggons. Ours' were therefore sent round by another road through the Zoetemelks-valley, while Du Toit put his horses to a small waggon of his own, in which he himself drove our ladies the hilly road. From the heights we saw the stream which goes by the name of the River-Zonder-end (the River without end); a name given by the persons who first discovered it, because they found it a very great labour to trace it to its source. We likewise saw to the south the country through which lies the most frequented road from the Cape Town to Zwellendam. Towards evening we descended the hill, and coasted for some way the bank of the River-Zonder-end. Here we met two of the respectable members of the Society of United-Brethren at Bavianskloof, dressed according to the custom of the place in short jackets. Having heard of the Commissary-general's arrival in the country, they had come hither to receive and welcome him.

Those who have read Mr. Barrow's Travels know already something of the institution formed in this district by the Herrenhuters, or Society of United Brethren:* it has now been established for a considerable number of years, and deserves every thing that can be said in its commendation. Sparmann mentions a pious German of the name of George Schmidt, as the first of the

* The Herrenhuters, or United Brethren, better known in this country by the appellation of Moravians, are a religious society, whose principles approach nearly to those of the Quakers. The sect was founded early in the eighteenth century by a Count Zinzendorf, of Herrenhut, or Herrnhut, a town in Upper Lusatia, whence they had the name of Herrenhuters.—Translator.
Society who undertook to come out in quality of missionary to Southern Africa. He settled there about the year 1737, and soon collected some Hottentots together for the purpose of converting them to Christianity. After his departure* a small number of his disciples remained together in a society, and the reports concerning them, which reached Europe, induced three of the United Brethren in Holland and Germany, of the names of Marsveld, Kuhnel, and Schwin, to remove hither in the year 1791; the first was from Zeist, in the province of Utrecht, the other two were Germans. By order of the East-India Company in Holland this spot was granted them for the establishment of a little colony, and the boundaries between the lands awarded to them, and those of the neighbouring colonists, were accurately defined. In a short time they collected together a tolerable number of Bastards and Hottentots, whom they instructed in their religion, at the same time endeavouring to inspire them with habits of industry.

In the mean time, that is in the year 1794, those unfortunate dissensions broke out among the colonists, the destructive consequences of which were fortunately superseded by the English invasion; but the sad effects of their discords spread even to this peaceful vale. The whole institution was a subject of offence to the surrounding colonists, partly because they did not see their own strong calvinistic doctrines taught in it, but still more, because they found themselves restrained in extending their lands, and were in some measure deprived of the services of the Hottentots, for the latter preferred leading a quiet life among the Herrenhutens, to attending the sheep and oxen of the farmers. It was to these causes that the enmity of the colonists

* It does not appear how long this missionary remained among the Hottentots; Sparmann says he was informed "that he was banished the country for having illegally made himself a chief among the Hottentots, that he might enrich himself by their labour, and the presents of cattle which they made him; and the acquisition, by any means, of the cattle belonging to the Hottentots was strictly prohibited." It is to be supposed that this prohibition, as well as the banishment of the missionary, were acts of the Dutch government, though this is not particularly specified: he certainly remained five years in the country, but whether only that time is not clear. In the original of the present work, Schmidt is stated to have settled in Africa in 1750; but on referring to Sparmann a mistake seems to have been made in this date, since a letter of Schmidt's, cited by Sparmann, wherein he mentions having been there five years, is dated in 1742.—Translator.
towards the Brethren mentioned by Mr. Barrow is to be ascribed; but this gentleman suffers his zeal against the colonists to get too great an ascendancy over him, when he represents their enmity as having been carried to such lengths that a conspiracy was formed among them to murder the missionaries. I have myself been assured by the missionaries themselves that they never heard of such a thing; they only, by way of precaution, petitioned Sir James Craig, in the year 1796, to grant them a confirmation of their rights, and security against the encroachments with which they were menaced. Since that time, excepting some trifling disputes about the boundaries of their lands, they have lived upon very good terms with the colonists. They are universally esteemed, and I have myself more than once seen a considerable number of colonists attending at the religious assemblies of the Brethren.

In the year 1799, at the request of the three original missionaries, two others, of the names of Rose and Korhammer, were sent from Germany to join them: the former has now in Marsveld’s place the direction of the whole institution. Both brought their wives with them, and brought over also wives for the Brethren already established, women of their own persuasion, who made no hesitation in crossing the seas to unite themselves in wedlock with persons wholly unknown to them. Since that time, the society has increased exceedingly both in numbers and importance. The same year the Brethren built a very neat church, from remittances sent them by the society in Europe, and the number of their disciples now amounts to nearly eleven hundred. Two hundred houses and huts, with gardens annexed to them, and built in regular rows, give this place the appearance of an European village; a sight which surprised me exceedingly, and for the first time brought in a lively manner to my mind the idea of my native country. Excepting this place, I never saw any thing in the whole colony bearing the least resemblance to a German village.

The five Brethren, with their wives, received us at the door of a house where they live all together. One of them made a short speech to welcome us, after which, a chorus of perhaps a hundred Hottentots, men and women, ranged in two rows before the door, the women on the right hand, the men on the left, sung a hymn, which was truly affecting and elevating to the heart. At first the whole number of voices sang the simple melody in slow time, then the verses were sung three voices together, by the men and the
women alternately, and the melody was sung by two voices only till the last verse, when again they all joined in chorus. I could not help remarking, that among all the mens' voices there was not a counter-bass, much less a bass. The natural tone of voice of the Hottentots has a roughness, which makes it little adapted to singing, yet it was by the low tones of their not overstrained tenor, that the principal effect of the chorus was produced. In the full chorus the voices of the women were not to be distinguished above those of the men so much by their fullness as by their clearness and shrillness, but the strongest effect was produced when the mens' voices predominated.

The Hottentots have a strong feeling of music, and are soon impressed with the harmony of our Intervals;* yet hitherto I had never supposed that with these thin, and often sharp female voices, and these hoarse mens' voices, so much effect could be produced.

After we had rested a short time in the house, we were carried to a table extremely well set out, and all prepared by the good wives themselves, every one in her different department. Instead of a prayer before the meal, the five couple sang a verse of a hymn, and then with the utmost cheerfulness, and in a style equally removed from studied seriousness and from frivolity, entered into conversation with us. This was carried on in a manner which shewed so much correctness of thinking, and soundness of understanding, that our good opinion of them was increased at every moment: we were so well entertained that we did not break up the party till near midnight.

The next morning every different part of the institution was shewn to us; the church in the first place. It is a simple, neat quadrangular edifice, but the roof is too steep, and carried up to too sharp a ridge: this was done to give height to the building, and render it more conspicuous. Within are two rows of benches, and a simple pulpit; the utmost simplicity is, indeed, observable in every part of the building, but at the same time the due proportions are exceedingly well observed, and the workmanship is extremely neat. The timbers are all of sumach wood, the yellow tint and polish of which gives a sort of simple elegance to the appearance of the whole.

* In what respects the Intervals proper to the Hottentots differ from our's will be shown in another place.
The English government gave the Brethren permission to cut down as much timber as they wanted from the woods belonging to the company, free of expense.

By the side of the church is the garden of the pastors, in the midst of which stands the large old pear-tree, planted by Schmidt himself, the original founder of the institution: benches are standing under its shade, and this is a favourite place of resort among the Brethren. The garden is two hundred paces long, and about a hundred and fifty broad; it is well stored with all kinds of kitchen vegetables and pulse, and intersected all over with little channels, by which it is constantly well watered. Brother Schwin, who is an excellent gardener, has the management of it. The church-yard is directly behind it, and is laid out exactly in the manner of the Herrenhuters in Germany: a walk divides it in two, on the right hand of which lie the men, on the left the women. The graves follow each other in regular rows, and the utmost care is taken of them: each has over it a little wooden cross, on which is inscribed the name of the deceased, his age, and the day of his death. The graves of two children of the Brethren have tomb-stones, and those of the Hottentots that had been baptized are distinguished from the rest.

The house inhabited by the Brethren has, besides the hall in which they assemble, and where they take their meals, two chambers for two of the couples, and various household conveniences; the other three couple lodge in small houses close by. Another house is appropriated to the manufacture of knives, of which Kuhnel is the director, and which begins already to be very profitable. Four Hottentots were employed in it, who, when first they began learning had no pay; they are now paid wages by the day, and when they are perfect in their work are to be paid by the piece. The knives are strong and well made, and are much sought after at the Cape Town though they are dear: pocket knives sell from a dollar to a dollar and a half. Kuhnel complained much of the want of tools, and the difficulty of getting them from Europe, so that he is obliged to make them almost all himself. Marsveld is the miller, and has built a water-mill after the European manner, in which he grinds not only all the corn for the household and the Hottentots, but a great deal for the neighbouring colonists.
The church, with the nearest houses, lie in the deepest recess of the valley, at the foot of the Baviaanskloof, from which, in winter, the water sometimes rushes with great force, so that it has more than once overflowed the whole valley. The channel has, therefore, been lately enclosed between two strong walls, and several bridges have been made over it; a work of no small labour, and affording an additional proof of the industry and activity of these people. The Brethren proposed carrying this canal on as a benefit to the lands lying without the valley, and when two years after I visited this spot, for the last time, it was already extended six hundred paces farther.

But in order to form a just estimate of the worth of these excellent men, their manner of conducting themselves towards the Hottentots must be seen; the mildness, yet dignity with which they instruct them, and the effect which has already been produced in improving the condition of their uncivilized brethren is truly admirable. It is the more astonishing, since all has been accomplished by persuasion and exhortation, no violence, or even harshness, has ever been employed. No other punishment is known but being prohibited from attending divine service, or being banished the society; but it is very rarely that they are obliged to have recourse to these things, only when repeated exhortations and remonstrances have failed, and a determined perverseness of disposition appears, which cannot otherwise be subdued. The highest reward of industry, and good behaviour, is to be baptised and received into the society. Of this, however, they are so sparing, that the whole number of the baptised scarcely yet amounts to fifty. To the most distinguished among these, the still higher honours are granted of being appointed to little offices in the church, such as elders and deacons. The latter are also, very naturally, from their diligence and industry, in the best circumstances of any of the community, and have houses built by themselves, not at all inferior to those of the colonists on the borders. The men are clothed like the peasants, in linen jackets, and leather small-clothes, and wear hats; the women have woollen petticoats, cotton jackets, with long sleeves, and caps: the lower class are still clothed in skins, but they are made to keep themselves and their clothing clean, and no nakedness is permitted.
Every family of Hottentots has a garden behind the house, planted with vegetables, pulse, and fruit-trees, with a portion of land, according to the number of persons to be fed from it; this they cultivate themselves, under the direction of the father, as he is called, and they have the implements of agriculture and the seed-corn given them. Industry is rewarded by an occasional addition to the portion of land, negligence by being deprived of a part: but the Brethren still find a disposition to indolence, the greatest subject of complaint they have against their disciples: many of them will only gain their slender sustenance by the same occasional labours to which they have been accustomed in the service of the colonists, by assisting in the harvest for example, by attending upon their cattle, or by working at their buildings. The women and children are left behind when they go out to work in this way, a burden upon the community, and are not without difficulty incited to gain a trifle, by working in the gardens of the Brethren, or of their more substantial fellow-countrymen. Those who are baptised are all Bastards, since among the pure Hottentots exhortation alone cannot produce a sufficient effect to induce them to throw aside their careless and indolent ways.

How much superior is such an institution to those that have been established in other parts of Southern Africa, by English and Dutch missionaries. While the Herrenhuters, wherever they have gone, have excited universal respect, and have endeavoured to inspire a spirit of industry, with a sense of true religion, while they have sought to make the savages men before they thought of making them christians, the missionaries above-mentioned, with few exceptions, have shewn themselves idle vagabonds, or senseless fanatics, beginning their task of conversion by teaching the doctrine of the Trinity, and baptising their disciples, and have concerned themselves little with seeking to give them habits of industry, to inspire them with the feelings of men: they have commenced with the superstructure, without thinking of laying the proper foundation by which it was to be supported. As all the communities of Brethren over the whole earth, at the same hour, morning and evening, are united in singing the hymn appointed for that day, so are they all inspired with an equal ardour in seeking to arrive at the same goal, it is not among them single men that labour; it is the united strength
of many thousands working together, and the fruits of their diligence and savings goes all into the common stock; the remotest branch is supported and nourished from the trunk. According to the testimony of the Brethren here, the little branch of which they have the care, notwithstanding the favours shewn it on the part of the government, has received in the eleven years that have elapsed since its establishment no less than twenty-five thousand dollars from Europe, and the yearly expences seem rather to increase than diminish.

Assurances of countenance and support on the part of the government were reiterated by the Commissary-general; he gave them besides much friendly advice, and presented the establishment with a handsome sum of money from the government treasury. We stayed to take our dinner here, and then departed amid the blessings of these worthy people, and their prayers for our happiness: two of the Brethren even accompanied us a part of the way.

Our road now lay through the wide-spread valley of the River-Zonder-end; to the left was the high hill which stretches from hence in an easterly direction, to the bay of the Kromme-river. The country is fertile and pleasant; there were many neat farms, and the lands were well cultivated. In the evening we reached the Government-post in the valley of Zoetemelk (Sweet-milk), where we recognised the grand style of buildings erected here at the cost of the company, during the time when they could boast a full purse. The postholder was not at home, but we were politely received by his wife, and learnt from her that several couriers had passed not far from the place, charged with dispatches from the Cape Town to the Commissary-general. As these letters might render his return to the Cape necessary, it was resolved not to proceed any farther, but to wait here the arrival of the messengers. The dispatches arrived the next morning, but it appeared that they were not of very great importance, and the preparations for a hasty return, which had already been in some sort begun, were laid aside. The necessary answers to these papers, however, detained the Commissary-general a day and a half.

The valley of Zoetemelk is a place, which in the earliest times, on account of its excellent grass, had been used by the government for resting and recruiting the cattle bought of the distant Hottentot tribes, and destined for slaugh-
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

As the colony was at first very scantily peopled, it could not furnish a sufficient supply of provisions for the ships and the garrison, so that from the year 1658, a commission was sent annually to the Essaquas and Outeniquas to purchase oxen from them. These travellers, whose station is distinctly pointed out by Ten-Rhyne, passed through this place, the valley being then called Ragensboom, and one of the farms, which has a small grotto in a rock close by it, to this day retains the name of the Zickenhuis (the Infirmary), because the travellers used to leave their sick in the grotto to be nursed there till their return. As the population of the country in a course of years increased very much, the company took the Zoetemelk's valley into their own hands, built several handsome houses, and kept there a quantity of cattle for the supply of the public wants, particularly for the garrison and ships' stores. While the English were in possession of the settlement, a detachment of dragoons was cantoned in this valley, on account of the excellent grass it furnished for the horses.

The spot is plentifully watered by a number of rivulets that flow from the gulleys in the rocks, nor is there any reason to apprehend the failure of this supply, since large trees which strike deep roots grow in these gulleys; a plain proof that the moisture cannot have failed for a long course of years. Some miles farther towards the east, the gulleys are much larger, and grown up with woods, which have furnished, and may furnish again, very good timber for building; at present all the best trees have been cut down, a few excepted, which grow in situations where it is not easy to get at them; but African trees grow so slowly, that it must be some time before timber can be cut down here again. The postholder at Zoetemelk's-valley is also overseer of these woods, and without express permission of the government, no more can in future be cut down. Among the many healthy and aromatic plants which renders this place so excellent for feeding cattle, I found the Euphorbia genistoides in great abundance.

The nearest heights were ornamented with a variety of beautiful heath-

* Since it appears here that cattle were purchased of the Hottentots by the Dutch government, the prohibition alluded to by Sparrmann, see note to page 152, it is to be presumed extended only to the purchase of them by individuals. **TRANSLATOR.**

plants, but most of them were already out of bloom. This circumstance, as well as the rich vegetation of the spot, induced me to wish very much for an opportunity of visiting it again at a more propitious season, and in the following year, such an opportunity was afforded me. One of our people, in a visit to a farm-house, killed a serpent, which he brought to me. It had, in their sight, climbed up the wall of the house, to take the swallows that had their nests under the roof, and it was in this enterprise that they killed it. The colonists called it the tree-snake (Boa canina), a species which is very adroit at climbing, and is therefore a terrible enemy to small birds. It was six feet long, with a black back, and greyish belly; the bite is extremely venomous, and is considered as mortal. We found in the belly six half-digested young swallows.

On the seventh of December, in the afternoon, we quitted Zoetemelk's-valley, and crossing the River-Zonder-end about half an hour after, continued our course along its right bank. We were now in the great cattle road from Zwellendam, which, notwithstanding its being exceedingly frequented, was so smooth and even, that it might be compared with the finest chaussée; and yet we were assured, that no pains were ever taken to keep it in order. But from the drought that prevails here, and from the natural hardness and evenness of the soil, the roads are not easily injured. We stopped at the house of a Mr. Holzhausen, a man of good address, and pleasing manners; he was by birth of Lower Saxony. The house was very neatly built, but lay, as most of those which we passed this afternoon, too open and exposed, upon the high bank of the river, so that one was even in a perspiration with only thinking of the hot sun glaring upon it. Such is the dryness of the soil on this side of the river, that there are no trees, but on the other, where the ground is watered by a number of little streams, they grow extremely well. It will, therefore, be perhaps thought strange, that the good people of the district have not rather placed their houses on the other side of the river, but the truth is, that the neighbourhood of the great cattle road is of so much advantage to them, notwithstanding guests being entertained in this country free of cost, that it supersedes the lesser consideration with regard to coolness and shade.

Besides, from the overflowing of the river, the inhabitants of the other side are frequently cut off from all intercourse with Zwellendam and the country
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

on this side; nay, from the number of little mountain streams by which it is intersected, they are sometimes unable to get even to their nearest neighbours. Another forcible reason for having placed their houses in such a situation is, that corn grows best on this side of the river; and on that account the buildings for their stores must be here. There are no springs: all the water used is from the river, but the district is not liable to the same droughts in summer as some of the more northern ones, or even as the Cape. Fertilising rains seldom fail of falling here at intervals. The country may, perhaps, be in some measure indebted for this to the high hills which border it to the north, as by the prevailing south winds the clouds are blown this way, and break over the mountains. The country from hence southwards, towards Cape Agulhas, is again very deficient in water, and scantily inhabited, but affords at the moist times of the year the means of feeding a few cattle. This is called a plain, because there are no high hills, but there are perpetual risings and unevenness of ground.

On the following day we suffered much from heat and thirst. In the early part of it we came to a farm where the people were busied in the corn harvest, but from thence the country became gradually more and more parched and solitary. The River-Zonder-end turns here somewhat in a northerly direction, and winds round the foot of a pretty high hill, over which, from the earliest times of the colony, there has been a passage much frequented in carrying on the trade for cattle with the Hottentot tribes: it has the name of Essaquaskloof, from the tribe which then inhabited the neighbourhood. These were the first heights on which we found the aloe perfoliata: the tall upright stems of these plants, growing to the height of a man, gave them when seen in the distance the appearance of men. We perceived, as we proceeded, very striking proofs of the dry season being already considerably advanced; vegetation seemed every where entirely at a stand, and large spaces were wholly covered with natron. Some little puddles of water which we passed were become so perfectly salt, that our horses, thirsty as they were, would not drink of them.

After a fatiguing ride of five hours we came to the Breede-river, which here first begins to deserve its name; the water was, however, so low, that we forded it without the least difficulty. In winter it is very deep, and
the current is so strong that it is impassable. A good hour's distance below, where the river has less fall, and the current is consequently less rapid, a ford has been made, by which the whole intercourse between the Cape Town and the eastern districts of the colony is carried on. An hour above where we crossed, the River-Zonder-end unites its waters with this river. After travelling another hour, over a somewhat better country, we reached a farm where we dined, and rested some hours. In the afternoon we again set forwards, and in the evening arrived at Zwellendam, where we were received by the inhabitants with the usual salutes of honour, and with the flags of the place displayed.

Zwellendam is the principal place of the district which bears the same name, and the seat of a landdrost. The first establishment here was commenced in the year 1740, and five years after, the then governor of the colony, Swellengrebel, raised it to its present distinction, calling it at the same time from his own name, and that of his wife, who was of the family of Damme, Zwellendam; for so it ought to be written, though it has long been called, and spelt, Zwellendam. The little church built at that time fell down towards the end of the last century, and in its place a larger and handsomer was erected in the years eighteen hundred and eighteen hundred and one, at the expense of the congregation, the government making them a present of the timber. It stands at the end of the street, almost opposite the bridge, and in its form resembles the reformed churches at the Cape Town, which are built in a regular cross. The expense of the building having very much exceeded the previous estimate, a considerable debt remained upon it, for the discharge of which the Commissary-general now made a particular provision.

The landdrost, by name Faure, a most worthy and respectable man, has a very pretty house, with a good garden annexed to it, and excellent outbuildings. The houses which belong to this place lie in part like those at Roodezand, scattered over an extensive circuit of some hours; the rest are in a row at one end of the valley, at measured distances from each other. The inhabitants of the distant parts are farmers, gaining their livelihood by growing corn, and feeding cattle; those of the row of houses may be called citizens, being handicraft-workers, and traders. The street runs between
two tolerably high ridges, that project from the mountains into the valley, and is enclosed by them as if between walls. A stream which flows from the mountain runs down the length of this street, separating it from the Drosty on the opposite side. A wooden foot-bridge crosses the stream, forming a means of communication between the inhabitants of the two banks, but waggons and horses must ford the stream; and it is sometimes so swollen that they are obliged to wait a whole day before they can cross it. From the bridge there is a very pretty avenue of oaks, three hundred paces long, to the Drosty.

As the only cattle road from the Cape Town to the eastern parts of the colony lies through Zwellendam, and the colonists in their journeys generally stop and rest here for a day, a sort of opulence reigns in the place. The waggon-wrights and smiths in particular, get an exceedingly good livelihood. We were very politely and handsomely received by the landdrost and his family: they all took particular pains to make our five days stay with them as agreeable as possible.

I availed myself of this long residence to explore the neighbouring mountains very diligently, my researches being particularly directed to a woody ravine, called the Duivelsbosch (Devil's-bush). But, alas! I found few plants in flower: the favourable time of year for collecting them was past. I was therefore the more assiduous in collecting seeds for the benefit of the government botanical-garden at the Cape Town, and of my friends in Europe. The stream which flows from the Devil's-bush, called the Klip-river, and which runs through the valley of Zwellendam, has a dark brown colour, probably from the roots of the trees amidst which the spring rises, but neither the taste or wholesomeness of the water is affected by it. From this circumstance it should seem clear that the country called by the first settlers Paradise, was no other than the valley of Zwellendam, since Ten-Rhyne makes use of this remarkable expression in speaking of Paradise, that it was so named on account of the beauty of the spot, although the water was not good, it being exceedingly discoloured by the argilaceous soil over which it flows.* That it is an error, however, to impute this effect to the soil seems clear, since the water is discoloured as it flows from the rock itself, before it has come at

---

all in contact with the argile. I have rather ascribed it to the roots of the trees, because I have generally remarked that all water flowing from these wooded clefts has the same tint.

On the morning of the thirteenth of December we left Zwel lendam, accompanied by the landdrost, who carried us to an estate of his own at about an hour's distance, called Rotterdam. He breeds a number of horses here, the country being particularly favourable for the purpose. Many persons of property at the Cape Town have considerable estates in the same spot, principally for the sake of the great advantage which this circumstance offers. Mr. Daniel Van Recnen, a brother of the three others already mentioned, has the best estate in the whole district. It lies between the left bank of the Breede-river and the sea-coast, and the horses bred there are so fine, that they are very much sought for at the Cape Town as riding horses. The vicinity of the sea may perhaps have considerable influence upon the vegetation, the soil being not so sandy as on the western coast. The climate of Zwel lendam is, besides, very different from that of the Cape Town. The parching south-east winds are scarcely known here; and if they do blow, they are almost always succeeded by rain. This must be understood to apply principally to the hilly part of the country, for along the south coast this wind is very strong in summer, and the bays of that part, therefore, which are almost all open to the south-east, are scarcely of any use.

Soon after we had taken leave of the landdrost, we came to the Buffels-jagd-river, (the Buffalo's hunt), which was almost dry. A dull, parched country succeeded, and after going up and down a number of small hills, about noon we arrived at a very poor farm. Here we found two colonists, who had come to meet us, and shew us the way to the best place for passing the ensuing night. They were two of the most considerable people of the district, the Field-commandant Lombard, and a certain Mr. Peter Dupré. We had seen a great deal of game this morning, amongst others a red-deer (Cervus elaphus), and ten harnessed antelopes * (Antilope scripta). These parts seem to abound with different kinds of antelopes, hares, and wild birds. We even sometimes saw zebras; but the beautiful blue antelope (Antilope beouphaa) is, as Mr. Barrow justly observes, almost entirely destroyed.

* These animals generally go in large bodies; in Senegal they may be seen sometimes in flocks of two thousand. They derive their name from being of a chesnut-brown colour, with white lines about the body, crossed in such directions as to have the appearance of harness.
Some were shot so lately as the year 1800, and their skins were brought to Leyden; but since that time they have not been seen. In the afternoon we passed through a country where we found the *Mimosa nilotica*, standing in the open field, spreading wide around the delightful fragrance of its full-blown flowers. Hitherto we had only seen this tree on the banks of the Karroo-rivers. These were besides much finer trees than any we had seen before: they were tall in the stem, and threw out large branches: the foliage was more luxuriant, and the thorns were neither so large nor so thick about the tree; yet it did not appear a different species from the other. Every where on the heights here abouts we met also with the *Aloe perfoliata*. After passing many little streams, flowing from the mountains, we came, just before dark, to the widest and deepest of them, the Duivenhok-river, which having crossed, we found ourselves at the house of our companion, Mr. Dupré, where we were to rest for the night. From the heat of the day and the length of our journey, seven long miles, the whole party were so fatigued, that most of them preferred their host’s good beds to the excellent supper he had prepared for them.

In this part of the colony there is a much greater difference between the higher and the lower class of the inhabitants, between the masters and the servants, both in their dress and in their habits, than in many other parts, particularly in the Roggeveld. The great trade in cattle, which places the farmers in affluence, and the much more frequent intercourse with the Cape Town, which gives them more idea of polished life, has introduced a sort of luxury and refinement among the higher classes, to which the lower classes, who gain their livelihood chiefly by cutting wood, cannot aspire. Most of them are dressed in fine linen or cotton, and their houses are neat and spacious. No part of the colony, indeed, is better supplied with building materials than this. Timber in plenty grows in the neighbourhood; the shells which abound on the coast make excellent lime, and there is scarcely any district of Southern Africa where stone and clay are not to be found. Even neat stalls the cattle are made here, a thing no where else to be seen; but by being shut up at night, they are preserved exceedingly from the murrain, since this disease is often produced by the noxious effects of the early morning dews.

Indeed, the whole of the place furnishes a very pleasing spectacle. The spacious house, the excellent out-buildings, the workshops for the slaves, the stalls for the cattle, a large garden, in the midst of which is a fish-pond,
supplied with water from the neighbouring Krombek-river, the neat lawn before the house, the sleek, fat cattle, all evinced an affluence and spirit of order which make a pleasing impression upon the mind wherever they are to be seen. The people here are far less bigotted than in some other places where we had recently been. They repeat their morning and evening orisons without suffering their devotion to interfere with the innocent amusements and occupations of life. In their conversation they are lively, even sometimes witty, especially at table, and that without being in the least elevated with wine. Indeed, the African colonists are a remarkably sober race. Out of ten colonists we may be pretty well assured that three at least will not drink either wine or spirits, and the rest will drink very moderately. One of them intoxicated is a very rare sight. Whatever Mr. Barrow may say of the Soopye as the favourite drink of the colonists, I can very safely affirm, that I never, during the whole time of my residence in the colony, saw three Africans born, in liquor. The Europeans who live among them as schoolmasters or servants, and who were probably formerly matrosses or soldiers, may be very probably often guilty of excess in this way; for it is an incontroversible fact, that the lower class of people in our quarter of the globe are far below the African peasants, in a true sense of decorum as to their moral conduct. I challenge every impartial observer who may travel through this country after me, to pronounce a different judgment. It must be remembered that I speak here as to the general habits of the people. I will not deny that there may be single exceptions; for these must be expected in all cases.

We stopped here a part of the following day, and found in the inspection of the premises, and in the conversation of the very intelligent people who were collected together, a high entertainment. The Field-commandant, Lombard, was one of those who in the year 1790, in conjunction with Mr. Jacob Van Reenen and others, undertook a journey to the very farthest extremity of the Caffre country, in search of the persons who were saved from the wreck of the Grosvenor East Indiaman. He related to us many anecdotes of this journey; and among other things, the conversation turned upon the unicorn, and the various opinions entertained as to the existence or non-existence of such an animal. Lombard declared he was not disinclined to believe in its existence, though he had never seen one himself, or knew of any body by whom it was reported to have been seen. What Mr. Barrow has said upon this subject seemed the
principal ground on which he rested his opinion; we shall in the sequel examine into the portion of weight which may be allowed to his reasoning. The Commissary-general repeated here the engagement made by the governor both at this and many other places in his journey, to give a strong new waggon with a team of oxen and all its appurtenances* as a reward to any one who should bring a complete skin of this animal, with the horn and skull-bone, to the Cape Town.

Our host, Dupré, notwithstanding his distance from Zwellendam, is overseer of the church there, and is obliged to attend service every Sunday. The journey takes from six to seven hours, so that he is obliged to set out in the middle of the night; yet, although near sixty years of age, he returns the same day. Among his slaves was a Malay more than a hundred years old, and perfectly blind: for the last thirty years he had been unable to work, but was not the less entirely maintained by his worthy master.

On the fourteenth of December we crossed the Krombek-and-Vet rivers, and stopped for the night at the house of Cobus Dupré, the son of our former host. We found here also a great number of the neighbours assembled, among others Dupré's father-in-law, Hilgard Müller, a very worthy old man, and another of the party who went with Van Reenen to the Caffre country in search of the Grosvenor's crew. This place had formerly belonged to him, and was no way inferior in the excellence of the buildings, and in the good order and regularity of every thing about it, to what we had seen at the senior Dupré's. The cows were here, as there, brought into covered stalls to be milked, a very unusual sight, since they are generally milked in the fields, and left loose in the kraal at night. He had near two hundred, all very handsome animals.

There was an apartment in the house appropriated solely to the performance of divine service; in it was an organ, on which one of Müller's daughters played very well. It was built in the place itself by a person of the name of Hoddersum, who was still living at the Cape Town when I quitted the country, continuing his trade, and gaining a very good livelihood by making harpsichords.

* Worth all together about five hundred dollars.
The country is here so fertile, that in a year when there is a tolerable supply of rain, wheat will yield seventy or eighty fold, and barley ninety or a hundred: in very dry years however the seed is scarcely more than returned. By more than one of these people it was remarked that the Lamziekte is not so frequent when there have been several rainy years in succession as after long continued droughts.

On the following day we rested some hours at the Zoetemelks-river, having previously crossed the Caffrekuils-river. At the house of a certain Fori, or Fauri, we first saw the manner of preparing the aloe-gum, which is very simple. The thick fresh leaves are gathered in August, September, and October; the sap is left to run out slowly, after which it is somewhat thickened over the fire, and then put into an ox-hide made into a sort of trough in a wooden frame, and put out in the sun, where the gum hardens by degrees. As this is an article however not much called for, and the low price at which it must be sold scarcely pays the trouble and expense of procuring it, the quantity prepared is now very inconsiderable. The soil is here throughout very dry, and destitute of trees; but to compensate these disadvantages, the road is excellent, almost as smooth and even as over the Karroo. The night was passed at the house of a certain Hannes Rensburg, upon the False-river.

The next day we were presented with a very interesting spectacle, which I cannot refrain from describing somewhat minutely. As we reached the summit of one of the numerous hills that lay in our route, we saw at a great distance southwards in the horizon the sea as we all thought, exactly as it appears seen under such circumstances. Delighted at a sight of which for two months that we had been travelling inland we had been wholly deprived, we exclaimed unanimously in a tone at once of pleasure and surprise—*the sea!* *the sea!*—A moment's reflection was however sufficient to convince us that since we were now only some hundred feet above the level of the sea, and at least at six miles distance from the coast, it was impossible that the sea could in fact be visible to us. Yet the more we looked, the more our eyes seemed assured that they were not mistaken; the impression was indeed so strong, that, almost in spite of myself, I remained for a while halting between belief and doubt; nay, I was at last only convinced that it could not be the sea from the unevenness of the horizon. The idea then struck me
that this appearance originated in a reflection of the sea and coast in the air above: many circumstances strengthened this opinion, and our guide, who was not unacquainted with it, asserted that I was perfectly right; but he said he never recollected seeing it so distinctly. I can scarcely express how much I was delighted at being presented with a phenomenon of which I had heard so much, yet never could form any distinct idea of it.

I now turned my attention to examining it more particularly, when I made the following observations. It was between nine and ten o'clock in the morning: the sun was to our left, about fifty degrees above the horizon; it was not itself visible, but its situation was plainly to be distinguished glistening through the thin vapour with which the air was entirely filled. The heat was 66° by Fahrenheit, and the peasants foretold rain, which, in fact, fell abundantly in the evening. Not a morsel of sky was to be seen, or any thing which in the least broke the mass of vapour: it was nearly a dead calm, a very trifling breeze only came occasionally from the quarter on which the coast lay. The appearance in the air still continued the same, and was exactly like the sea as seen from the Table-mountain at an immense distance. From a longer observation I was convinced that the unevenness we had observed in the horizon, that jagged margin which divided the dark blue of the supposed sea from the light grey of the heavens, was, in fact, the reflection of the coast, with its projections and creeks; and when I imparted this idea to my companions, they unanimously concurred in it, with applauses of my ingenuity. It seemed then as if the effect we saw was produced by our point of vision falling exactly on the spot, where the sea, which was mildly illuminated by the rays of the sun, was reflected back, as in a concave mirror, upon the heavens above, and it was only visible to us from the circumstance of our being enveloped in a thick vapour, which concealed the sun entirely from us. The phenomenon will not then be difficult to explain: it must arise solely from the relative height of the object with that of the reflecting medium, and upon there being such a degree of density in the latter, that it is capable of refracting the rays, so as to leave only the degree of light necessary for the object to be distinctly represented in the picture; something too must depend upon the relative situation of the sun and that of the spectator.

A more difficult question to answer is, how it happens that this phenomenon is so seldom to be seen on land; that it almost always appears over
the sea.* It seems to me that a sufficient reason for this may be assigned in the equal degree of denseness that the vapour retains over the level surface of the sea, whereas upon land, from the unevenness of the surface, there must be different degrees of heat and dryness; and these, though not perceptible, yet create an inequality which annihilates the reflecting powers; perhaps also the reflection is affected by the mixture of different sorts of gas proceeding from the same cause. Another cause may certainly be found in the chemical nature of the sea vapour. May not the luminous nature of the sea itself, the luminous properties of so many of its inhabitants, and the wonderful play of light at the rising and setting of the sun under the line, be by some unknown means connected with this very extraordinary phenomenon?

The mirage, as this appearance is called, has been described by various writers, as for instance by Gruber, Büsch, Woltmann, Wollaston, and others, but more particularly by Zöllner: he relates that in 1797, he saw from the mouth of the Elbe the Island of Heligoland, then at ten miles distance, reflected in the air. It seems probable that the stories which have been told of men seeing things at a very extraordinary distance (such a distance that it was impossible they should be included within the horizon), may be traced to this cause. Ælian mentions a Sicilian who had such wonderful acuteness of sight as to be able occasionally, when he stood upon the promontory of Lilybaeum, to see every vessel that went into Carthage; he could even distinguish them plain enough to count the number of sail. Now the promontory of Lilybaeum is thirty-two sea-miles from Carthage, and does not stand so high as that more than a third of this distance could be included in the horizon.

The most recent instance of this sort is related by a certain Botineau in a periodical publication called Le Spectateur du Nord, the number for the month of October 1802. He says that a man in the Isle of France had seen ships at the distance of fifty sea-miles off, and could even tell the size of them, and the

* What made this instance differ from any other occasion on which I had an opportunity of observing the mirage, is, that the place in which the reflection of the sea appeared was over the land, and even at some distance from the coast. This may however be accounted for, from the level nature of the country upon the coast, and from the faint sea-breeze by which the vapour was driven very much upon the land, without its level with the horizon being lost.
course they were going. This account is accompanied with testimonies
which almost remove the very natural doubts that must arise upon the
fact, yet a satisfactory explanation of it is wanted, and perhaps none so satis-
factory can be found, as resolving it into a phenomenon of the kind above
described.

We soon after arrived at a house, the owner of which, one Rensburg, was
very recently dead at the age of seventy: he had indeed been buried only two
days before. The widow, a woman of fifty-six, had produced seventeen
children, of whom fourteen were living, and all married: her descendants now
exceeded a hundred souls: a new proof of the almost unexampled increase of
population in the colony. The dead are here interred at the very spot itself.
To most houses there is a small cemetery adjoining to the garden: the rela-
tions and neighbours attend the funeral, and the corpse is laid in the ground
with great solemnity; the whole company singing a psalm over the grave.

Somewhat farther we came to the Tigerfontein, a place belonging to a
colonist by name Snyman. He was occupied in building himself a new
house, the old one being very much out of repair, and admitting the rain.
As the houses here are commonly built with clay only, a trifling neglect in
keeping up the roof will occasion the fall of the whole edifice. For the rest,
if proper care is taken in constructing them, they are exceedingly durable:
the Drostdy at Zwel lendam was built of like materials, though stone in plenty
is to be had there. The walls were constructed exactly after the manner called
building in Piseè, to which the dry climate here is particularly favourable. 1
I have seen houses of this kind which have stood a century, and which were so
burnt by the sun that they looked like tile. In this state no rain can injure
them, even the ruins might almost defy the influence of weather. We were
received in a small room in the old house, which was still left standing: an
old man was seated there, the elder brother of the Rensburg whose widow we
had visited in the morning. This unfortunate veteran had formerly lived near
Algoa-bay, and in the last dreadful war with the Caffres was plundered by
them, and his house burnt down: he saved himself by flight, but two of his
nearest relations fell into the hands of the enemy. Although through the
endeavours of General Janssens peace was now fully re-established, yet the
devastated country recovered but slowly, and was as yet thinly repeopled: most
of the places were so destroyed that they could not easily be rendered habitable.
The good old man doubted much whether he should ever live to return to his former dwelling. He related to us many instances of the horrors committed by these savages, and the farther we now went, the more were similar complaints a principal subject of our conversations with the colonists.

On the banks of the Gaurits-river, where we arrived a short time after our departure from hence, we were presented with the view of a very picturesque country. We had ascended a road sloping almost imperceptibly, and found ourselves on a sudden upon the declivity of a steep hill, below which, at a great depth, ran the broad bed of the stream. To the left very near us were lofty heights, between which through a narrow opening the river rushed with a great noise. Very near the entrance of the ravine, midway up the heights, was a small house delightfully shaded by oaks and fruit trees; above all, the dark-leaved orange: while to the right, upon the high sandy bank of the river, stood a large farm. We turned our horses sideward, and descending the steep road, crossed the river, which was now very low, though it is at some times a powerful stream: it is here a hundred and twenty foot broad, which is wider than any river we had yet seen. Its deep bed, the high sandy banks, and the trunks of trees floating down, shewed plainly the height and force which it sometimes attains. It rises so rapidly that travellers who venture to encamp for the night upon its banks, may pay their improvidence with the loss of all their property; happy if they can escape with their life; if not wakened out of their sleep in terror too great to have the power to fly.

A glance over the map will show my readers very plainly the reason of its rising thus hastily. All the rivers of the middle Karroo, the Chamka, the Dwyka, even many streams from the Roggeveld and Bokkeveld, break through at some point or other the vast chain of mountains which from Zwellendam to Sitzikamma bear the name of the Black-mountains, and uniting beyond them with the Kamnasie, and Elephants'-river, compose the formidable stream called the Gaurits-river.* The house where we stopped was at a considerable height above the stream, the former, which was built lower down, having some time before become its prey.

* This is a Hottentot name. The manner in which it is pronounced by these savages has misled many travellers, so that they have written it the Gouds-river (Gold-river).
According to what we were told by the colonists, it was now impossible, even without a guide, to miss the road; but whether it was owing to the cloudy weather, so that the darkness came on unexpectedly, or that we had not paid sufficient attention to their directions, we once more lost our way. We had been told that we were to reach our night quarters in two hours; three and a half had elapsed, and we yet saw no signs of a human habitation. A very heavy rain that fell, the first during our journey, which had surprised us in such a way upon the road, brought on the darkness suddenly, and wetted us completely through. Our ladies had set out in the waggon, and we had, as we conceived, reason to congratulate ourselves exceedingly that it had so happened. A stop was made, and I went with Lieutenant Gilmer to explore the country, while our corporal of dragoons was dispatched to see whether the waggons were following, or whether he could discover any traces of the way we had lost. After the lieutenant and myself had rode up and down nearly half an hour, without seeing any appearance of a light upon the heights, or discovering any thing like a dwelling-house, we returned back dispirited to rejoin our party. It was then determined that we should return to the farm on the Gaurits-river, and there stop for the night: though from the darkness, and from having to descend a steep hill, this enterprise was not without its perils.

We had not gone far before me met our dragoon on his return to tell us that he had not been able to discover any traces either of the waggons or the road. He, however, rode on again, as he was now sure that we were following him, but soon once more returned with the extraordinary intelligence that he had met the ladies, and young De Mist, who had gone in the waggon with them, on foot, and they were now, he said, waiting for us a very little way off. It was not long before we came up with them, when we learnt that they had been overturned in the waggon, but happily without receiving any injury. In hopes of reaching the place where it was designed we should stop for the night, they had got out and walked on while the people were busied in getting the waggon up, so as to proceed on their way. The night and the rain had in the mean time overtaken them, as it had us, and they had missed their way, which, perhaps, but that we had fortunately done the same, they might not very easily have found again. They now mounted some of our led horses, and we rode on together, making many observations upon our
adventure, half joking, half serious, and commenting upon the extraordinary
circumstance, that we should meet with each other so fortunately in a night
almost pitchy dark, in the midst of a desolate inhospitable region, unknown to
either of us, and both having lost our way.

At the same time we agreed to fire pistols at certain intervals, as signals to
direct any people who might be in search of us, and soon some young men
who had been working at the waggon came up, anxious, on account of the
heavy rain that had fallen, about the fate of those who had gone forwards on
foot, and bringing with them a little car which they had made ready in
haste. The ladies very thankfully accepted the offered kindness of these
good people, and getting into it, soon reached their proper quarters. We
ourselves arrived in safety not long after, notwithstanding the frequent
sliding and stumbling of our horses, it being now eleven o'clock, and we
ought to have arrived at eight. Lanterns were sent out to meet the
waggons, with the female servants who had remained with them, by the assist-
ance of which they too rejoined us in the course of the night.

We were now in the house of a widow by name Botha, which, although
tolerably spacious, had not sufficient room to accommodate such a number
of guests. Besides ourselves, the good woman had for some time lodged
several near relations of her own, whose habitations had been destroyed by
the Caffres. It would be difficult to give any idea of the confusion made in
the house by our late arrival. It swarmed with grown people, children, Hott-
tentots, and slaves; all ran one against other, and against the guests, whom
the bad weather drove all at once into the house to dry their wet clothes.
The children being waked out of their sleep by the bustle, began crying most
pitously, and the nurses to silence them made ten times more noise: the
women scolded our slaves for being helpless, and not getting things ready
for their masters half as fast as they ought; a number of gay young people sat
at the corner of a table laughing at our party, and at the colonists with us,
not concerning themselves with stirring a step to make way for the table being
set out for us: our young women servants were scarcely less in the way than
the slaves and Hottentots, for they must needs busy themselves with unpacking the things which had got wetted by the waggon being overturned.
At length, however, not without some trouble, order was established, our
supper was set out, and places were allotted where every one of the travellers
could set up his field-bed for the night. On this, as on several occasions, we
had to regret the want of straw, which prevails over the whole colony; but the corn being trodden out by horses so spoils the straw that it was impossible for our people to sleep upon it, otherwise they would often gladly have done so, when the field-beds were wet with the rain, or the waggons did not arrive in time for the beds to be of any use.

From this place it was necessary that most of our waggons should take a different road from ourselves, as they could not all follow us over the hills which we were to pass, if we wished to visit the coast, and examine the bays upon it. We therefore each put up as much linen as would last a fortnight, and with this, and some other things which could not be dispensed with, loaded our strongest waggon, while the rest were sent round by the Longkloof.

The nearer we approached to the coast the more level the country became, and the greater abundance of grass did we find, notwithstanding that the soil grew evidently much more sandy. It failed in proportion in springs, and the farms lay at a greater distance from each other. We stopped about noon at the house of a family, by name Marx, where we found a great number of youths and damsels: the youngest daughter particularly struck us all, from her really dazzling beauty. If the African young women had as much politeness and education as they have native charms, they would be perfectly irresistible. At the same time, their cheerful good-humour, their innocence and simplicity, has not unfrequently subdued the high polish of the proud European, nor have the instances been few, of the colonists' daughters being brought home by such, as wives, at their return from their travels.

We now saw almost daily a great deal of game, but the creatures were so shy that it would have required well trained dogs, and spirited untired horses, to be able to come up with them. In the remainder of the way to Mossel-bay (Muscle-bay), which was over a wide plain, we saw a great many antelopes, ostriches, and smaller wild birds. At length the glorious prospect of the sea opened upon us. The whole extent of Mossel-bay lay spread before our view. We hailed with transport the long desired object, and descended by a narrow sandy path to the shore of the bay.
The Government Magazines at Mosselbay.—The Dane Abre.—The Muscle Caves described.—Murray, the Englishman's, Coasting Trade.—Further Description of the Country.—Brakke-river.—Outeniqua-land.—Woody Clefts in the Mountains.

The house of the postholder at Mosselbay, who is at the same time overseer of the bay and keeper of the magazines, lies directly at the upper end, where the bay runs to its deepest recess from the sea. The government twenty years before had formed a project to make this bay a repository for corn and timber, that the colonists might be provided with a more ready market for both these articles, while at the same time the supplying the Cape Town with them might be facilitated by the establishment of a coasting trade. In 1786, a large magazine was therefore built, a hundred and fifty foot long, and thirty broad, which will contain from three to four thousand bushels of corn; this was suffered to fall into a very dilapidated state under the English government, but since the governor's visit it has been repaired, and is now in exceedingly good condition. But unfortunately from the difficulties of the coasting passage, occasioned principally by the dangerous reefs of the Agulhas bank, and the storms that blow from the south-east, these patriotic views are much disappointed.

General Janssens, in the last year of his government, again endeavoured to resume the project, but the loss of the colony put an end to his numerous plans for improving its situation. It is to be hoped, however, that the plan may be promoted by the English, since they have no want of coasting vessels, and their superiority at sea obviates in great measure the objections which lie against collecting magazines in open defenceless bays, and which have been adverted to in speaking of Saldanha-bay. The magazine was now entirely empty, and served a great part of our company as a habitation. The postholder's house is small, having been built originally only for a watch-house, so that there were but two chambers for guests, which were occupied by the Commissary-general and the ladies. The postholder is a sensible
active man, but lives here secluded from the world, and unwedded; he is a Dane by birth, and his name, Abuc. In his youth he was recommended to the government at Copenhagen, and under the protection of the celebrated and unfortunate Count Struensee, who made him his private secretary, a brilliant path to fortune seemed to open itself before him. The fall of his patron ruined all his prospects, and occasioned him to take refuge in this remote corner of the globe.

We stopped a day here to examine whatever was worthy of observation. With eager curiosity I hastened to explore the cavern known by the name of the Schulpegat (Muscle-cave), which, from Mr. Barrow’s description, seemed already familiar to me. It lies about half an hour’s ride from the postholder’s house. The way to it is by the shore of the bay, winding along, the path still growing more and more contracted, till it terminates at last directly beneath the high rock at the entrance of the bay, which the sailors call Cape St. Blaise. Ascending then a steep and narrow path, with the high towering cliff on one side, and a deep precipice on the other, we arrive on a sudden at the arched entrance of a cavern, the bottom of which is entirely over-spread with a very thick layer of muscle-shells. The breadth of the cavern is about twenty paces, its depth about half as much, and its height at the centre of the arch may be fifty feet. The sea is four hundred feet below, but comes so directly up to the foot of the perpendicular or almost overselving rock, that the foam cannot be seen in looking down from the cave. At the ebb long parallel rows of sunken rocks appear, with the foam dashing over them: it is this reef which breaks the force of the sea, and renders the anchorage within secure. The mouth of the cavern is to the south-south-east; to the right stretches the boundless ocean; directly at the foot spreads the whole Mosselbay; and in the dark offing the hills above Plettenberg’s-bay may just be discerned.

Fifty feet higher, directly above this cavern, is another, resembling it in every way, only that it is scarcely more than half as large: the ascent to it is not unattended with danger. It disappointed me very much, since not a shell was to be seen in it. This circumstance proves incontrovertibly that the quantity of shells found in the grotto beneath cannot be brought thither by birds as Mr. Barrow conjectures, for why should they not as well make a storehouse of the upper as of the lower cave. Besides, we did not find here
the least traces of any sea-fowl; a few swallows, which had made their quiet nests in the crevices of the grot, were the only animals that seemed to inhabit it. As far as I have had opportunities of examining the habits of the sea-fowl on this coast, particularly the albatross (*diomedea exulans*), they do not frequent high places, but rather devour their prey in the low recesses of the cliffs upon the beach. Not one of the shells besides appeared the least fresh; all were in a state of decay, and half buried in sand and dirt. I acknowledge, with Mr. Barrow, that it were contrary to common sense to suppose there ever had been a time when the sea came up to this cave, and the muscles are certainly the only trace remaining which could afford any ground for such a supposition. But I cannot assent to another ground on which he supports his opinion. I must, on the contrary, from my own researches contradict what he affirms, that in the Lowenberg, near the Cape Town, and wherever like caves have been discovered, abundance of live shell-fish are always to be found. I never found any such, though in consequence of having read his work, I examined all places of the kind very particularly. He has, besides, been rather guilty of exaggeration, when he says, the quantity of empty shells in the Muscle-cave is so great, that several thousand waggons would be necessary to carry them all away.* Ten or twelve would be quite sufficient for the purpose. The common opinion among the sensible inhabitants of the neighbourhood, and of the postholder himself, is, that this cave was formerly a common resort of the Hottentots, and that they lived very much upon the shell-fish, which are taken here in abundance. As the bottom of the cave is wet from the water that trickles down the sides, they very probably left the shells as a sort of pavement, which abated in some degree its humidity. This opinion, though not given as incontrovertible, has at least more probability in it than Mr. Barrow's.

On the walls of these caves, particularly of the upper one, I found a vast

* The German author in citing Mr. Barrow's work always refers to a German translation of it. It must here be remarked, that either the translator of Mr. Barrow's work, or Mr. Lichtenstein, has fallen into an error with regard to what Mr. Barrow says of the quantity of shells in this cave. He does not say that in this alone there are many thousand waggons loads of shells; he says: "Many thousand waggons loads of shells may be met with in various places along the eastern coast, in situations that are several hundred feet above the level of the sea."—TRANSLATOR.
number of lichens, hitherto unknown to me: some people assert, that from these, as well as from many other sorts of this species, excellent materials may be drawn for dying. They appear to me, from some trifling resemblances, to be between the *lichen parcellus*, and the *lichen roccella*. The postholder, at my request, promised to send me a quantity to the Cape Town, my friend Polemann, an able chemist there, having long wished to make experiments upon them; but as he has probably forgotten his promise, for none have ever been received, I can say nothing more of their properties.

The influence of the sea air, united with the low situation of the country, upon vegetation, is here very striking. It is particularly luxuriant in the parts that lie from a hundred to a hundred and fifty feet above the level of the sea: these parts are thickly grown over with bushes and shrubs. The *archuina bispinosa*, several beautiful sorts of *zygophyllum*, *pelargonium*, *roycna*, *rhus*, and others, grow wild promiscuously among each other: some of a considerable size, and the leaves quite a fresh bright green. Not less rich was the collection of insects I amassed here; I had, besides, the good fortune to shoot a number of pretty small birds which make their nests among the bushes, and which furnished me abundance of work in preserving and stuffing them.

Our host regaled us among other things with many sorts of fish, above all with oysters, which abound in the bay, and which, not having tasted any for so long a time, were now most welcome to us. Few of the fish were different from what are caught about the Cape Town, but the oysters were much finer flavoured; some were, however, we agreed, too large and too fat: we were even obliged to divide them, they were so large that they could not be swallowed at once. They cannot be had so fresh at the Cape, as they are not to be gathered on the neighbouring parts of the coast; they are chiefly brought thither from Hottentots-holland. Even here they are not always to be procured; only when at very low ebbs, the fisher slaves can go a great way into the sea to the oyster beds. In the afternoon, at low water, when we were bathing in the sea among the rocks, we found a little parcel of oysters in a cleft, but they adhered so firmly to the stone, that we could not break them off. The bay has its name from the superabundance of muscles found in it; though extremely good, they are seldom eaten but by the slaves, the oysters and other fish being very much preferred to them.
Mosselbay was formerly called the bay of St. Blaise, so named by Vasco de Gama, who landed here in December, 1497. He is commonly considered as the first discoverer of it; but it may, perhaps, be doubted, whether this was not the Angra dos Vaqueiros (Cow-herd Bay), which Bartolomeo Diaz discovered in December, 1486, or January, 1487. The true situation of that bay is very problematic, and it might not improbably be Mosselbay. In the first years of the Portuguese voyages to the East Indies, this bay was used as the general resort of the ships, and the place of re-assemblage for fleets that were separated. Afterwards, however, when in 1503, Antonio de Saldanha discovered the present Table-bay (which, as has been already mentioned, was for a century called after him Saldanha-bay), he gave the preference to that, and the bay of St. Blaise was wholly neglected. The first English navigators to the East Indies, Raymond and Lancaster, following the accounts given by their early precursors in the undertaking, entered this bay in 1591, but accident afterwards carrying the English to Table-bay, they have ever since gone thither from preference. Ten years later, Jovis Spilberg, a Dutch admiral, gave Table-bay its present name, and not long after Paul Van Caerden, who first took an accurate survey of the southern coast of Africa, with its numerous bays, changed at the same time the names by which they had been distinguished for Dutch ones: this was then named Mosselbay, instead of the Bay of St. Blaise. The angle which forms one entrance into the bay has, however, retained among sailors the name of Cape St. Blaise.

The figure of the bay, its geographical situation, the goodness of the anchorage, and other things interesting to pilots, are known in great measure from former writers; I shall therefore not enter upon the subject at this place, but reserve such observations as appear to me of importance to a future opportunity.

Before our departure, the Commissary-general received a visit from the secretary of the Drostdy at Zwellendam, Mr. Stockestrum, a Swede by birth. On account of his well-known probity, and accurate knowledge of the country, he had been appointed landdrost of the district of Graaf Reynett. For some years no one had been found who would undertake this arduous post, and it was therefore the more necessary that it should now be filled by a person of so much firmness, united with so much mildness of character. In his company was a young physician, who was established at Zwellendam,
but who occasionally travelled about the country to sell medicines to the farmers, carrying them in a little chest. They consisted chiefly of doses of emetics and cathartics, and above all, of the Halle medicines so much in repute here, and which are made up in abundance by the apothecaries at the Cape Town. He confessed that his principal trade consisted in the sale of these, and asserted that nobody could subsist in this country by the ordinary course of practice, since there was not a colonist who had not rather be his own physician, and would only in cases of extreme necessity send for assistance.

When we left the postholder's house, we pursued our way eastwards along the beach. A steep and rocky coast rises above the beach, and it is only at low water that the way we now went is practicable. In several places water trickles down the cliffs, which forms a sort of morass upon the beach, dangerous to those who attempt to pass it without a proper guide. In one of the clifts an Englishman of the name of Murray has established a little magazine, where he sells a great variety of objects of manufacture. He has a small brig, in which he brings things from the Cape Town, and carries back a loading of wood. His trade is chiefly in cloth, hats, silks, glass, and iron-wares; and although from the renewal of the war, so that he was likely to find difficulty in procuring his wares, he had been obliged to raise the price of them very much, and they were certainly extremely dear, yet we were glad to supply ourselves with many little things which we wanted, and which we found of great use in the remainder of our journey. The merchant had afterwards the misfortune of losing two vessels, within a very short time, upon the Agulhas reef, so dangerous is this place even to the most experienced pilots. The difficulties attending the coasting trade will always operate powerfully against the farther cultivation of the country.

Our guide having at length conducted us safely over the last and most dangerous of the morasses, formed by a little stream called the Geelbek's valley river, we quitted the shore, and came to a number of neat smiling farms. As in many other places we had found one particular family predominating in a district, its branches being spread all around, so here the family of Meier was the prevailing one. Wherever this is the case, more placability and good humour commonly reigns among them; they are more sociable, and less heard of quarrells and contentions about the boundaries of their respective
properties. By one of the Meier family, whose christian name was Klaas, we were regaled with an excellent breakfast of cold provisions, admirable fruit, and wines which might justly be called costly. Even though I should excite a smile in my readers, I must once more observe how much we were struck with the attractions observable among the female part of this family. We all agreed that we scarcely ever recollected to have seen more personal beauty than in the eldest daughter, a young woman about eighteen. Her whole manner and air had in it much more appearance of refinement than is usually to be found among the African damsels, and we really separated ourselves with reluctance from so lovely a creature.

Crossing the little Brakke-river, we came now to the house of a widow, called in the country Ter-Blans, but who we found was of French descent, and her name properly Terre-blanche. Here we dined, and the number of dishes set before us was greater than is almost ever to be seen at the tables even of the most distinguished bon-vivans at the Cape Town. We found that our hostess was celebrated in the country for her excellent table, and that she prided herself particularly upon it. She gave us almost every thing that the chase or the fisheries could furnish, with several sorts of vegetables, dressed in an immense variety of ways, nor would suffer such a thing to be mentioned as paying her. As a great rarity, we had in the dessert cream cheese, made upon the spot, and which the Dutch guests, who are extremely good judges of the matter, pronounced to be excellent. The attempts hitherto to make good cheese in the neighbourhood of the Cape Town have all proved unsuccessful, but this may perhaps be owing to the poorness of the feed, so that the milk is not sufficiently rich. Another curiosity which we remarked here, was a guitar, made in the country, of African ash-wood. This is a favourite instrument among the colonists, and is almost always to be seen in the houses of substantial people. It must be obvious from hence, that it is a great error to deny to these people any taste or relish for the polished enjoyments of life.

Behind this place, which is called the Reebok’s-fontein, we ascended a considerable height, from which we had a very fine view behind us of Mossel-bay. Cape St. Blaise has a very picturesque appearance from hence, while the large magazine looks like a stripe, and the fishing huts like spots in the dark rocky ground. The course of the coast, with its hills, clefts, and tufts of
wood, unite very beautifully with the back ground. We were too early to
cross the great Brakke-river, which lies at the foot of the hill where we now
were, as it can only be crossed quite at low water, and the tide was not more
than half down; we were therefore obliged to wait a considerable time upon
the bank, and even then the ford had in some places more than four feet water,
in others it had not above three. The mouth of the river is about a mile from
this place, and, like all other streams of Southern Africa, is closed by a sand-
bank, which in a strong south-east wind chokes it so entirely; that at the ebb
the water does not run out. If heavy rains fall, then the current of the river
gains such additional force, that it carries the sand out into the sea. An
eternal strife is thus maintained between the two bodies of water, which
differs in this respect from the strifes among mankind, that the gain of land is
here on the side of the vanquished.

The great Brakke-river divides the district of Mosselbay from Outeniqua-
land.* On the eastern bank there is again a considerable height to ascend,
at the summit of which is a wide-spread plain, intersected with a number of
small streams; this is one of the most fertile spots in the colony. The river
is now seen winding for a considerable length of way, till it is lost among rocks
overgrown with bushes and heath-plants.

The whole tract of land between the southern chain of hills and the coast
may be considered as a foreland, which from its low situation, from the neigh-
bourhood of the sea, and the peculiar character of the hills by which it is
bounded, may be rendered particularly fertile and profitable. Many circum-
stances concur to give the southern chain of mountains advantages not enjoyed
by the others, and which distinguish them entirely from the rest of the moun-
tains in Southern Africa. First, its course from east to west, so that present-
ing an entire front to the south, the heat of the sun has less effect in drying
the springs above, consequently more water flows down from them, which
nourishes the vegetation exceedingly. Secondly, the great height of these
mountains, which are upon an average from four to five thousand feet above

* The Outeniquas were a numerous tribe of Hottentots, who at the first planting of the colony
had their kraal at this place. The ou is here to be pronounced open ou after the Dutch manner.
It is written by some Auteniqua, which in the mouth of a German would be pronounced exactly
the same.
the sea, and therefore attract the clouds, which help to supply the country below with moisture. Thirdly, their vicinity to the sea, and the prevalence of the south winds, which gives a more humid atmosphere to the hills. Fourthly, as a consequence from these things, more profuse vegetation, and the nourishing abundance of wood in the clefts, which again produces a vapour that prevents the moisture ever being totally exhaled from the ground, or the flow of water from ever ceasing entirely. The places where this foreland is the most contracted, where there is the smallest space between the mountains and the sea, are always those whence there is the greatest supply of water, and which abound most in the wooded clefts. And again, where the creeks of the sea, projecting inland, come within a mile of the foot of the mountains, even the plain abounds with wood; in Sitzikamma particularly, the underwood stands so thick from the hills to the coast, as to preclude the road being continued along the latter.

In this way the particular nature of the country in Outeniqualand is sufficiently explained, since in no part of this district are the mountains more than three miles and a half from the coast. Numberless rivulets cross it in all directions; even in summer there is always abundance of rain, and the whole year through, the ground is covered with fresh plants; but the soil is poor, and is of that description that belongs to sour-fields: the different sorts of rushes and liliaceous plants exhaust all the nourishment, and prevent the growth of wholesome grass: the corn-fields require a great quantity of manure, and an evil, equal to any other, is the murrain, which all these causes combine to produce: this renders the feeding of cattle, which would otherwise be very profitable, extremely difficult: yet there must be some peculiarity of climate in the spot, which promotes the last evil, and to which it ought perhaps rather to be ascribed than to the nature of the feed, since there are in other parts sour-fields where the cattle thrive and prosper exceedingly. In this, as well as in some other districts that partake of the same soil, it is common to burn the lands every year, by which means they are manured, and the foundation laid for a wholesome vegetation. But this must be done with great caution, lest the fire should spread too far and catch the bushes, by which means it might be communicated to the forests, when incalculable mischief would ensue.
The principal object by which the inhabitants of this country gain a livelihood is felling timber in the forests for building, and transporting it to other parts. Permissions for this purpose are given by the government at the recommendation of the landdrosts and postholders, and on paying a trifling consideration. The woods here are much more extensive than in the district of Zwel lendam, and the Grootvadersbosch; the latter, on account of their much shorter distance from the Cape Town, have been so much cut down, that it is now difficult to find any trees which will furnish sound and strong beams for building. Even here, the timber begins so far to fail, that whereas formerly they did not cut any for beams less than thirty feet high in the stem, none of this size are now to be found, except by going so deep into the clefts that they cannot be felled without extreme difficulty and some hazard.

Among many small streams which we crossed this day, the Quayang was the most distinguished, which, though it runs almost unnoticed over the plain, when it wanders among the rifted rocks, presents many interesting and romantic pictures. It is the same case with another, which in the midst of its quiet course, suddenly comes to the brow of a rock, whence it rushes down, through a self-formed channel, with a considerable noise and foam. The rocks below these falls, from the force of the waters, are hollowed into basons, which seem almost as if formed by the hand of art. Another stream is called here the Black-river, the water being strongly tinted with vegetable particles which it collects in running through the woods. It is yet a matter of doubt, whether this effect is produced by the roots of certain trees, or whether, as some suppose, the tint is received from fallen leaves.

The government possesses a very considerable domain in Outeniqualand, which includes almost half the district; it is under the superintendence of a postholder. The same person has also the superintendence of several families of colonists, who, since the last war with the Caffres, have settled upon the territories of the government, and under certain restrictions have permission to make use of the forage around them, till the complete restoration of peace and quietude shall permit of their returning to their former dwellings. This mode of living upon the territory of the government, cultivating the land, and enjoying its produce without any property in it, or even being regularly tenanted to it, is called here an Erbe, in contradistinction to the tenure by
lese, when the domain is called a Lehnumplatze. In these cases a small house is commonly built, with a little garden, for which a trifling ground-rent is paid. Most of the handicraft workers and little traders in Stellenbosch, Roodezand, Zwel lendam, and Graaff Reyhett, have habitations of this kind. They are often to be found between the Lehnumplätzies; their number of course depends principally upon the population of the district, and it is much to be wished that they should in all parts become numerous. It cannot be denied that in many places the want of water must be an insuperable obstacle to a great increase of population, but on the other hand, there are tracts in which certainly too much land is granted to a single farmer; and in many places, where a single family only dwells at present, it is to be hoped that a century hence a whole village may have been raised. The government, from a more accurate knowledge of the borders, has turned its attention much to the approximation of the colonists, as a means of promoting the cultivation of the country; and certainly no country is more capable of cultivation. The abolition of the slave-trade will be a means of promoting industry, since the employment of slaves being necessarily circumscribed, the free colonists will in the end be constrained to learn the handicraft works now generally performed by them.

We passed the night at the government-post: the house is a very poor one in comparison with most of those belonging to the officers of the government, and, since the colony was in the hands of the English, has been very much neglected. The postholder was a German, Sebastian Fent by name, and formerly a sergeant in the Dutch garrison: the company very commonly conferred the office of postholder on meritorious subaltern officers. He had put his garden into exceedingly good order, and its flourishing state shewed plainly how much may be done with this indifferent soil by the aid of a sufficient quantity of manure: yet the neighbouring colonists all assert that the African soil does not want much manure, and will not even bear it.

As we were about to set out the next morning, a courier arrived with dispatches from the Cape Town, which required an immediate answer. I therefore employed the morning of this day, which was very rainy, in writing to some of my friends at the Cape, and in the afternoon, as the rain had ceased, went to explore the neighbouring forest. I took an old and sensible Hottentot with me as a guide, and arrived at it in about an hour. The number of bushes, brambles, and other climbing plants, which opposed our way, did not deter me
from proceeding. Among these the *Cynanchum obtusifolium* (a species of scamouny) was particularly abundant. This plant is here called *Pavia-nientau* (monkey's cord), and was running about in every direction all over the forest. Many sorts of asparagus were also among the plants which we had to break through; these are called by the colonists *Wagt een beetje*, (wait a little). I followed the path made by the wood-cutters, and as I contemplated the number there appeared of large oaks, sumachs, and a tree that is called here *Stinkholz,* I could not help expressing to my companion my surprise at the complaints made in the country of the want of wood. He told me, however, that among the trees I saw, the greatest part were either not of the proper length in the stem for making beams, or else decayed by the water, and perhaps hollow. Besides, when the expense of carriage was set against the price at which the wood could be sold, it did not answer to transport any but the best, since the price of the middling sorts could not pay their costs.

The young trees are too much overshadowed by the old ones to thrive well, yet at the same time it would be a work of such immense labour and expense to cut the old ones down and carry them away that it cannot be thought of. Thence comes it that the large trees are of exceeding slow growth. My guide's manner of expressing himself upon this subject was, that there was not a man old enough to remember them less tall and strong than they are at present: but to make amends, they are exceedingly hard and strong. A terrible enemy to the forests here is a moss, a sort of *lichen* or *usnea*, which covers whole boughs, particularly the lower ones, and in a course of years injures them so much that they no longer bear leaves, but decay and die. A forest in this state, on which the grey moss hung from the trees almost like withered boughs, was a sight which, alas! in the sequel of our journey we but too often saw.

* Called by Thunberg *Ilex crocea*, but it seems not yet systematically classed. Thunberg did not find it in flower, and I was myself equally unfortunate.
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

CHAP. XIV.

Kaiman's-river, and troublesome Passage of the Kaiman's Cleft.—Krakadaloze.—The Silver-river.—Zwart-river.—Daukamma.—Ruined Farm.—The Lake of Neism and the circumjacent Country.—Arrival at Plettenberg's-bay.

We left Outeniqueland on the twenty-second of December, and soon reached its eastern boundary, the Kaiman's-river,* having previously passed through the Pampoenkraal,† where Le Vaillant encamped for some time till a way was made through the Kaiman's-cleft, by which he could proceed on his journey. I must by the way remark that the French traveller could not have much occasion to give himself that trouble, since some years before the colonists had made a road through this dangerous cleft. In Sparmann's time there were indeed no means of passing it, and the river then bore the name of Keerom's-river, as appears from this writer: it is probable that Kaiman may be a corruption of the original name. In another respect Pampoenkraal is now become celebrated, since the Caffres in the late war penetrated even to this spot; they had also over-run and ravaged half the country along the coast, before the united power of the colonists and the English military could drive them back again. As a memorial of this invasion, as trophies, in

* This river is so called, because a large species of the Leguan is found in it, called here, though erroneously, the Kaiman. The latter name belongs properly to the American crocodile, a much smaller species than the crocodile of the Nile; but the Leguan is not a crocodile at all. It is, indeed, an animal of the Lacerta class, and amphibious, but perfectly harmless, living upon vegetables, earth-worms, and other insects. It is from three to six feet long, and has a jagged back, which gives it a very hideous appearance. It lives partly in rivers, partly upon trees, is mild in its nature, but so stupid, that it is said to be easily caught, yet it is very swift in running. Its flesh and eggs are reckoned delicate food.

† Pampoen is the name given by the colonists to a species of gourd, which is very commonly to be found here, and which appears to be only the common European pumpkin, Cucurbita Pepo.
an inverted sense of the word, the ruins of several buildings burnt by them are still standing.

On account of the really tiresome and difficult passage of the Kaiman's cleft, in later times a way has been cut through the wood, directly at the foot of the mountain, where the cleft is naturally less deep and broader. Yet on account of the number of loose blocks of stone, this new way has not yet been made passable for a waggon; and while most of our party followed it on horseback, we were obliged to send the wagons by the old road, which prolonged their journey an hour and a half. As I had, however, heard this passage described as extremely interesting, the cadet Le Sueur, the steward, and myself, agreed to accompany the baggage.

This cleft or ravine is one of the narrowest and deepest in the whole colony. It stretches southward from the foot of the hill towards the coast, collecting in its progress many mountain streams. It seems like a gulph formed by the hand of nature itself to preclude for ever all intercourse between two countries. On each side is a plain rising to a vast height above the sea, and looking on either hill over to the other, from any opening in the woods by which they are overgrown, it would be impossible at the distance only of a few paces to conceive them separated by such a tremendous chasm. Yet the industry of man has even subdued this vast barrier of nature, and notwithstanding all the obstacles presented, opened a path through the very barrier itself, and that not only such as may serve for the foot of the wanderer, but will even admit of its being passed by objects of the bulk of a loaded waggon.

At first the road goes very much up and down; and when arrived at a certain point, the guide recommends as a measure of prudence to dismount, and continue the way on foot. A steep height is then ascended, rising in the midst of the cleft, which had hitherto closed the view, and when arrived at the top, the way turns suddenly to the right, at a point where a prospect is presented of so extraordinary a nature, that perhaps the traveller will meet with nothing similar to it in any part of the world. The monstrous gulph is now directly beneath, and at the depth of a thousand feet below him the mountain torrent roars over its stony bed;—the walls by which it is enclosed are thickly overgrown with dark-leaved trees, which cast around singular and confused shadows, their branches almost closing over the stream, and scarcely leaving any spaces, through which the dark waters with their white foam
can be seen. The road now descends, and after having crossed the stream, ascends again a height, which, as we saw it from this point, I will not say appeared exceedingly steep, it actually appeared perpendicular; and it was not easy to comprehend by what force an empty waggion, which we saw coming down, was held back, so that it was not precipitated at once into the deep. In looking onwards to the right the eye was at last carried to the vast door through which the river rushes into the sea. Two overhanging rocks, the tops of which seemed to join far above the point on which we were standing, form this door, and through it was seen the wide-spread ocean, the farthest boundary of which that the eye could reach was on this fine serene day beautifully blended with the clear blue of the heavens. Below, at the bottom of the door, rushes in the foaming sea, mingling its green waves with the dark brown waters of the torrent.

The descent from the point where we now were could only be carried along the front of the height. The broken pieces of rock rising above the road, with the boughs of the trees entwined among them, have been formed into a sort of rough parapet, which guards the road on the side of the torrent. But the frequent use of the road, combined with the heavy rains, has in many places made large breaks in the parapet, so that the head almost turns giddy at seeing the depth below, without any guard to prevent the traveller falling down. The hind wheels of the waggons were locked all the way, at other times all the wheels were locked, and the waggons were partially unloaded, the men dragging after them the packages which had been taken out. Stout thongs of leather were fastened to the waggons on the sides towards the torrent, which were held behind by the men with all their strength, at once to keep them back as much as possible, and to prevent them from swerving to that side.

When the height is descended in this way, the torrent may be passed at ebb-tide without inconvenience. It just began to flow as we crossed, and it was a wonderfully grand sight to see the billows rushing in, and driving back the waters that flowed from the torrent. The road here goes for a very short distance along a narrow piece of foreland, just broad enough for two waggons to pass when the water is down. Here the oxen are allowed to rest a short time, and then begins the most difficult part of the whole passage to ascend the opposite height. This does not rise so high above the deep as that we had
The whole waggons, for among that number the lading of our single one had been divided upon this occasion, at length got over the most difficult part of their task, but the strength of the oxen was so much exhausted by the exertions they had been obliged to make in the midst of a hot sun, that they could not get on the rest of the way without a double Spann. The only resource, therefore, was for one waggons at a time to proceed up the remainder of the ascent, so that it was drawn by eight and twenty oxen, and thus singly the task was at length completed, three hours being however employed in it. I devoted this time to wandering among the bushes with which the rocks were overgrown. In one part I found a very good path, nearly at the top of
the rock, which led directly to the sea: I followed it, and at the end was presented with a truly glorious prospect. I stood upon a steep rock, at the bottom of which the waves were foaming, and around me were heights overgrown with trees and bushes, in a variety of forms, and making a most picturesque appearance. The height of this path, the beauty of the surrounding objects, and the shadowy coolness of the trees above, made it one of the most enchanting walks I ever took, and I earnestly recommend it to the notice of all future travellers in these parts. He who, besides, is anxious to collect plants and insects, by visiting the spot at a more favourable time of the year than I did, would doubtless find his wishes abundantly gratified.

Proceeding on our journey, we had two other ravines to pass, not unattended with fatigues and difficulties, though trifling in comparison with those of the Kaiman’s cleft. One of these is called Krakadakouw.* We passed this with the same good fortune as the former, and were delighted with the view at the end of it, over a broad and deep basin formed here by the Silver-river, and beautifully shaded by high trees. The bed of this river is a shining stone composed of particles of quartz and mica, and the water being remarkably smooth and clear, when the sun is full upon it the surface glitters like silver, and thence the river has its name. A very considerable layer of this beautiful stone stretches with an evident declension towards the east, along the coast in this part; it is higher about the Kaiman’s cleft, but at Krakadakouw, and some of the other clefts, it is nearly level with the surface of the sea. Directly beneath this layer are to be found large lumps of shining slate, sprinkled in a half transparent quartz, in crystallised laminae placed upon each other.

A short time before sun-set we arrived at the house of a certain Herz Grünstadt, a German baptized Jew, who entertained us in a wooden hut, his house having been plundered and burnt by the Caffres. The rest of our party, who went the nearest way, had arrived there about noon, and proceeded on their journey in the afternoon. They had not been without their fatigues and difficulties, and had crossed three branches of the Kaiman’s-river, before they quitted the woods, and got into an open country. The place at which

---

* A Hottentot name, signifying Maiden’s-ford.

C C
they then arrived was called Barbier's-kraal, because the colonist who undertook to cut this footpath through the woods, made a vow not to be shaved till the work was accomplished; and although he had many slaves to assist him in his task, his beard enjoyed a four weeks' respite. In climbing some of these heights, the horse of a colonist distinguished himself exceedingly by the dexterity he displayed. He was, therefore, not to be purchased of the owner, but the latter very willingly lent him to the Commissary-general for the remainder of his journey. The Commissary found the loan a very valuable one, from the steadiness and safety of his going, and from the long time he could hold out without being fatigued: he was after the conclusion of the journey duly returned to his proper master.

From our oxen being so uncommonly fatigued, it was late at night before we reached the Zwart-river (Black-river), on the other side of which stood the house of Janssen Weyers, where the first division of our party had arrived in the evening. We crossed in a little boat, and our waggons were unloaded, and floated over in the manner which has been already described. We stopped here a part of the following day, and saw among other things the three large lakes which lie southwards from hence towards the coast, and which are laid down with tolerable accuracy in Mr. Barrow's map.

The fields hereabouts afford abundance of grass, but not wholesome for the cattle. Weyers had, when he purchased this place fifteen years before, five hundred head of horned cattle, eight hundred sheep, and a hundred and forty horses, but the murrain, and the inroads of the Caffres, had so wasted his stock, that he had now no more horned cattle than were absolutely necessary for the use of his household; all the sheep were destroyed, and he had only one horse remaining. The inhabitants of this district live principally by felling wood, and sawing it out into planks, which are sent by the Long-kloof to Boventanden, or even to Plottenberg's-bay, whence they are forwarded by sea to the Cape Town. The fruit here is very indifferent, and the wine scarcely drinkable. A principal object of food is derived from the fisheries. Large animals, such as buffalos, wood-deer (antilope sylvatica), and spotted-deer (antilope corinna), which formerly abounded, are now rarely to be caught, and elephants are never seen at all. We found, however, many little household utensils made by these people from the horns of buffalos.
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

Soon after our departure from this place we had to cross a stream running through the Ruigte-valley,* as it is called. This stream is very much dreaded on account of the sharp stones with which the bottom is covered, over which the horses often stumble, or else their feet stick between them. Instances of mischance in this way occur particularly in the rainy season of the year, when the stream is swollen; and even now our guide congratulated us very much upon such a number of horses having passed without injury. The farther route varied very much, and very agreeably, being sometimes through pleasant woods, sometimes over open heights, whence we had often fine views towards the sea. From one of these we saw a part of the Green-lake, thus called, from the tint of its waters. The colonists believe the tint proceeds from its having a subterraneous communication with the sea, though it is separated from it by a pretty considerable tract of land, and the water is perfectly sweet and free from salt. The principal ground on which the opinion is defended is, that it has a periodical rising and falling, resembling in some sort the ebb and flow of the sea. But the lake lies considerably higher than the sea, and this appearance, if it be not deception, proceeds probably from some secret cause which may be discovered by future naturalists who have leisure to remain longer in the country than I could do.

Towards evening we reached the beautiful river Dankamma, which issues from a deep and wide-spread forest. At the place where we first saw it, and where, upon the heights directly over against us, stood the house at which we were to pass the night, raising its head above the trees that shaded the declivity of the hill:—at this place the river is so broad and deep that it cannot be forded. We were obliged to travel half an hour farther upwards to come at a ford. The road lay along the morassy bank of the river, among high trees: an immense quantity of the *cynanchum obtusifolium* (Monkey’s cord) was twining about in all directions. The beautiful touraco†

---

* Ruigte is the name given among the African colonists to a low wild shrub, but the proper meaning of the word is roughness, unevenness.
† The *cuvelis persa*, a beautiful bird, called by the colonists *loeri*, or *luri*. It has brilliant green feathers, with scarlet wings, a green crown tipped with red, and a red bill. Numbers are to be found in the woody parts of the colony; and in rainy weather, as the wet impedes...
sported among the highest tops of the trees, unfolding its scarlet wings to the last rays of the sun. After we had crossed the river, we again went through a similar wood, and afterwards ascended the hill to the house of Peter Terre-blanche, called Buffelsmark. As we were obliged to set off again very early on account of crossing the Neisna-river at the ebb, we only laid down upon the ground in our clothes, with a saddle for a pillow, and there took a short rest. The waggon had the misfortune to be overturned in the morass by the river side, and notwithstanding assistance being sent, it was very late before it arrived; — the waiting-maids only were in the waggon. The daughter of our host, a girl of thirteen, was once more an extraordinary instance of corpulence: she was so fat and so overgrown, that she might well have been supposed double the age, and she weighed already a hundred and forty pounds.

We set out again by moonlight. It was now three hours to low water, and we arrived just in the right time, as the morning twilight came on at the bank of this formidable river. It flows into a large lake called the Neisna, which is separated from the sea by a chain of rocks along the strand, the rocks having an opening in one place about two hundred feet wide, and deep enough to admit of the entrance of vessels, which here find a safe harbour. At the flow of the tide the water is five or six feet deep, and ascends quite to the river. As there is never more than from two to three feet water in this river at the ebb, its depth is less to be feared than the nature of its bed; this being a mixture of mud and quicksand, there is considerable danger of a horse sinking into it. We passed through without any accident, and pursued our way along the high sandy shore of the lake.

We now soon reached the ruins of a large farm on the eastern shore of the lake, known by the name of Melkhout-kraal.* This place was first made in the middle of the last century by a very active, clever, and industrious man, and, from its fertility, soon became one of the most celebrated in the colony. It belongs now to an Englishman, by name Holiday, who suffered terribly in

---

* Milk-wood, a species of euphorbia.
his property at the invasion of the Caffres. These savages had a particular
spite against the English, and let loose their wrath, without any bounds, upon
this farm. They not only destroyed and burned all the household goods of
the inhabitants, who had early saved themselves by flight, but razed the
buildings to the ground, a trouble which they did not often take. We
scarcely found a place among the ruined walls where we could make a fire,
but the vast heaps of rubbish, and the extent of ground over which the
ruins were spread, shewed at the first glance the dimensions of the buildings.
Four years had now passed since the place fell into the hands of these plun-
derers, and from that time no human hand had touched the orchards or the
vineyards, or gathered in the fruit. The vegetables grew wild in the beds,
and the paths were overgrown with grass and weeds. In the vineyard I
found a red-deer feasting upon the ripe grapes: I followed his example, and
found the flavour of them even in this degenerate state such as shewed the
excellent stock from which they were descended. The hedges of roses and
jessamine were now in full blow; the orange trees bent under the weight of
their fruit; and an endless number of peaches, apricots, almonds, and bananas,
hung there, either to fall of themselves, or to regale the few travellers whom
chance might lead to the spot.

Not the hand of art alone, and the industry of man, but nature seems,
imitating them, to have formed this singular abode in one of her most fan-
tastic humours. I could not help indulging myself in the vision that it
was inhabited by some benevolent super-human being, such as is created by
the fancies of poets or romance-writers. The free unconstrained forms and
luxuriant growth of the plants and trees destined for the nourishment of man,
the wild overgrown walks between the rose-hedges, which seemed to be trod-
den by no human foot, filled me with a sort of secret awe, as I stretched out
my hand to gather some of the neglected fruit. I conceived that I had just
the feeling which any one might be supposed to have, wandering in the
pleasure-gardens of some enchanted prince.

While my companions were enjoying the sweets of repose, I employed my
time in hastening along the margin of the lake to the door which nature has
formed, as mentioned above, to admit of its communication with the sea. In
somewhat more than half an hour I reached the point of the eastern pillar, which
may rise about a hundred and fifty feet above the sea; the wall on the other side
being nearly of the same height. The breadth of the opening may be about two hundred feet, but from the sunken rocks on each side, a great part of this space is lost to vessels going in or out. The water, as it rushes into the lake, comes with prodigious force, and for this reason the mouth of the Neisna, unlike those of most African rivers near the Cape, is not choked with sand, but is always navigable. Another cause that contributes to this is, that the bed at the mouth of the river is keel-formed, so that the water is not pressed together, and its force is by that means increased. These circumstances prove clearly how much Mr. Barrow must be mistaken, when he ascribes this opening to a different origin; the Neisna Lake, he says, by the repeated swelling of the waters, has forced a way out into the sea, and it is therefore probable that in time the Green lake will do the same, and be in like manner united with the sea. This he calls probable, but it seems far more probable that the aperture made in the ridge of rocks which separates the lake and the sea, was effected by a much earlier and universal revolution of the whole globe. In the first place, the rocks rising above the water at this opening, do not bear the least appearance of being worn away by the washing of the sea, which must necessarily be, supposing the effects to have been produced by the gradual friction of the inland waters. Besides, by only paying a little attention to the walls of this vast portal, and observing their equal height, and equal declension, the observer must be convinced that they were formerly united, and that the mighty rent which has brought them to their present state could only be effected by the same general convulsion which broke through so many mountains, and opened so many vallies and chasms in this country. In the third place, how can we explain on Mr. Barrow’s system, the depth to which this opening runs below the level of the sea at its very lowest ebb, for the power of the waters must have ceased at the mark beyond which they never descended. I am convinced that Mr. Barrow never could have given the opinion he has done if he had examined the spot accurately. As little can I concur in his idea, that the lake may in the end become an excellent harbour, how much soever I may be disposed to assent to his wishes on this point. But the narrowness of the entrance, the insufficient draught of water to admit of large vessels coming in, and above all things, the short duration of the point when the depth of water is sufficient for any vessels, are circumstances which must always render the ingress to this harbour very preca-
rious, and a ship may be obliged to tack about, or lie to for some hours, before it be possible to enter. The egress from it, particularly to loaded vessels, must be still more difficult, on account of the very prevailing south-east wind which blows directly against the entrance, and increases the danger of the vessels not being able to keep the exact channel by which alone it can be safely passed.

If the colony of the Cape should ever arrive at such a point of riches, of industry, and of population, as that the cost of the work would answer the object to be attained,—or should a more than liberal government be willing to take upon itself the enormous expense of such a work, the entrance might be widened by machines, which would raise from below the probably loose blocks of stone by which it is obstructed, and this would be the only means of making the lake of Neisna an eligible harbour. The anchorage in the eastern creek of this lake is tolerably good, particularly for small vessels. What it wants now in depth, there not being at the ebb more than from two to three fathoms water, would perhaps be in great measure corrected by clearing the entrance, which would improve the current, and perhaps in time increase the depth. The project of Mr. Calendar, the present possessor of Melkhout-kraal, for erecting dock-yards here, has many things to be said in its favour, and it is very much to be wished that it could be carried into execution. The first attempts must not however be expected to be successful, and their failure must not too much discourage the undertakers, since the experience hitherto of the efficiency of the wood about the Cape for ship-building has not been greatly in its favour.

What has been said by other travellers of the fertility of this neighbourhood, and of the many sources of industry offered here by nature, is very just; no part of the country is more calculated to nourish and support an extensive population. At present there is scarcely any land cultivated hereabouts but what belongs to the proprietor of Melkhout-kraal, but every branch of African husbandry may be carried on with the fairest prospect of success. From the height on which the former buildings stood, the view over the whole lake, with its half woody, half rocky shores, is very picturesque. The lake is from an hour and a half to two hours in circumference.

About a mile eastward from hence we came to another little wood, which, clothing two hills divided by a valley, has thence the appellation of de Poort.
This was the spot on which was acted in November, 1799, the first unfortunate scene of blood in the terrible war with the Caffres. It was the general signal of enmity on both sides, and may be properly considered as the beginning of the war. Three colonist families, of the names of Wolfard, Heins, and Botha, who, having learnt what had passed upon the borders, determined on quitting the country and taking refuge in the Cape Town, were here overtaken in their flight by a troop of Caffres, when some were killed, others severely wounded, and some taken prisoners and carried away. The consequences of this murder, and the revenge to which, without any great crime, it might here and there have given occasion, (although we have no authentic proof that such was the case, and the whole transaction remains very much in obscurity), occasioned the inroad of a numerous body of these savages, and ended in the destruction of one of the finest parts of the colony. It will be seen from these circumstances how incorrect Mr. Barrow is, when he asserts that the savages were excited against the English government by the colonists. It was unfortunate that their invasion happened at the same time with the tumultuary movements among the inhabitants of Graaff Reynett, and the history of these occurrences becomes extremely involved, from the circumstance of there being three different powers in contention at the same time. All that I have been able to accomplish in elucidating the matter shall be given hereafter.

In the afternoon of this day, after a fatiguing ride in extreme heat, over a flat dry country, we arrived at Plettenberg's bay.
CHAP. XV.

Description of Plettenberg’s Bay, and stay there.—The Postholder Medling.—Journey over the Black-mountains to the Long-kloof.—The Pisang-river.—Diana’s Bath.—Augusta’s Rest.—Matthias Zondag.—Description of the Long-kloof.—Conrad Buys.—The deaf and dumb Man, Gildenhuis.—Celebration of the New Year.—The Field-cornet Rademeier.

The form of Plettenberg’s bay has a striking resemblance with that of Mosselbay: indeed, almost all the inlets on the southern coast have in figure the same resemblance to each other. They have generally on the western side of the entrance a projecting rock, a branch from the mountains, which is a great shelter from the force of the sea, but which ends commonly in reefs underneath the water. All these capes are the termination of rows of hills running in parallel directions, and cutting the southern coast into many pointed angles. A glance upon the map will explain my meaning more clearly. Cape St. Blaise is the outer point of the row of hills which stretches from the Krombek-river east-south-east, and the Robbenberg (Seal Cape) is the terminating point of another chain, a part of which forms the separation between the lake of Neisna and the sea. The great chain which lies behind this, and through which runs the Long-kloof, is lost in the Bay of Content, or Kromme-river’s bay, and with its two principal arms forms this inlet, the northern one of which spreads farther along the coast, and at length, as the Cape des Recifs, separates Algoa bay from the ocean.

In this way the whole southern coast of Africa has a regular declension from west to east towards the horizon, so that the eastern part sinks into the sea. In surveying the coast from the Table-mountain, at the height of about fifteen hundred feet above the sea, the place where the granite ceases, which is about the Kaiman’s-river, will be found not more than fifty feet above the sea at its lowest ebb, and between Plettenberg’s bay and Algoa bay, the sand-stone layer, which at the Cape rises to the height of two thousand five hundred
feet above the sea, is upon a level with it. It is, perhaps, from this very cause that the eastern part of the coast is so much better watered and more fertile than the other side of the colony. Hence too is clearly explained the reason why the Caffre coast is so dangerous to ships coming from Asia, since all the parallel chains of mountains in Southern Africa end in reefs below the surface of the sea, running in an oblique direction against the current of the water (for the current comes in a north-easterly direction towards the coast); thus the unwary sailor is driven directly upon the reefs, from which he supposes himself yet many miles distant. The very incorrect manner in which the Caffre country is laid down in most of the charts of this coast, being placed far too much westwards and northwards, is indeed a principal cause of the many shipwrecks which have happened upon it.

A similar, yet less high chain of rocks than that which separates the lake of Neisna from the sea, runs along the northern shore of Plettenberg’s bay, and encloses a lake, through which the Keureboom-river flows, and, as at Neisna, empties itself by a narrow channel into the bay. But this lake, on account of its shallowness at the entrance, is unnavigable even for the smallest vessels, and is only valuable from its abundance of fish. At the western end of it stands the house of the postholder. The person who at present enjoys this office is by birth of Swedish Pomerania, and his name is Meding. He lives here with a very amiable family in a very good house, built by himself in the European taste. Besides being postholder, he is overseer of the adjacent woods, and in this office has made himself extremely useful to the government; indeed, from his strict integrity and extensive knowledge, he is universally esteemed. Like the Dane Abue, in his early years he received a scientific education; he studied at Griesswald, and after many remarkable turns of fortune, at length in this remote spot found a scene on which his genius and activity could be displayed. A German traveller, who under favourable circumstances should travel over the European colonies in the other quarters of the globe, and who does not fear a certain degree of indiscretion, might compose a very thick and very interesting volume, in detailing the history of his fellow-countrymen dispersed over the colonies of the naval powers. The number of Germans in the colony of the Cape alone is pretty considerable, and my intercourse with several of them in the course of my travels afforded me many very pleasant and interesting hours.
The woods begin at not more than a quarter of an hour's distance from the postholder's house. They run northwards towards the mountains, and are so rich in natural rarities, that I earnestly recommend future naturalists visiting the southern coast of Africa to devote a longer time to this country than it was in my power to do. Although during the three days that we remained here I was indefatigable in collecting the treasures it afforded, and brought home many beautiful specimens, yet was the number that escaped me much greater. I wished earnestly that it had been possible for me to remain here several months, or even a whole year, thoroughly to study a country which travellers hitherto have visited so hastily, or even totally neglected. In particular, I saw and pursued some butterflies that equalled those of the West Indies in size and beauty, and which I can safely affirm are not included in the system. What an endless treasure of observations might be made upon the vegetable kingdom, particularly upon the now almost unknown sorts of large trees with which this country is richly stored, as well as upon the natural history of sea animals, whether fish, insects, or reptiles, assisted by the experience of a man of Meding's knowledge and activity.

On the bay, not far from the sandy landing-place, is the government magazine of wood, a not very old, but an almost fallen and useless building. The builder, who was then employed by the East-India Company, very absurdly placed this building directly against a rock, down which the water is constantly running, without any provision being made for its going off; all the beams are therefore decayed, and the greatest part of the thatch fallen in. People were at this time employed in building a new magazine in a better style, orders for which had been given by General Janssens in his journey. The landing-place is a poor one, and only to be distinguished by two very small rocks which rise on each side of it. The sea runs very high almost all the year, directly into the bay, so that the surf, even in calm weather, is sufficient to render the landing difficult. The anchorage is very good, but on account of the force of the waves the vessels must be anchored with exceedingly strong cables, else they are in danger of slipping the cable, and being driven on shore. Water is not here very abundant; the stream at the landing-place will not supply more than from seventy to eighty barrels of water daily. The timber and planks with which ships are to be freighted are
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

floated into the water, and then towed by boats to the side of the vessel to be taken on board. It has often been proposed to erect saw-mills at Plettenberg's bay, but no convenient spot for the purpose has yet been found in the rivers about; most of them are too dry in summer, and they are often too much swollen in winter: it is the same case with the wind; there is commonly either too much or too little of it.

In returning from an excursion we had made to some distance from the postholder's house, we crossed a stream called the Pisang-river: it has this name from the profusion of wild Pisang, as it is here called, *strelitzia alba*, that grows upon its banks. It should appear, therefore, as if this was the native country of the beautiful plant so much admired in Europe, under the name of *strelitzia reginae*. I was not so fortunate as to find any of the latter wild; I only saw it in blow in some gardens at the Cape Town.

The soil is not less fertile about Plettenberg's bay than in Outeniqua-land, though the fields are almost all sour. The difficulty of finding a sale for the fruits of their industry is a great damp upon that of the colonists, both in this district and in Outeniqua-land: they almost all gain their livelihood by felling and sawing out timber, and cultivate no more corn and fruit than they can consume themselves. On the high hills, sweet grass grows in tolerable plenty, and some of the farmers there feed a considerable number of cattle. From Mosselbay hither we saw no more aloeas; they cease where the woods and sour-fields begin; they are again, however, to be found on the high naked hills to the north of Plettenberg's bay, but of a sort scarcely good for any thing as to the sap they yield. The *aloe perfoliata* is exclusively an inhabitant of Zwellendam, and some spots in other remote districts.

The impenetrable forests which occupy the space here eastward, between the mountains and the coast, precluded our following the course of the latter any longer. We turned therefore northwards, as we proceeded upon our journey on the twenty-eighth of December, to pass over the high hills which lay between us and the Long-kloof, where we were to meet our waggons: we had been separated from them ever since the seventeenth. Although the distance was not more than between seven and eight miles, the road was of such a nature, that we could not hope to perform the journey in one day, but thought it prudent to provide for its continuing two days. Before we
reached the foot of the mountains, we crossed many little nameless rivers, and went through several outskirts of the forests; we also passed two farms, where we first saw a specimen of the precautions which had been taken against the inroads of the Caffres. They consisted in high earth walls, run up all round the house at the distance of five or six feet from it: at the four corners were a sort of towers, with port-holes for guns, resembling bastions, which gave the whole the appearance of a fortification: the opening opposite the house door could in time of danger be barricadoed. Many farmers by this kind of fortification saved their houses. In the way from hence to Algoa bay we found almost all the houses put into a like state of defence; but we learnt that when the Kaffers did get possession of one of these defended houses, their rage was vented upon it much more furiously than upon the free-standing ones.

Under the conduct of Meding we began the ascent of the mountains. At first they consist of a number of ridges, running parallel with each other from west to east, with considerable vallies between; but each ridge is higher than the former, and the vallies between are constantly more and more contracted. The roads wind carefully just below the brows of the hills on narrow projections, in many places looking down a steep precipice, with a foaming mountain torrent at the bottom, almost turning the head giddy. For nearly half the way we were obliged to dismount, as the least false step in the wearied horse might plunge both him and his rider into the depth below. The horses themselves, unaccustomed to the scene, and seeing the danger, go with a timid insecure step, leaning always to the side of the ridge: if the weather be wet, this way is impassable from the great danger of slipping. In descending into the vallies, sometimes a leap is to be made down a ledge of the rock like a step, and it is then necessary to leave the horse entirely to himself, and in ascending, it is scarcely possible to get on more than twenty steps without stopping to take breath. We lightened the ascent to ourselves somewhat, by letting our horses go loose, and driving them before us, when taking fast hold of the tails, we made them drag us forwards. The streams which flow through these vallies have their course eastward, joining at last the Keureboom-river. The principal arm of the latter, which we crossed in the third valley, is tolerably deep and broad, and when it is much swollen
by rains, overflows the whole country between Plettenberg's bay and the Long-kloof.

On the heights we found again different sorts of protea, particularly the grandiflora, which is here deformed in a very extraordinary manner by the sting of an insect, to as bad a degree as where gall-nuts are formed: the branches break out into knots, from which twigs and leaves come out without number, but exceedingly small. At a distance these trees appear as if they were covered with the mistletoe, or some other parasitical plant; but when examined nearer, it proves to be a ball of little plants, exactly of the same nature as the large bough. Several sorts of brunia and phylica were now in flower, and their delicious odour had attracted many beautiful insects about them. A sort of bee peculiar to these parts makes the most excellent honey from these flowers, which it stores in the hollows of trees, or in rents in the rocks. It is entirely white, and the wax cells are so thin, that in taking the honey, they melt with it, and may be poured easily into a flask. It is so mild and delicious, that I thought the honey of Hymettus could scarcely be more so. It is eagerly collected by the colonists in the Long-kloof, and used by them very much instead of sugar.

When we had ascended the fifth height, and cast a look back to the coast, from that, as we had from every former one, bidding farewell to the sea for that day, we stopped in a romantic wooded valley, in which we were to pass the night. Our waggon had been sent on the day before by a very circuitous road, but we had met it in the last valley through which we passed; however, on account of the ruggedness of the way, it was now very far behind, and we were overtaken by a heavy rain, so that we were all completely wet through. We sought shelter under the thickest of the trees, and soon came to a clear mountain stream, which falling over blocks of slate from one to another, in the manner of a cascade, and sunk beneath the dark shade of trees richly clothed with leaves, presented a most beautiful picture. The place is called Cloetes-kraal, from a Hottentot family of that name who once resided here, but it pleased the party to give it a poetical name, since we all agreed that the spot itself was highly poetical, and we called it Diana's bath. The few tents we had were very insufficient to shelter us entirely from the heavy rain, and we ate our supper not without some anxiety about our next day's
journey. The rain, however, ceased soon after sun-set, and before we laid ourselves down to rest, our clothes were well dried by the slaves at a large fire which they made.

Our horses and oxen being extremely refreshed by the excellent grass which the spot afforded, they and we set off the next morning with renewed powers, to encounter a route of even greater fatigue than the preceding day. The nearer we approached to the highest elevation of the mountains, so much the more gigantic did the whole mass appear, so much the more rugged were the sides, so much deeper and wilder were the valleys. The paths along which we rode, and which are seldom trodden by any human being, except now and then a solitary herdsman, driving his cattle to graze, were like those of yesterday, narrow and winding, as from the brows of the hills they descended to the vast depths below. Both far and near we saw woods which had probably stood for centuries, defying the axe, from the difficulty attending their removal. After many almost indescribable difficulties, and much fatigue, yet sweetened by the sight of nature in her most gigantic and most ancient forms, we saw the last valley at length before us, and began descending into it by a steep path enclosed on both sides with shelving rocks, sliding at every moment over loose stones. On the side, projecting from another mountain far into the valley, rose a high and remarkable rock, which, on account of its resemblance to a pulpit, is called by the herdsmen the Prediksteel.

By a less steep path, we arrived about noon at the lowest depth of the valley, where a shady grove and a crystal stream invited us to take the repose we all very much wanted. The inhabitants of the Long-kloof fetch their timber for building from this valley, and from their vexation at the labour with which it is attended, they have given it the name of Moordeenarskuil (the murderers’ hole). Our chief, in gratitude for the refreshment it afforded us, and particularly our almost-exhausted ladies, named it in honour of his daughter, Augusta’s rest. The remainder of the provisions with which we had been supplied by our kind host at Plettenberg’s bay afforded us an excellent meal, which we took lying at the foot of an African oak, at least a century old, surrounded by some of the most wonderful among the wonders of nature, and enjoying much cheerful and instructive conversation. Almost close to this spot we found the fresh traces of an African buffalo, and farther on, the bushes trodden down, pointed out the way by
which he had penetrated into the thicket. Elephants are known also to inhabit these vallies, and are sometimes seen five or six together.

Steeper, and from its length much more fatiguing, was the last hill which we had now to ascend. We were two hours reaching the top, but from thence we had a fine view over the mountains we had passed, with Plettenberg's bay stretching beyond them. We descended now almost imperceptibly, and soon arrived at the house of Matthias Zondag, where our waggons had been already arrived some days. This place is called Avontuur (Adventure), and lies about the middle of the Long-kloof, at its highest point. The Long-kloof is a valley formed by two parallel rows of hills: it is in few places more than half a mile broad, but is nearly thirty miles in length; and if the valley of the Kromme-river be included, which is indeed a continuation of it, the entire length will be forty geographical miles. The whole chain of mountains, of which the Long-kloof forms a part, runs without interruption from Roodezand to Algoa bay, a length of more than eighty miles, and bears the general name of the Black Mountains. Particular parts have names by which they are otherwise distinguished, but many parts of these mountains deserving of distinction remain still unoccupied and nameless, and will still be so, till the period shall arrive when the colony will be universally cultivated.

The Long-kloof, notwithstanding its elevated situation, is well supplied with water, and in many places the way is rendered fatiguing by the morassy nature of the ground. Through the whole length of it, houses are to be met with in regular distances of about an hour from each other, which is a certain proof of fertility, although the people complain that they are situated too near to each other. Corn and fruit will grow exceedingly well here, but from circumstances already often mentioned, they are little cultivated. The wine is very indifferent, but the dried fruits are excellent: the raisins are particularly celebrated. Horned cattle, butter, soap, and hides, are the products principally brought to market from hence. The colonists of the place are a good-natured, friendly race, without any overstrained piety, and with a tolerable degree of education. From the houses, the clothes, the tables, it is evident that they are in affluence, and procure with facility the wants, and even some of the luxuries of life.

As the waggon, which we again quitted at Diana's bath, on account of the great circuit it was obliged to take, did not rejoin us till the second evening,
when much was to be done to put it in order for setting forwards again, and as many other provisions were to be made for our future journey, we were obliged to remain here two days. During this time, the neighbouring colonists came in great numbers to visit the Commissary-general, when, according to custom, they had many petitions, representations, and complaints to make to him. What inclined him principally to lend a very attentive ear to these things, which often belonged more properly to the inferior jurisdictions, was the opportunity it gave him of explaining more clearly to many persons the principles of the new Dutch government; to recommend patience, mildness, and forbearance towards the people under them; and above all, to excite them to a higher degree of industry than had been hitherto in general exerted among the colonists, particularly among those of the more remote districts.

The sequel has shewn that these endeavours, in which he had been preceded by Governor Janssens in his journey, were not without the desired effect: indeed, the influence which they had in the principal points upon these, somewhat rough it is true, yet, according to my opinion, not wholly uncivilised men, was among the happiest consequences of this journey. The English government failed indisputably in nothing so much as, that despising the gentler means of persuasion and mildness, they had recourse at once to harsh measures;—to the inconsiderate rigour of those who were employed by them is perhaps principally to be ascribed the refractoriness shewn by the colonists. They were in a sort of state of insurrection when the colony was taken by the English, and being still more irritated and incensed by the harsh behaviour of those who were sent among them by the conquerors, it is not surprising that they appeared to Mr. Barrow in the unamiable colours under which he has represented them in his writings. That he should involve all in one general censure was however not quite consistent with candour, and he has thereby laid himself open to the censure of having sought an almost unmanly retribution, for the slight shewn to him personally by individuals.

If the peasants, who might perhaps be injudicious, and ill-informed as to their true interests, and who were besides over-heated by worthless people, had been treated with mildness, and had not seen foreigners and persons whom they hated put over them, but had seen their magistrates chosen from among
the impartial and well-instructed inhabitants of the colony, and enough of this
description were to be found, it is probable that much mischief might have
been spared. All the disturbances in Graaff-Reynett, the war with the
Caffres, and the arming of the Hottentots against the colonists, might have
been averted; or, if lenient means at length proved fruitless, the proceed-
ings of the English government, at least in the punishment of the leaders,
would have been defensible, not only on the grounds of necessity, but on
those of justice.

Among the discontented was then a man, whom his fate, hitherto, and the
part he took in the Caffre war, has rendered celebrated. Conrad Buys, an
African born, who had a small farm in the district of Zwellendam, was in the
year 1795 one of the warmest patriots, as they called themselves, and opposers
of the Orange principles. When the colony was taken by the English, he fled
to the Caffres; whether it was, as his defenders assert, entirely from dislike of the
new government, or, as others will contend, from fear of punishment, I will not
pretend to determine. The same powers which had raised him to so much
distinction in the assemblies of the insurgents, his great strength of body, a
countenance full of courage and ardour, a daring and active mind, with superior
eloquence of speech, soon acquired him equal distinction among the savages.
He above all things so entirely gained the confidence of the mother of their
King Geika, then a minor, that a sort of marriage was concluded between
them, after the manner of the Caffres, and in a short time he shared with
this woman the almost unbounded influence which from her rank as well as
her prudence she had obtained over the whole nation. The brother of her
deceased husband was then endeavouring to deprive his nephew of the sove-
reignty, or at least to separate himself, with a numerous body of adherents,
from the principal tribe; but with the assistance of Buys the prudent mother
contrived to satisfy her brother-in-law, and make him preserve at least an
external friendship.

A year after the flight of Buys the Caffre war began, but what part he had
either in its origin or continuance it is not easy to decide. That he stirred
up the Caffres against the English is very probable, but it is not at all likely
that the desolation of the country, and the destruction of the dwellings of the
colonists, was promoted by him, or that he encouraged the horrors of which
the Caffres were guilty towards his former friends and companions. It is very
certain, that during the whole war he remained quietly at home with his queen; and it is certain also, that her's and the young king's party took no share whatever in the disturbances. It was the tribes of which Sambeh, Conga, and Jaluhsa, adherents of the Pretender, were the chiefs, who fell with so much fury upon the colony, marking their footsteps with blood and murder. It is even much to be presumed, that if Buys had any share in the instigation of the war, his purpose was to occupy the uncle of his ward, to remove him and his adherents to a distance, thereby to weaken his influence, and in his absence to strengthen and confirm the power of the young king.

Many other circumstances concurred to bring on the evil, and without his interference there is no doubt that it would have taken place. Among these may be reckoned first, the desire of plunder common to all the Caffres, created perhaps principally by an increasing population, with too little means of supporting it: secondly, individual acts of power, and arbitrary instances of vengeance from the colonists: and thirdly, the unstable measures of the new, half-formed, ill-instructed, English government.

As long as the English retained possession of the Cape, Buys remained among the Caffres, and continued to be held in great respect and esteem by them. General Janssens found him still there in the year 1803, when he concluded a peace with Geika. His whole behaviour hitherto appeared however too ambiguous, and the influence of a person of his talents and powers over a numerous and warlike nation appeared too dangerous to see with indifference the continuation of his connection with these savages, General Janssens therefore stipulated for his return to the colony, in which he acquiesced willingly. A residence was awarded him near the place where we now were, and our chief availed himself of his being in the neighbourhood to acquire from him much interesting and useful information respecting the Caffres, and the history of the late disturbances.

He was invited to meet us, and came on the thirty-first of December. The representations which rumour, too much addicted to exaggeration, had given us beforehand of this extraordinary man, were corrected from the moment of his entrance. His uncommon height, for he measured nearly seven feet; the strength, yet admirable proportion of his limbs, his excellent carriage, his firm countenance, his high forehead, his whole mien, and a certain dignity in his movements, made altogether a most pleasing impression.
Such, one might conceive, to have been the heroes of ancient times; he seemed the living figure of a Hercules, the terror of his enemies, the hope and support of his friends. We found in him, and it was what according to the descriptions given we had little reason to expect, a certain modesty, a certain retiredness in his manner and conversation, a mildness and kindness in his looks and mien, which left no room to suspect that he had lived several years among savages, and which still more even contributed to remove than his conversation the prejudice we had conceived against him. He willingly gave information concerning the objects upon which he was questioned, but carefully avoided speaking of himself and his connection with the Caffres. This restraint, which was often accompanied with a sort of significant smile, that spoke the inward consciousness of his own powers, and in which was plainly to be read that his forbearance was not the result of fear, but that he scorned to satisfy the curiosity of any one at the expense of truth, or of his own personal reputation, made him much more interesting to us, and excited our sympathy much more than it would perhaps have been excited by the relation of his story.

Another very interesting acquaintance which we made here, though of a totally different kind, was a deaf and dumb man, by name Gildenhuis. He was uncommonly clever in handicraft employments, and was exceedingly useful to the inhabitants of the country, in making gun-locks, tools for all kinds of work, and in general in all the finer kinds of smith's work. He had learned all this of himself, and many things he shewed us of his own carving and engraving in wood and metal, evinced no less patience and perseverance, than taste and genius. As very few patterns had fallen in his way, most of the forms and ornaments were entirely his own fancy, which rendered the taste they displayed much more extraordinary. This man is mentioned by Mr. Barrow as a remarkable instance of genius. His manners were no less striking than his works. All his actions, all his movements, his very countenance displayed a kind of humour peculiar to himself, an innate disposition to comic representations. In nothing was this shewn more conspicuously than in the signs which he had himself invented to express his meanings, and through the medium of which he could even relate long histories to those who were acquainted with the signs. He took a particular pleasure in giving us, by the aid of his sister, an idea of this sort of speech, which entertained
us exceedingly. He described a Hottentot by pressing the ends of his two thumb-nails hard together, as these people do when they want to kill the vermin, by which they are commonly so much plagued; a horse was described by making a movement with his two fore fingers like galloping. These specimens are sufficient to give an idea of their nature, and they were all equally appropriate and humorous. His external appearance shewed a happy and contented mind, with an uncommon vivacity of disposition; and his relations assured us that he seemed a perfect stranger to listlessness and ennui.

The entrance of the new year was solemnised here according to the custom of the country, with the firing of guns from the farms all round, so that the whole neighbourhood resounded with them. Our dragoons were not behind hand, but emulated the colonists in the salutes they fired from their carabines.

The next morning we proceeded onwards in the Long-kloof, visited several excellent farms, and in the evening arrived at the house of a rich colonist, by name Stephen Ferrara, with whose cousin of the same name we had taken our rest at noon. This place is well supplied with water; the whole valley indeed is so, and appears fertile enough to nourish in future generations a considerable population. The farms which we visited the next day by degrees assumed a poorer appearance, and most of them were fortified, in the manner before described, with earth walls and bastions. The valley here widens gradually, the mountains on each side have a less wild and rugged aspect, their summits are more rounded, but the vegetation is weaker, and the number of springs is diminished, as well as the quantity of water supplied by each. At the house of the Field-cornet Rademeier we again met with an old Prussian soldier, whom a singular fate had driven to this spot. He had served in the seven years war, was afterwards in garrison at Wesel, and there had the misfortune to kill the son of a general in a duel. He fled into Holland, where he engaged in the service of the East-India Company, and was sent hither as a common soldier. Already an invalid when the Cape was taken by the English, he would have died helpless and forsaken, had not the compassionate Rademeier, without any previous knowledge of him, taken him to his peaceable and hospitable habitation, there to maintain him for the remainder of his life. His name was Winnekes, which I mention in case the remembrance of him should still live in the hearts of any of his fellow-countrymen. How many unfortunate persons may equally here, south of the
line, have closed a career of sorrow and repentance, far from their homes and their native land, without any knowledge of their fate ever having reached those to whom they once were dear, without even the cause of their flight being known!

At noon we stopped at the house of a certain Strydom, where the shade of some old oaks, and an avenue of loaded fruit-trees, the roots of which were watered by a pretty little rivulet flowing over a pebbly bed, made us forget the poverty which appeared in the house and its inhabitants. Our host and his brothers maintained their families chiefly by the chase. They roved about the mountains to the south of their habitations, in pursuit of the elephants, buffalos, and wild boars, which still inhabit in considerable numbers the vast forests of Sitzikamma. A few months before, they had taken a male elephant fourteen feet high, the tusks of which weighed nearly a hundred and a half. They were sold at the Cape Town for two hundred dollars. He asserted, that some years before, elephants had been taken here that were eighteen feet high; and experienced hunters, who had travelled through the solitary countries on the other side of Califaria, assured me afterwards that this was no exaggeration. Strydom celebrated highly the affection of this animal to its young, and insisted that he had himself seen a female elephant take her wounded calf up in her teeth, and run away with it.

Rademeier, who undertook himself to be our guide for a part of the way, shewed us at some distance from his house, near the road, the grave of a Hottentot, who, according to the universal testimony of the neighbourhood, came into these parts long ago, being a Christian, and lived here as a Physician and Sage. His memory is now honoured by the Hottentots, according to their custom, by any one as he passes throwing a fresh flower upon it. We found indeed several which seemed to be almost fresh strewn there. The grave consisted of a number of rough massy stones heaped together, which might be between twenty and thirty paces in circumference. This circumstance is interesting, as a proof of the truth of what is asserted by early travellers respecting the superior degree of civilization at which the Gonaaquas had arrived above the other tribes of Hottentots. We often found in subsequent parts of our journey similar graves towards the borders of the Caffre country, but never in any other part of Southern Africa did I see any thing
resembling it. It is common among all the tribes of Hottentots to bury their dead very deep, and with great care; most of them indeed are not content merely with the precaution of burying the body deep to preserve it from wild beasts, but as a farther defence, dig to a considerable extent round the immediate spot where the corpse is to be laid, and fill up the space with bushes and brambles, putting over the whole a thick layer of stones: but this done, the memory of the deceased is soon lost, and he is thought of no more. It is therefore but just to distinguish the grateful Gonaquas, who, after the lapse of half a century, still honour the remains of merit.

Towards evening we passed the Wageboom-river,* a small rapid stream, near which we found the family of a colonist, by name Kretzinger, busied in rebuilding their house, which had been burnt by the Caffres. The same fate had attended the farm where we stopped for the night. The owner, a certain Olivier, had returned a few months before, but so impoverished, that he had scarcely even bread and mutton to sell us. Very little more of the house was left standing than the walls, and our whole party slept at night under tents.

* Wageboom is the name given by the colonists to several sorts of Protea, which, on account of the hardness and toughness of the wood, afford excellent materials for making wagons.
CHAP. XVI.

First Rencontre with travelling Caffres, and many Particulars concerning the Interview.—Leeuwenbosch.—Magic Power of Snakes.—Kabeljau-river.—Chamtoo-river, and difficult Passage of it.—Beautiful country on the other Side.—Elephant Hunt.—Riet-river.—Embarrassment of the Travellers from the Delay of the Waggons.—Lead-mine at Van Stade's-river.

Not far from the place where we now were the Long-kloof loses its name. The road ascends a considerable height, whence is seen the valley of the Kromme-river (Crooked-river): this stream is enclosed by the same parallel rows of hills which had hitherto formed the Long-kloof. On the sides of these heights are many chasms; from these flow the sources of the Kromme-river.* This name is very appropriate, for the stream winds so much in the narrow valley to which it is confined, that the road crosses it seven or eight times. The fords are deep and dangerous, sometimes from the loose broken stones, sometimes from the morassy nature of the ground. In places of the latter description, are here and there what are called by the colonists Palm-bridges, which however soon decay, and are then more dangerous than the fords themselves. Rademeier carried us for some way along a path upon the declivity of the northern heights, by which we avoided some of these windings, with their fords. We were so much the more anxious about our waggon, which could not take this road, as two of them had already, early in the day, sunk deep in the mud, whence they were not drawn out without difficulty. At noon, we rested near the river under the shade of some small trees of Kruppelholz (Protea Conocarpa), and made a very pleasant meal of our cold provisions, while our horses found excellent feed.

* All the rivers and streams of the Long-kloof which run westward of Matthias Zondag's house flow into the Kansnie, which afterwards joins the Gaurits-river. Those eastward of Zondag's collect themselves together into the Kuga-river, which runs for a while parallel with the Kromme-river, both at length joining the Chamtoo.
in the meadow ground that bordered the river. In the afternoon we again crossed the river three times, and arrived in the evening at the house of P. Ferreira, called Jagersbosch (Hunter’s-bush), which had been taken by the Caffres, but not totally destroyed. The thatch was not so much damaged but that it sheltered us entirely from a heavy rain. Our waggons, however, as we had very much feared, did not arrive till the morning, so that we passed a not very agreeable night, with empty stomachs, and upon the cold damp ground, without our beds.

Here we first saw some Caffres: they were five men and three women, belonging to the herds of the Caffre Prince Conga, and came on a party of pleasure; or, as they termed it, had taken a walk to be entertained by the colonists, and receive presents from them. What makes the neighbourhood of these savages extremely irksome is, that in peace they expect as a sort of tribute what in war they seize by force. They often come in large bodies, and will stay several days or even weeks, scarcely thinking themselves obliged, even though they are entertained all the time without cost; and this the inhabitants do, to obviate, if possible, any cause of quarrel with them. Many times, in making peace, endeavours have been made to establish a fixed boundary which neither side shall pass without express permission from the chiefs of the country, but to this they never would consent, urging that there was no use in being at peace, if people could not make visits to their friends to enquire after their welfare. Under this pretence, they rove in little troops all over the colony, coming sometimes even to the Cape Town, to the no little injury of the colonists, over whose properties they travel. Their importunity, their number, and the fear of quarrelling with them, since they are very ready to catch at any pretence for a quarrel, commonly secure them good entertainment; or if in hopes of getting rid of them, their host does not feed them sufficiently, they take one of his sheep, without any ceremony, and kill it. As they have no idea themselves but of living from day to day, without any regard to the future, they consider the breeding cattle kept by the colonists as wholly superfluous, which ought to be, and shall be shared with them. The insolence of these roving groups was a principal occasion of the late disturbances, and the not having been able to put a stop to their visits at the establishment of peace, occasions much anxiety with regard to the future.
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

The Caffres who were now upon a visit here were some of the poorest part of the nation, very dirty, and very ill-clothed: three of them were not of genuine Caffre origin, but were bastards of the Gonaquas and Caffres. Two of these latter spoke broken Dutch, and in the name of the rest begged some brandy of us. A glass was given to each of them; the men were besides presented each with a knife, and the women with some beads and buttons. As we wished much for some specimens of their dexterity in throwing the Hassagai, a board was set up as the mark at which they were to throw: they were to stand at the distance of sixty paces from it, and whoever first hit the mark was to receive a red cotton handkerchief as a prize. It was a long time before the prize was gained, and as they continued the sport voluntarily, we observed that not above one out of thirty throws hit the mark. Yet, when it did hit, the force of the weapon was so great, that the iron point pierced through a board an inch thick.

They now gave us, unasked for, a pantomimic representation of their mode of fighting, ranging themselves in two rows, and showing how, by the most rapid and powerful movements of the body, they throw the weapon at the enemy. They also imitated their manner of avoiding the weapons of the opponent, which consisted in changing their place at every moment, springing hither and thither with loud cries, throwing themselves at one instant on the ground, and then rising with astonishing velocity to take their aim anew. The activity and readiness of their motions, the variety and rapid changes of attitude in these fine, athletic, naked warriors, made this sight as pleasing as it was interesting, on account of its novelty. Another change was now produced by the use of their weapons of defence. These weapons consisted first of a large shield, rounded out of a hardened ox-hide and stretched by a wood cross within, which served also for a handle, and secondly of a short stick of Hassagai wood, so cut, that a knob is made at the end by a part of the thick root of this stem. With the latter weapon, which the Hottentots call a Kirri, they turn aside the Hassagai by a strong side blow. They use the Kirri equally as a weapon of defence, in the way of a bludgeon, when they come to close fighting.

As it began to rain hard, we invited our visitors into the house, where they

* Curtisia flaginea, a wood something of the nature of mahogany.
entertained themselves till late in the evening with a dance after their fashion; this was as stiff and disagreeable as their activity and dexterity in the use of their arms had been otherwise. The men first come forwards in a row, with folded arms, stamping with a number of strange disagreeable motions of the head, shoulders, and body, while the women with the most hideous grimaces move slowly round the men, one after the other. Then they sing, or rather howl a strange melody, which cannot be pleasing throughout to an European ear, and which could not be performed upon any of our instruments, because their Intervals stand in a very different relation one to another from our's. Yet they imitate these Intervals and the melody of their songs upon their imperfect instruments very true. One of the women employed herself in making baskets of rushes, such as are mentioned by Sparmann, thick enough to hold milk. The work is uncommonly neat, and does great honour to the inventor; but the mode in which it is done could not be described without great prolixity.

When our waggons were at length all collected together, we left this place, and proceeded farther on along the right bank of the Kromme-river. About noon we reached a very agreeable resting place in the Hassagai-bosch, as it is called, by the side of a clear rivulet running through the wood. We soon after passed the Kromme-river for the last time, and then ascended on the other side a very striking height, which brought us to a wide plain; here we saw the bound of our this day's journey, in a solitary farm that lay directly before us. We had seen a great many wild animals the whole day, particularly antelopes of almost every sort, among others some of the rare pigmy-antelope (antilope pygmaea), called here the Oribi. These animals live entirely in woody countries, and are therefore only to be taken in this part of the colony. Duivers, red-deer, and wood-deer, were in troops of five or six together, but neither was the land favourable for the chase, or could we venture with our horses, tired by a long day's journey, to follow the game with any eagerness.

At the place where we were to take up our quarters for the night we found again several families who had fled, and their property had been plundered by the Caffres; by the consent of the owners, who lived at the Cape Town, they had here found an asylum till their own dwelling-houses could be restored, and rendered habitable. Among them was a woman scarcely
now thirty years old, who was of such an extraordinary size, that her weight was estimated at not less than three hundred and fifty pounds. She had suffered for a long time with such a terrible oppression upon her breath, and beating at the heart, that she had all the appearance of an incurable dropsy in the chest.

The Commissary-general found here again many differences to decide. Among others, a Hottentot woman brought a complaint against a colonist, whose servant she had formerly been, that he withheld from her a cow and calf which she had earned. The Commissary took occasion upon this earnestly to exhort the colonists to be particularly careful in their conduct towards such of the former inhabitants of the country as behaved well in their service. He, as General Janssens had done, made it a rule in all cases between a Hottentot and his Christian master, which appeared in any way doubtful, to presume in favour of the former, and decide accordingly. This had a good effect upon the behaviour of the colonists towards the Hottentots, and was of this use, among others, that it compelled them to fulfil exactly the agreements made with their servants when they hired them. On the other side, as it remedied one evil, it in some sort created another, for upon subsequent occasions I had opportunities of observing that the favour here shewn the Hottentots encouraged them to make idle and futile complaints against their masters, so that the inferior magistrates were at last constrained to punish here and there one of these people, who had, without any ground, brought these complaints, and occasioned their masters a great deal of trouble.

On the fifth of January, about noon, we came to the dwelling of a certain Michael Ferreira, called Leeuwenbosch (Lion's bush). The house had suffered exceedingly from the Caffres, but the household was the best ordered that we had seen for a long time. The man and wife were quiet pious people, and seemed to lead a most happy life in their solitude, surrounded by a number of fine children, and by a company of faithful slaves and Hottentots: both the latter appeared really and warmly attached to them. They received us with a pleasure and friendliness of manner, which evinced indisputably the utmost purity and simplicity of heart, and which made the frugal meal they set before us doubly agreeable.

As, according to my custom, I took a ramble into the fields in the afternoon, I saw at the brink of a ditch a large snake in pursuit of a field-
mouse. The poor animal was just at its hole, when it seemed in a moment to stop, as if unable to proceed, and without being touched by the snake, to be palsied with terror. The snake had raised its head over him, opened its mouth, and seemed to fix its eyes steadfastly upon him. Both remained still awhile, but as soon as the mouse made a motion, as if he would fly, the head of the snake followed the movement immediately, as if he would stop his way. This sport lasted four or five minutes, till my approach put an end to it: the snake then snapped up his prey hastily, and glided away with it into a neighbouring bush, where I endeavoured in vain to get at him and kill him. As I had heard a great deal of this magic power in the snake over smaller animals, it was very interesting to me to see a specimen of it. I think it may be made a question, however, whether the poisonous breath of the reptile might not really have had the effect of paralysing the limbs of the mouse, rather than that its inability to move proceeded either from the fixed eye of the snake, or the apprehension of inevitable death. It is remarkable, and very certain, that serpents will sport with their prey, as cats do, before they kill it.

Ferreira gave us two muskets, which some deserters from the ninth battalion of Jägers had sold to one of the neighbours, or had left behind them in their flight. It was in February, 1803, as the Dutch army was encamped upon the Weinberg, that a whole piquet from this battalion, almost all Poles, forsook the camp by night. They were part of a number of Poles, who, having been in the French service, were in 1801 taken into the pay of the Batavian republic, and sent hither among the colonial troops. These unfortunate men conceived that in flying northwards they could reach their own country in a few weeks. They were, however, for the most part, retaken by the colonists, and carried back to the camp, where they suffered the utmost rigour of the law, and paid with their lives their want of geographical knowledge. Five of them, however, escaped out of the colony by the road we were now travelling, and perhaps met their fate from the hands of the Caffres or Bosjesmans. In my principal journey, two years after, I found traces of them in a very distant part, as will be related in the proper place.

The excessive heat of this day prevented our setting off again till towards evening. I proceeded on foot with the waggons, and rejoined the company
late at the farm of the widow Kretzinger, on the Kabeljau-river. On the way we were overtaken by the most violent storm that I think I ever witnessed. The whole heavens were covered over with the thickest black, and night seemed to come on before the sun was gone down. The dark mountains seen in this mournful twilight appeared doubly gigantic, and their frightful masses, illumined suddenly by the blaze of the lightning, seemed awfully near. From four or five different parts the lightning flashed through the heavens, while tremendous claps of thunder followed quick on each other, every clap becoming still louder and louder, and being prolonged by the echoes from the mountains, there scarcely seemed any interval, no pause which could distinguish between the cessation of one clap and the commencement of another: the noise grew fainter for a moment, only to be renewed with a more tremendous roll than before.

Amid a pouring and continued rain we pursued our way till we arrived at the above-mentioned farm, where we met the Field-cornet Ignatius Müller, with a new vorspann. Here again were several families sufferers from the Caffres, many of whose houses, almost entirely destroyed, we had passed in our day’s journey. We also met here with another group of travelling Caffres, who begged of us some little presents of tobacco, beads, and brandy. They were chiefly women, and among them was a sister of the chief Conga, who was distinguished as well by the greater splendour of her dress, as by her handsome countenance.

The country was now again much more level, and somewhat farther to the south the great chain of the Black Mountains, which runs from Roodezand and Zwellendam, forming the boundary of the Long-kloof, and the valley of the Kromme-river, down to the coast, loses itself in the sea. Some miles northwards from hence, runs a branch of this chain, which stretches farther to the east, and after having formed the bank of Van Stade’s-river, runs down to the sea in the neighbourhood of Algoa bay. From these hills flows the Zeekoe-river, which we had crossed this day, and which unites itself with the sea a mile eastward of the Kromme-river. All these rivers are choked at the mouths with sand-banks, and the Kromme-river’s bay is from the surf almost entirely useless for shipping: there is scarcely a place along its whole margin where even a boat can land without danger of being wrecked.
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

After resting a few hours at night, we were obliged to set out again before day-break, to reach the Chamoio-river, three hours from hence, while the tide was sufficiently down to permit of our crossing it. This was one of the most dangerous of all the rivers we passed, from the depth and breadth of the stream, and from the necessity of attending to the exact point of time when only it is fordable. Many a one who has not paid due attention to this point has here found a watery grave: directly at the entrance of the ford on this side, the tomb-stone of an English dragoon, who had not very long before shared this fate, stands as a warning to others to be more cautious in encountering the danger. We found it, as our guide assured us would be the case, at this time unusually low; for though a heavy rain had fallen the day before, the west wind which accompanied the storm occasioned the ebb to descend to its very lowest level, so that in the deepest places the water scarcely reached our horses' bellies. After going a little way through the water we come to a sand-bank, which runs down the length of the stream rather in an oblique direction towards the opposite shore: along this bank, which has in no part more than a foot and half depth of water, we pursued our course till arrived at the point where the stream is the shallowest between that and the bank: here the remainder is to be crossed, but this is the most dangerous part of the passage. We had but just passed before the water began to rise again.

Our waggons, which only then arrived on the other side, had more difficulty in crossing than ourselves, and the last of them, which, to increase the evil, had stuck fast at the beginning of the ford, was not without great exertions brought safely to the other side. It was really a curious sight to see the train of waggons going along the sand-bank in the middle of the stream. The Field-coronet Müller, and some other of the colonists who had accompanied us, were exceedingly assiduous in giving directions for bringing the waggons through, going sometimes up to their breasts in the water to point out the right track, and even to give their assistance when any thing went wrong. A delay of only a quarter of an hour might have occasioned the loss of a whole lading, and nothing was more likely than that the oxen in the water might entangle themselves with the harness, or make some false step, when only those who are accustomed to the passage, and have sufficient
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

resolution and presence of mind, can set them right again. This readiness to assist, and extreme activity in assisting, deserves to be mentioned as a new proof that the African colonists are not inattentive and slothful to the degree that they have often been represented.

While we were resting, after having surmounted the toils and dangers of the passage, we were again visited by a company of Caffres, with whom we entertained ourselves agreeably for some time. At the same moment, some of the women whom we had seen at the Kabeljau-river, appeared on the other bank of the Chamtoo, and held a conversation with their fellow-countrymen who were on this side. Our guides made us remark how easily these people heard each other at a considerable distance, without either party speaking particularly loud. The slow and singing manner of their pronunciation, whence a prolonged tone dwells on the last syllable, may very well account for such an effect.

About nine o'clock we proceeded onwards, sending our waggons by a circuitous route along the sea-shore to meet us in the evening at the house of the Field-cornet Müller, while we took the nearest way through the forest and over the hills. The Chamtoo-river was formerly the boundary between the colony and the Caffre-country, and indeed it seems to separate two very different countries. That through which we were now travelling is among some of the most beautiful parts of Southern Africa, and shewed in the clearest manner the difference between the climate of this district and that which prevails about the Cape Town, with the influence produced by the abundant storms, and the heavy rains that accompany them, upon the vegetation and the whole appearance of the country. Large tracts are here covered with the most wholesome nourishing grass; the hills are surrounded with woods, and in the valleys are large lakes: the water of them is, however, not wholly free from saline particles. We continued our course for some time through woods and level green valleys, with ponds in them, in which were large flocks of moor-birds; in short, among such beautiful changes and varieties, that we could almost have conceived ourselves in a lovely English garden. At the feet of the high trees grew a number of succulent plants, in particular of aloes, which were still in high bloom, many of them with large branches, which seemed scarcely able to sustain the weight of the heavy
fleshy leaves. On the ground crept a number of smaller plants, among which, the *Schotia speciosa* was particularly distinguished by its clusters of reddish purple flowers.

Numerous elephants inhabit the thickest parts of this forest. Not above a week before, our guide, whose name was Nieuwkerk, had shot a large male elephant, but could not follow him quick enough to secure him. He thought it very probable that his body might still be found, since he was sure that he could not have run very far, and he knew the direction he had taken. I had no great difficulty to persuade him to accompany me, and endeavour to find the animal; we therefore left the party, and penetrated into the forest, but by no beaten path. My hopes that I should have to occupy myself during our stay at Algoa bay with preparing the skeleton of an elephant were disappointed. We found many footsteps of elephants, some of which seemed almost fresh made, but could not find the dead body we sought. The excursion proved exceedingly fatiguing, as we were obliged to go the greatest part of the way on foot, leading our horses; for this, however, I would have compounded, if it had answered my purpose, but what made it particularly mortifying to me was, that in a spot where an opening in the wood afforded us a prospect to the heights westward of us, we saw a little troop of elephants, seeming not to be at more than a quarter of an hour's distance from us. Between them and us was, however, a deep valley, which encloses a branch of Van Stade's-river, and it was too late in the day to think of undertaking a serious chase of them; the weather was besides cloudy, threatening a heavy rain, and our horses were tired. We returned therefore by a different and more commodious way to the party, whom we found at a very pretty spot in the midst of the forest, called Galgenbosch (Gallows-bush). They had been resting here some hours, and had thought of going on, as the weather grew every minute more and more threatening.

The account of our unsuccessful search was the occasion of bringing the histories of many hunting parties upon the tapis, one of which was so remarkable, that I cannot resist giving it a place here. The Field-cornet Ignatius Müller was among the colonists who accompanied Mr. Jacob Van Reenen in his journey into the Caffre country, which has so often been alluded to, and for the knowledge of which the public is indebted to the English Captain Riou. The travellers found that the farther they went the
more elephants they found, so that they killed them almost daily; indeed, the hope of gain from the elephants' teeth that they should collect had allured most of the party who joined in the undertaking. It is known from Mr. Barrow's travels, that one of the company, William Prince by name, lost his life in an elephant hunt. Müller was an eye-witness of this accident, and gave us the following circumstantial account of it.

He and Prince only were out together, when they discovered the footsteps of a very large elephant, and soon espied the animal itself upon the declivity of a naked and widely outstretched hill. It is a rule when an elephant is found thus, to endeavour to get above him upon the hill, that in case of necessity, the hunter may fly to the summit, whither the animal, on account of the unwieldiness of its body, cannot follow him fast. This precaution was neglected by Prince; he shot too soon, while they were yet at too great a distance, and the elephant was upon higher ground than himself and his companion. The wounded monster rushed down towards them, while they endeavoured to push their horses on, and gain the brow of the hill. But the elephant, who upon favourable ground will run as fast as a horse, soon came up with them, and struck with his tusk at Müller's thigh, he being the nearest of the two fugitives. Müller now considered his fate as inevitable, as he endeavoured in vain to set his almost exhausted horse into a gallop, and saw the monster, after giving a violent snort, raise his powerful trunk above his head; but it was not on himself, it was upon his companion that the stroke fell, and in an instant he saw him snatched from his horse and thrown up into the air. Scarcely in his senses, he continued his flight, and only in some degree recovered himself by finding Prince's horse running by his side without a rider; then looking back, he saw his unfortunate friend on the ground, and the elephant stamping upon him with the utmost fury. He was now convinced, not without the utmost astonishment, that the sagacious animal had distinguished which of the two it was wounded him, and wreaked his whole vengeance upon him alone. Müller on this went in search of the rest of the party, that they might collect the mangled remains of their companion and bury them; but they were soon put to flight by the elephant rushing again from a neighbouring thicket, to vent his wrath once more upon the corpse, already so dreadfully mangled. While he was busied in doing this, however, he was attacked by the dispersed hunters, and sacrificed to the maims of his unfortunate victim.
Amid the entertainment we received from this and other relations of a similar kind, we arrived in the narrow valley of Van Stade's-river. After crossing the river, we continued our way for some time along its bank; the road then turned eastward, and in less than an hour we arrived, having been first well soaked with the rain, under the hospitable roof of our guide the Field-cornet Müller. The place is called the Rietfontein; it is situated in a pleasant valley, bounded to the south by naked rocks, but every way else by finely wooded heights, which form a sort of amphitheatral semicircle round the fine meadow land of which the valley is composed. At the foot of these heights, and taking the same sweep with them, runs the Riet-river. Among the trees which contribute so much to the beauty of the spot, the Euphorbia Officinarum is particularly to be distinguished; the angular boughs which issue from the stem with a striking regularity, and symmetry of form, while the smaller branches, and even the twigs, follow the same measured equality of distance, gives the whole tree, with each particular member, the appearance of regular chandeliers. This wonderfully beautiful tree, some of which were here as much as thirty feet high, has a sharp thorn at the extremities of the twigs, from which it is called by the colonists the Noortsche Doornboom.

Müller and his wife received us with the utmost hospitality, but their house was so exceedingly confined, the weather was so indifferent, and our waggons were so long before they arrived, that our stay here was rendered not very agreeable, and the party found themselves in a situation which might truly be called meeting with an adventure. The greatest part of the house had been destroyed by the Caiffies; a very small part was left standing, which Müller had with some difficulty put into such a state as to be habitable. It was composed of the room at which we entered, and a side chamber; the first was kitchen as well as parlour, but it was no more than twenty feet long, and fourteen broad, and in the chamber was a young woman, a relation of our hostess, then in the pains of child-birth. Our whole party, therefore, were to be stowed in the first room, for the rain grew every instant more and more violent, nor ceased till noon on the following day. Our presence was somewhat embarrassing to the busy hostess, who undertook the cooking herself, in which she was assisted by some half-naked female slaves. Two fresh-slain sheep hung near the fire-place, while other parts of the room were filled up with several vessels, a large chopping-block, and a quantity of dry
fire-wood. The whole household furniture consisted of two small tables, four or five chests, and half a dozen field-stools. In one corner was a sitting-hen; in another a duck with her young ones, which had been brought in to be sheltered from the chilling rain; then there were some half-dozen of dogs, who every now and then began barking terribly, and ran out, returning all wet and dirty, and sprinkling the dirt all about. The family of our hostess consisted of six children, the youngest of whom cried almost incessantly, and the eldest crept about, eagerly examining the strangers. The good mother, who seemed almost ready to lie-in herself, exerted all her powers to entertain us, but as she had only been returned hither a few weeks, she had scarcely even common necessaries about her, and it was not without some trouble that she could even procure bread sufficient for us of a distant neighbour.

We expected the arrival of our waggon with the utmost anxiety, but expected in vain, and indeed it appeared obvious that they must be so much delayed by the heavy rain, that scarcely any hope could be entertained of their arriving before morning. As it grew dark, and all were crowded together in the house, our Chief remarked that even Ostade would have been much embarrassed, if he had wished to represent in a picture the interior of the house at this moment, with the group of guests at supper. Behind the house was a small stable for five or six horses, and here the dragoons and servants were forced to take shelter; over it was a little loft, scarcely larger than a pigeon-hole, up to which the young people climbed, and there eight of us passed the night. A bed was made in the front room for the Commis-sary-general and the ladies, but they had not much more rest than we had, for they were kept awake the greatest part of the night, first by the groans of the poor woman in the inner apartment, and then by the crying of the new-born infant.

At break of day the field-cornet sent the relay of oxen, which had already arrived, to meet the tardy waggon. We soon received the intelligence that they had been detained by the rapid flow of the sea, which prevented their continuing their route along the shore, and constrained them to pass the night on the sand-hills. The dreadful weather, and the want of a supply of provisions, even of good water, had made this a not very pleasant situation for the people who were with the waggon. As we learned moreover that it
was impossible they should arrive till towards the afternoon, and as the weather was now fair, the Commissary-general determined, notwithstanding the fatigues we had suffered, to set forwards for Algoa bay, without waiting for them: about noon the greatest part of the company set out, and arrived happily in the evening at Fort Frederic.

Young de Mist, however, my friend Winters, and myself, determined to stay behind, and make an excursion to the celebrated lead mine, two hour’s distance from this place on Van Stade’s-river. We followed the course of the river upwards, and came to the farm of a certain Christian Vogel, which had been destroyed by the Caffres, and was now uninhabited: near this place lay the object which had occasioned our journey. An old slave who lived in the ruins, taking care of the owner’s cattle, said, that we had only to go towards the hill, and we should soon see the shining earth. We had some trouble, however, to discover it, since the rain had brought down such a quantity of sand, that the spaces were all filled up. After having searched some time in vain, we succeeded at last, and in turning up a stone, found some fine pieces of lead-ore, which we charged the old man to keep for us carefully, as we intended to carry them away with us. The whole side of this hill, up to a considerable height, consists entirely of the same shining stone that forms the bed of the Silver-river, and in this the lead-ore is enclosed. The vein seems almost perpendicular, stretching from the north-west to the south-east. According to the researches of Major Von Dehn, in the year 1792, a hundred weight of earth contains between fifty and sixty pounds of pure lead, and about fifteen pounds of base-silver. Some which I brought home with me was examined by the chief physician Klaproth, at Berlin, when he found in a hundred parts fifty three of lead, thirteen of sulphur, and a small quantity of silver, scarcely worth mentioning. My friend, Baron Dankelmann, who visited the country a few months after me, by command of General Janssens, and examined the earth very accurately, found nearly the same result as Major Von Dehn. Farther information from him upon the subject may be expected by mineralogists. In his official report to the government, he submitted to their consideration proposals for working this mine, as it promises, particularly in the first years, to yield abundantly; but, after an accurate calculation of the cost, it was found, that notwithstanding every
thing was placed in the most favourable point of view, yet from the high price of labour, from the difficulty of land-carriage, and from the dangers of the coasting trade, the lead could scarcely be sold at so low a price in the Cape Town as that brought from Europe. The mine then must rest till a new day dawns upon the cultivation of this quarter of the globe—till the time arrives when an increasing population shall, with their necessities, increase their industry.

We returned in the evening to the Riet-river, to the house of our friend Müller, where we found a numerous group of Caffre visitors. This group had, to the great annoyance of the neighbourhood, been living for some weeks past at a few hours distance from hence, and daily troubling some one or other of the neighbours with requests for brandy and tobacco. What made their abode in the country still more troublesome was their hunting parties, in which they destroy large quantities of game. Their mode of hunting is, that some hundreds of them surround a wood, and drive all the game up to one point. A more convenient spot is then chosen, to which they chase the animals singly, and one of the party who is among the most skilful in the use of their weapons is stationed here, who attacks them with the hassagai, or the kirri, so that scarcely one escapes alive. In this way they will sometimes, as Müller assured us, kill in one afternoon some hundreds of animals—antilopes, hares, wild-cats, monkeys, &c. &c. but as they can never make use of them all, so they are left to decay without being even skinned; yet they want the animals, as they say themselves, less as food, than for the sake of the skins, which are necessary to them as clothing. How injurious these hunting parties are to the colonists may be judged, when it is stated that they support their families chiefly upon the flesh of wild animals, in order to reserve their cattle for sale to the travelling butchers from the Cape Town. So much the more was it a subject of joy to see an officer arrive this very day from the Caffre chief, Conga, with orders to the troop who were now here, to return immediately over the Great Fish-river. A reconciliation had taken place between Geika and the party who had opposed him, and Conga had consented, according to the promise he made the governor, to submit to Geika as Jahuhsa had done already. This ambassador was distinguished in his dress from the rest of the people. His mantle was the skin of a panther;
he had bracelets of ivory upon the upper part of his arms, a jackal's tail at the knee, and a large bush of the quagga's hair* in his cap. He was exceedingly pitted with the small-pox, as were many others, and uglier than any we had yet seen; but as to understanding, judgment, and knowledge, very much upon an equality with the rest. His name was Umluhngo.

* The Quagga (Equus quagga of Linnaeus) has a resemblance to the Zebra, and is therefore mistaken by Edwards for the female of that animal; but it is a species of itself, going in herds wholly apart from the true Zebra. The Quagga is larger and stronger than the Zebra, and much more easily tamed, so that it may be made to draw a waggon.
CHAP. XVII.

Algoa Bay.—Fort Frederic.—Baaker-river.—Industry of the German Garrison.—Description of the Bay.—The Missionary Van der Kemp.—His Hottentot School at Bethelsdorp.

Early in the following morning we set off to join our party at Algoa bay. The nearer we got to the coast, the more the country resumed its former waste and dreary appearance: the road lay over a flat plain, as destitute of woods as it was of hills. In the latter part of the way are some sand-hills, and the deep road down them is extremely fatiguing. On the last hill, which goes down to the shore, stands Fort Frederic, built by the English in 1799. It consists of a quadrangular wooden block-house, surrounded by a wall of the same figure: beneath the wall is a strong row of palisades, and a tolerably broad dry ditch.* Eight guns, twelve pounders, command the shore, as far as it serves for landing, and protect the buildings lying near, viz. the barracks, magazines, guard-houses, &c. Westward of the hill on which the fort stands, comes from a deep gulley a little stream called the Baaker-river.† At the ford of the river, which is concealed between the hills that rise on each side of it, is another wooden block-house, which under the English govern-

* The annexed plate is a view of the settlement at Algoa bay, seen from the other side of the Baaker-river, which flows into the bay. On the height to the left lies Fort Frederic, and below, near the river, the Block-house. The houses of the commandant and the officers are seen in a row in the distance. The person by whom the sketch was taken, Lieutenant Colonel Von Howen of Amsterdam, has introduced our travelling party in the fore-ground, though their way did not lie over this river, but eastward, in a contrary direction. This seems necessary to be noticed, that the reader may not be perplexed on comparing the plate with the text. I have another view of the country taken from the bay, but it has not been inserted, because Alberti has given the same view in his account of the Caffres.

† Baaker signifies a mark, a stone set up as a boundary, a sea-mark, a buoy, &c. &c. The river serves the sailors as a mark to point out the landing-place, and from thence has its name. It is a mistake to suppose it, as some persons have done, the Bakker-river (Baker-river).
ment was prepared at the Cape Town, and sent in parts by sea to the bay. It serves at once as a prison and guard-house. Between the block-houses lie, strewed on the heights, extensive barracks for soldiers, a magazine for provisions, and another for military stores and field equipages, a smith’s shop, a bakehouse, a carpenter’s work-shop, and other small buildings: a strong powder magazine, which will contain about two thousand pounds of powder, is within the fort itself.

Some small houses have been run up in the neighbourhood for the officers, among which the house of the commandant is the most distinguished. It contains four convenient rooms, and stands in the midst of a pretty garden, which the garrison had put into exceedingly good order, though they had been there only eight months. The garrison consists at present of eighty men from the Jäger company of the fifth battalion of Waldeck, most of them experienced Jägers. These people have, under the auspices of their excellent commandant, the worthy Lieutenant-Colonel Alberti, availed themselves of the favourable nature of the country, and cultivated the land about the establishment; even this year they have raised their own bread-corn, their potatoes, and some sorts of pulse. At the hours of leisure from their service, they each take a spade, and by the active manner in which it is employed, procure themselves a considerable degree of abundance, and many enjoyments which could not be otherwise obtained. Besides, the employing themselves in this way prevents the dulness and languor to which they must otherwise be subject from the uniformity necessarily attendant on their situation in so remote and solitary a post. These industrious people had already got a tolerable number of sheep and cattle, by which they hoped in time to enrich themselves exceedingly, as well as to get draught oxen for tilling their lands.

The bay in size, form, and situation, exceedingly resembles both Plettenberg’s-bay and Mosselbay. As it is open to the south-east wind, which blows here a great part of the year, it offers no secure anchorage to shipping; indeed, the entrance is difficult even when the wind blows from other quarters, particularly the south-west. The landing-place is a little sandy spot near the mouth of the Baaker-river; excepting this, the whole strand is dangerous on account of the reefs. The surf is from the nature of the coast every where so strong, that it costs immense labour to bring the goods on shore from the vessels. Notwithstanding these impediments, the
place is now completely erected into a military establishment; it has even been selected for the purpose, because, on account of the impediments, it can be so easily defended against the landing of an enemy. Going along the strand, a short mile eastward of the Baaker-river, we come directly opposite the little island of Santa Cruz, which lies about a quarter of a mile from the shore, but is only inhabited by seals and penguins. Bartolomeu Diaz erected the Holy Cross here in January, 1487, and gave the island the name which it retains to this day.

The country about Algoa bay is by nature so fertile, that even if uninhabited it would produce wood, game, salt, and grass for feeding cattle in abundance. Now, since it has been cultivated by Europeans in quiet times, it produces corn and fruits of all kinds, and even wine. The breeding of cattle prospers so much, that meat, milk, butter, soap, and other articles dependent upon this part of husbandry, are to be had at very low prices. The bay itself, from the plenty of fish that it produces, offers an abundant supply of food to the inhabitants of its shores.

What renders this establishment, however, of particular importance, is, its situation so near the borders of the Caffre country, and the facility with which, in consequence, any disagreements between these savages and the colonists may be stifled in their birth. It has therefore been made a particular subject of attention by the Dutch government, and a great deal of money has been spent both upon the buildings and every other part of it. A mile from hence, at the place of the Widow Schepers, ground has been laid out for a Droste, and a village adjoining to it, which is to be the centre point of a new district: it is to be called after the family name of the Commissary-general, Uitenhage.* The commandant Alberti administered the office of landdrost of this new district as long as the colony remained in the hands of the Dutch. The esteem in which he was held by the colonists, his influence over the chiefs of the Caffre tribes, his extensive knowledge, and the many excellent features in his character, united to render his administration of so much advantage to the country, that in two years it became one of the most quiet and peaceable parts of the colony. On this subject I shall dwell more largely in another place.

* It must be observed that De Mist is the Commissary-general’s title, not his name.
We remained five days at Algoa bay. Messengers were sent from hence to the chiefs of the Caffres, inviting them to an interview with the Commissary-general. The views with which this was solicited were to confirm and strengthen the peace concluded by General Janssens, and, if possible, to reconcile the chiefs with each other, that, united under one head, their own internal quiet, as well as the peace of the colonists, might be farther secured. By this means too would be removed the great inconvenience which had been so often experienced, from the weaker party, in their own internal quarrels, often seeking a refuge in the Dutch territories, whither they knew their adversaries would not venture to pursue them. But before I enter upon an account of the situation of this extraordinary nation, and give my readers a sketch of some former occurrences necessary to be known, in order fully to understand the sequel of our journey, I must close this second part of my work with an account of another mission establishment, situated in this part of the colony.

About a mile and half eastwards from the bay, a man, now near seventy years of age, by-name Vander Kemp, has collected together between two and three hundred Hottentots, to whom he preaches the gospel. If ardour in religion, amounting almost to bigotry, if self-denial, and a renunciation of social comforts, even of all earthly enjoyments, supported by a high degree of enthusiasm, and by very extensive learning; if these properties can render a missionary worthy of respect and esteem, then is Vander Kemp most truly so. Even the history of his early life, before he was known here, must create a high degree of interest for him.

In his youth he was an officer in the army, but contracting a marriage beneath him, he was obliged to quit the service, and, as a married man, applied himself to the study of physic with so much diligence, that notwithstanding his total want of all previous knowledge in this science, he attained the degree of Doctor in three years, and was appointed an army physician. Some years after, in crossing the river Maese with his wife and children, the boat unfortunately overset, and all his family was lost; he alone escaped, almost by a miracle. From this moment his whole soul was absorbed in religious ideas, and he soon exchanged the science of medicine for that of theology. He studied particularly the ancient and the oriental languages, and soon commenced a writer in his new profession: but his works, on account of their
mystical tone and terrifying prolixity, did not obtain him many votaries in Holland, so that in the year 1780 he went over to England, where he succeeded better. When the Cape was taken by the English, he resolved, though then sixty years of age, to go out as a missionary to the Caffres, and being ordained at Oxford, he came hither in 1797. After two years spent among these people, in which he says himself he had not accomplished much towards the spreading of Christianity, the war broke out. He went for a while to the Cape Town, but at his return to the Caffres was not favourably received, and was obliged again to quit their territories.

At this very time there were hovering about the borders a number of vagrant Hottentots, who, during the war, had gained their living as partisans of either side; one while among the Caffres, plundering the dwellings of the colonists, then assisting the colonists in seizing the cattle of the Caffres: in this way they had, in more than one instance, been secretly the occasion of the struggle being carried on with still increasing animosity. These people were collected together by Vander Kemp for the purpose of instructing them in the Christian religion, in which he was assisted by an Englishman of the name of Read. But, however plausible and meritorious appeared the plan of the undertaking, the utility which might have been, and ought to have been, derived from it, was lost by the over-pious spirit and proud humility of its head. It is true that these Hottentots were now nominally quiet, and kept in some order; yet, often under pretence of the chace, they wandered about armed, the government (then English) having allowed them, not merely a small quantity of powder and shot to kill game for the purposes of food, but having supplied them with it very abundantly; a favour, if favour it is to be called, which was too often misused. They were certainly daily instructed for some hours in the Christian religion, but these instructions made much more impression upon their memory than upon their understanding. They could sing and pray, and be heartily penitent for their sins, and talk of the Lamb of atonement, but none were really the better for all this specious appearance. No attention was paid to giving them proper occupations, and, excepting in the hours of prayer, they might be as indolent as they chose. This convenient mode of getting themselves fed attracted many of the most worthless and idle among these people, and all who applied were indiscriminately received into the establishment: the con-
sequence was that the colonists soon made heavy complaints of the want of servants, since the Hottentots were much better pleased with leading an indolent life in Vander Kemp's school, than with gaining their bread by labour.

When General Janssens in his journey visited this institution, he confirmed the principal part of the favours shewn to its head by the English, and permitted him to call the institution by the name of Bethelsdorp. At the same time he signified his wish that the Hottentots should be more excited to industry, particularly that they should be made to contribute towards their own maintenance by cultivating the lands around. This recommendation was accompanied with a large present of implements of husbandry, and seed corn, that there might be no pretence for evading it.

On the day of our arrival at Algoa bay the Commissary-general received a visit from Vander Kemp. In the very hottest part of the morning we saw a waggon, such as is used in husbandry, drawn by four meagre oxen, coming slowly along the sandy downs. Vander Kemp sat upon a plank laid across it, without a hat, his venerable bald head exposed to the burning rays of the sun. He was dressed in a threadbare black coat, waistcoat, and breeches, without shirt, neckcloth, or stockings, and leather sandals bound upon his feet, the same as are worn by the Hottentots. The Commissary-general hastened to meet and receive him with the utmost kindness; he descended from his car, and approached with slow and measured steps, presenting to our view a tall meagre, yet venerable, figure. In his serene countenance might be traced remains of former beauty, and in his eye, still full of fire, was plainly to be discerned the powers of mind which had distinguished his early years. Instead of the usual salutations, he uttered a short prayer, in which he begged a blessing upon our Chief and his company, and the protection of heaven during the remainder of our journey. He then accompanied us into the house, when he entered into conversation freely upon many subjects, without any superciliousness or affected solemnity.

The Commissary-general reminded him that they had known each other thirty-six years before at Leyden; he was then himself studying the law, and Vander Kemp was in garrison as a lieutenant of dragoons. He named to him the coffee-house where they had often met, and talked over many occurrences.
that had happened jointly to them. The missionary remembered these things very distinctly, observing that he led then a very dissolute life, but he hoped it was expiated by his subsequent conversion, and present course. He related many things worthy of remark during the time that he lived among the Caffres, and elucidated several circumstances that happened in the late unfortunate war with them. Before we sat down to table he again ejaculated a long prayer: he ate very little, drank no wine, had after dinner a private conference with the Commissary-general, and returned in the evening to Bethelsdorp. His colleague Read, who accompanied him, seemed a good-hearted man, but, like most of the missionaries, extremely ignorant. This man, in order to give a striking proof of his lowliness and humility, had married a young Hottentot woman belonging to the establishment. The girl was baptised a few days before her marriage; but neglected as she was by him, both personally, and with regard to the formation of her mind, nobody could be made to believe that he married her at all from inclination.*

Two days after we returned Vander Kemp's visit. It is scarcely possible to describe the wretched situation in which this establishment appeared to us, especially after having seen that at Bavianskloof. On a wide plain, without a tree, almost without water fit to drink, are scattered forty or fifty little huts in the form of hemispheres, but so low that a man cannot stand upright in them. In the midst is a small clay-hut thatched with straw, which goes by the name of a church, and close by, some smaller huts of the same materials for the missionaries. All are so wretchedly built, and are kept with so little care and attention, that they have a perfectly ruinous appearance. For a great way round, not a bush is to be seen, for what there might have been originally, have long ago been used for firewood: the ground all about is perfectly naked, and hard trodden down, no where the least trace of human industry: wherever the eye is cast, nothing is presented but lean, ragged, or naked figures, with indolent sleepy countenances. The support of the missionary institutions in

* Since I began printing this book I have been informed that in the year 1807, the old Vander Kemp, following his colleague's example, had married a young Hottentot girl about thirteen, whose freedom, with that of her mother, he had purchased; not, however, living with her formally as his wife.
England and Holland, the favour of the government, the chace, and the keeping a few cattle, the produce of which is scarcely worth mentioning—these are the means to which two hundred and fifty men have to look for their support.

It cannot be matter of astonishment to anybody that they are found wholly insufficient, and Vander Kemp complained bitterly that he had already been forced to sacrifice the greatest part of his own property. So much the more extraordinary does it appear, that he had never turned his thoughts seriously to instilling habits of industry into his disciples; but all idea of their temporary welfare appears with him to be wholly lost in his anxiety for their eternal salvation. His own hut is totally destitute of all comfort, even of any approach to neatness, and is perfectly consistent with the negligence of earthly cares which he preaches. He remarked, not without great self-satisfaction, how little was necessary to the support of life; but he would surely have done much better when he drew these Hottentots around him, to have inspired them with some sort of taste for the refinements of civilization, rather than to have levelled himself with them, and adopted their habits of negligence and filth. It appears to me that Vander Kemp is of little value as a missionary, partly because he is a mere enthusiast, and too much absorbed in the idea of conversion, partly because he is too learned, that is to say, too little acquainted with the common concerns of life, to turn the attention even of a raw Hottentot to them. Thence comes his total neglect of husbandry and all mechanical employments, though these are the arts in which his disciples must be instructed if he would make them really happy; thence also the perverted view he takes of the conduct which the colonists ought to observe with regard to his institution, since he considers them as bound to assist in its support.*

Even in this seclusion from the world, Vander Kemp has written two large works, which have been printed in Europe. Towards the end of the year 1805, he was summoned to the Cape Town on account of some disturb-

---

* On account of the poverty and wretched situation of the institution, it was called in the neighbourhood, by way of ridicule, Bedelaarsdorp, (Beggar's village) instead of Bethelsdorp. The Commissary-general gave five hundred Dutch guilders from the government chest towards its support.
ances which had arisen in his institution, and it is probable that the con-
sequences would not have been very pleasant to him, if the arrival of the
English had not put an end to the process. It was, however, the occasion
of the institution being removed from the neighbourhood of the Caffre borders
into the interior of the colony. During his stay at the Cape upon this busi-
ness I saw him frequently, and am obliged to him for much of the information
which I now proceed to lay before my readers.
PART III.

DESCRIPTION OF THE CAFFRE TRIBE OF KOOSAS.—FRAGMENT FROM THE JOURNAL OF GENERAL JANSSENS.—OUR OWN JOURNEY ALONG THE BORDERS OF THE CAFFRE-COUNTRY, TO GRAAFF REYNETT.

CHAP. XVIII.

The Caffres—Name, Extent of Country, and Universal Characteristic of this People. —Opinions with Regard to their Origin.—Caffreland.—The Tribe of Koossas.—Their Personal Figure, their Diseases, their Religious Opinions, with various other Particulars.

When the Portuguese, at the beginning of the sixteenth century, first visited the eastern coast of Africa, the farther they went northwards among the nations who had maintained some kind of commercial intercourse with Europe, the more appearance of something inclining towards civilization was to be found among the people. At the time when they first appeared in these seas, vessels were in the habit of passing and repassing between the Malabar coast and the Red-sea. The trade to India was in the hands of the Arabs and Moors of the north-eastern parts of Africa. It was people of these nations who were employed as pilots and negociators, and all knowledge of the countries was derived from them. Being Mohammedans themselves, they gave the general name of Cafer* (Liar, Infidel) to all the inhabitants of the coasts of Southern Africa,

* From the Arabic word Cafara, to lie. Persons skilled in languages, assert, not without reason, that the word should be written Caffer not Kaffer, for the letters Kaf and Kef in the Arabic are very different. It is the more important to attend to this difference, since the word Kafr or Kjafr signifies a level waste. This resemblance of the two words afforded the Arabs an
signifying, by such appellations, the light in which they regarded all persons who were not Mohammedans. They could not, however, have any accurate knowledge of the people whom they thus stigmatised, since Melinda and Quiloa were the farthest points to which they ever traded; and, as the doctrines of Mohammed had found their way to the people on that part of the coast, they could not be included in the stigma, consequently it must be south of them that we are to look for the people who were so.

Ramusio and Barros the Portuguese, as well as Castañas and Faria y Sousa, who first published accounts of the discoveries of their countrymen, gave very imperfect information respecting the northern part of these countries of infidels. They only imparted to the public what the Portuguese who established themselves between Sofala and Mozambique learnt of their nearest neighbours, and thus people began early to separate the kingdoms of Monomatapa, Toroa, and Butua, from the country of the Caffres; yet they undoubtedly ought to be included among them, not only according to the original meaning of the Moorish name, but from the very decided resemblance to be found in the principal characteristics of these people with the Caffres of the present day. Scarcely any thing more was ever heard of a nation bearing this name, till the Dutch colony at the Cape of Good Hope began to extend itself towards the borders of the Caffre country, when the almost-forgotten appellation was again brought forwards. That these people had been entirely lost sight of for three entire centuries, was owing to the Caffre coast being so extremely inaccessible to ships, and to the consequently little political or commercial interest the nation had to offer to Europe. It was owing to these circumstances that the acquaintance of the Europeans with a country which Vasco de Gama, and his immediate successors, represented as one affording so many circumstances of interest and promise, was not renewed till towards the end of the seventeenth century.

What has been related by later travellers in Southern Africa, with respect to these tribes, has increased the former interest to so high a degree, that it ap-

opportunity for a play upon them, that by Caffer, or Kafer, they intended it to be understood that an infidel was no better than a废物.

The Translator has adhered to the orthography generally adopted by English writers, and called these people, throughout the work, Caffres, not choosing to introduce, arbitrarily, a new mode of spelling the word.
pears very desirable to give a more ample description of them. My precursors confine the name of Caffres to a small tribe eastward of the colony, that being the only part they visited, without knowing any thing of the remaining inhabitants of Southern Africa, not included among the Hottentots. They consider the Caffres as distinct from the Tambuckis, the Imbos, the Briquas, &c. and place the people of Mozambique directly in opposition to them. I on the contrary, partly from my own travels (and I visited the Caffre country at two different times in parts very remote from each other), partly from studying the above-mentioned Portuguese works, and no less from information derived from some works of a more modern date*, am of a very different opinion. I consider all the tribes of savages southward from Quiloa, and eastward from the colony of the Cape, very decidedly as a great nation equally distinct from the Negroes and Mohammedans on one side, and from the Hottentots on the other; and would include them all under the general name of Caffres. I venture to place the western boundary of their territory at the meridian of Cape Agulhas; for in the interior of the country Caffre tribes extend to this longitude. From thence the line which divides them from the Korana Hottentots, the Bosjesmans, and the colony of the Cape, must take an oblique direction to the southeast, till it comes to the sources of the Orange-river, whence it descends directly south.

The universal characteristics of all the tribes of this great nation consist in an external form and figure, varying exceedingly from the other nations of Africa. They are much taller, stronger, and their limbs much better proportioned. Their colour is brown—their hair black and woolly. Their countenances have a character peculiar to themselves, and which do not permit their being included in any of the races of mankind above enumerated. They have the high forehead and prominent nose of the Europeans, the thick lips of the Negroes, and the high cheek-bones of the Hottentots. Their beards are black, and much fuller than those of the Hottentots.

* Particularly from the Life and Travels of Maurice Thomas, Augsburg, 1788, a Jesuit, who lived many years in Mozambique and the neighbouring countries; and the Journal of a Voyage performed in the Lion extra Indiaman, from Madras to Colombo and da Lagoa Bay, in 1798, with some Account of the Manners and Customs of the Inhabitants of da Lagoa Bay, by Captain William White, London. 1800.
Their language is full-toned, soft, and harmonious, and spoken without clattering; their root-words are of one and two syllables, their sound simple, without diphthongs. Their pronunciation is slow and distinct, resting upon the last syllable. The dialects differ in the different tribes; but the most distant ones understand each other.

They live chiefly upon flesh, and grow very little corn: a sort of millet, the *Holcus Caffrorum*, is their only sort. Milk is a principal article of food with them.

They are a sort of semi-nomades: they do not change their dwelling-places frequently, and when they are changed it is unwillingly; but they settle themselves easily in a new place. They differ among each other in the degree of cultivation at which they are arrived: those most advanced in civilization are distinguished by their huts being stronger built, and by their less frequent change of place.

There are fewer men than women, on account of the numbers of the former that fall in their frequent wars. Thence comes polygamy, and the women being principally employed in all menial occupations.

Their clothing is skins tanned with some skill. Their arms are the hassagai, the kirri, and a shield. Poisoning their weapons is abhorred by them all.

As to their religion, they believe in an invisible God; but he is not worshipped, neither is he represented by any kind of image, or sought in any thing terrestrial. They believe in magic, and in prognostics: they consecrate cattle; and the youths are circumcised when they are from twelve to fourteen years old.

They have no kinds of alphabetical characters; but appear to have some ideas of drawing. Metals are worked and engraved by them.

The Caffre is warlike and barbarous towards his enemies; disposed to be true to his friends, but distrustful even towards his own countrymen. In peace addicted to indolence; frugal and temperate, loving cleanliness and ornament, and respecting wedded faith. They have, in general, good natural understandings; but the most sensible are, notwithstanding, addicted to the grossest superstition.

A great number of tribes are included among these people, every one of which is governed by its own particular chief, which dignity is hereditary.
Examples of usurpers are, however, not rare. Their internal wars, not only of one tribe against another, but of rebellious captains against their princes, disturb their quiet continually, and prevent their making much progress in civilization. The population would otherwise, from the excellence of the climate, from the bodily strength of the people, and from the custom of polygamy, increase incalculably: indeed, this propensity to an increasing population is very often a cause of their wars: it creates a want of increase of territory, and that leads to encroachments upon their neighbours, which the latter must resist.

These may be called the characteristic features of the nation at large. While in them will be recognised a more than half-uncivilized race, the Caffres must be acknowledged a very distinct people from their next neighbours the Hottentots, inhabiting the inhospitable south-west corner of the great peninsula of Africa; the latter are much lower in stature, poor in understanding and in speech, without government or laws—without any distinction of property: such a race are as distinct from the Caffres, as a Mussulman from a Briton. This difference would be wholly inexplicable, upon the supposition that these nations had, from the remotest times, lived in the neighbourhood of each other; and it is more than probable that both came originally from a very great distance. Perhaps Mr. Barrow, the person who first suggested this idea, goes too far when he supposes the Caffres to have wandered hither directly from Arabia, and to be descendants of the Bedouin tribes. They appear to me of much more ancient descent. A people do not, in a few centuries, go so far back in civilization. We should still find traces of alphabetical signs—more decided remains of their former language and customs would be discernible.

It is true that the practice of circumcision, some slight knowledge of astronomy, their superstition, and the faint traces to be found in their words and names, of being derived from Arabic roots, may seem nearly to remove all doubt; but these monuments only prove that the Caffres are descended from a regularly formed people, as they are now themselves, and as the ancestors of the Hottentots may have been. It is very probable that some great emigration first peopled the whole of the eastern coast of Africa; for it is not probable that the Caffres alone came hither from Arabia and Egypt. Many generations might have passed before this emigration took place, and nothing is adverse to the
supposition that the people of the northern coasts of Africa, who were of Asiatic origin, may have been the immediate ancestors of the Caffres.* This idea receives considerable weight, from their physiognomy having so much less relation with that of the Negroes than with the Hottentots.

Mr. Barrow remarks very rightly that the Caffres have, in many respects, a great resemblance to Europeans; and indeed they have more resemblance to them than either to Negroes or Hottentots: this resemblance is to be remarked particularly in the form of the bones of the face, and in the form of the skull. Their countenance has, however, something in it wholly appropriate to themselves, which, no less than their colour, and the woolly nature of their hair, distinguishes them at the first glance from Europeans. From both the latter characteristics the Translators of Mr. Barrow’s travels † derive the principal foundation of their doubts concerning the accuracy of his opinion with respect to their origin, giving particular weight to the circumstance, that he calls the colour of some of the tribes black. This is, however, not the case with any: here is to be found one of the strongest distinctions between the Caffe and the Negro; the skin of a pure Caffe, when free from all foreign connexion, is rather a clear than a dark brown. The curly hair, indeed, suits but ill with a people of Asiatic origin; but it should not be forgotten, that if of Asiatic descent, we must go back to very remote antiquity for the time when they first wandered from those parts. In a lapse of many centuries, even perhaps of thousands of years, the transforming power of the African climate may have produced an effect upon the hair and the skin; but the firmer parts of the body, the bones, would remain the same under the new climate as under the old, provided the new inhabitants avoided all mixture of breed with the old ones.

Would it be altogether contrary to sense, to seek for the ancestors of the Caffres among the Æthiopian nations, whose caravans travelled northwards even to Meroë and Arabia Felix? Might they not, also, spread themselves to

* Heeren, in his ideas relative to the political state and commerce of the most celebrated nations of antiquity, considers it as highly probable, that in extremely remote times there were considerable emigrations from Arabia, across the Red-Sea, to the opposite coast of Africa. Circumcision prevailed among the Troglodytes, one of the most northern of the Æthiopian nations.

† First part of the Leipsick translation; second part of Ehrmann’s translation.
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

The enquirers into antiquity must decide how far such a supposition is admissible. I recollect, however, among the great ruins of Butua, mentioned by Barros, that the people described there answered very much to what the Caffres are now, as well as to the Agasymbae of Ptolemaeus. The similarity of some few Caffre words with the Arabic affords another presumption that they have a common origin; or perhaps it were to express myself more properly to say, that it is probable in the former intercourse of commerce these words were adopted by both nations.

But not to weary my readers with a more diffuse examination into this subject, I will venture to submit the following conjectures, as the results probable to be established by a more extensive and accurate knowledge of the African nations.

First: That the southern parts of Africa were originally peopled from the northern.

Secondly: That the uninhabitable nature of large tracts of country in the interior prevented the equal progress of this population.

Thirdly: That they followed first the direction of the coast, the Caffres remaining in the eastern parts of it; but the Hottentots spreading towards the west, and even to the southern point.

Fourthly: The hilly country on the eastern coast afforded these pastoral tribes an easy and happy means of subsistence, this side of Africa being habitable much farther inland than the western parts: here we find a much stronger race of men than among those who spread themselves along the southern and western coasts.

Fifthly: On the flat, sandy plains along the western coast, south of the equator, the soil offers but poor resources for the support of life, which naturally leads the inhabitants of those parts rather to the hunter's than to the shepherd's life. The people then who wandered hither would consequently lose that degree of cultivation which was preserved among the inhabitants of the eastern coast, and from the instability of their lives, destitute of property, would spread themselves continually, till reaching the southern extremity, they could go no farther.

* I must again cite Heeren, who reconciles the pastoral lives of these people with their journeys in caravans, in a very satisfactory manner.
Sixthly: It was in this way that the Hottentots reached the southern coast some centuries earlier than the Caffres. They were then in a situation to return somewhat to their pastoral life, and while the Gonaquas, situated on the fertile banks of the Chamtoo river, became a peaceable and somewhat more civilised people, the Saabs,* who remained on the dry and desert plains of the northern parts, sank gradually to the very lowest step of physical and moral degradation.

Seventhly: At every step they made towards the east, the Hottentots found the country more fertile; they inhabited it therefore far beyond the present boundary between the colony and the Caffre country. For to this day many of the rivers and hills have Hottentot names.

Eighthly: But they were driven back by the Caffres, who in the mean time had come down from the north, and now met with them here. This encounter had taken place long before these parts were visited by the Portuguese, since Vasco de Gama found Caffres at that time settled at Terra do Natal, and Terra da boa paz.

Ninthly: Nothing that we know respecting the inhabitants of the eastern coast of Africa contradicts their being directly descended from the Troglodytes and Macrobians. The people of the higher parts of this coast vary indeed very much in their colour and features from those of the more southern districts, but a relationship to the Caffres is very discernible in them, and at the same time they are perfectly distinguished from the Negroes of Western Africa.

Tenthly: A striking agreement is to be observed between the Caffres and the people of Mozambique, of Madagascar, of Zanguebar, and of Abyssinia, both in their figure, customs, and modes of life.

As to what more immediately concerns the extent of the Caffre country, according to the comprehensive sense above taken, all the heathen nations, even to Quiloa, perhaps to Mombaze, must be included within it. But our knowledge of the northern part of this tract is at present too imperfect to say decidedly whether it ought or ought not to be considered in this light, nor must we, in speaking of the Caffres, be regarded as meaning our observations to extend to the inhabitants of it. As much of this tract then as descends

* Saabs is the name given by the Korana Hottentots to the Bosjesmans.
to the twenty-fifth degree of southern latitude must be passed over as the unknown part of the Caffre country, and we must wait for more accurate information before any thing farther can be said with regard to it: till that is obtained we must rest contented with the scanty particulars afforded by Father Thomans. The Caffres in the neighbourhood of da Lagoa bay are somewhat better known since the publication of Captain White's valuable observations upon the inhabitants of those parts, and in the sequel it will be seen that some interesting features of resemblance may be traced in support of our hypothesis. A third region of the Caffre country, in which it begins to be more known, is Beetjuel, in the interior of Southern Africa, between the sixteenth and twenty-fifth degrees of southern latitude: of this part more will be said in the sequel, since it was one which I myself visited. But the tribes of which we have the most perfect knowledge are those lying on the southernmost part of the eastern coast, between the twenty-ninth and thirty-third degree of southern latitude. It is of them that I propose to give a more accurate and ample description than has been given hitherto.* This will occasion for awhile an interruption to the narrative of our journey, but will render the remainder, I hope, more intelligible.

The country in which Sparmann, Le Vaillant, and Mr. Barrow became acquainted with the Caffres, was one never inhabited by them. It is probable, as above hinted, that it was once inhabited by the Hottentots, and it is also probable, from many circumstances, that these Caffres themselves in earlier times inhabited a happier country; though, since they had been neighbours to the Hottentots, they had gone backwards in civilization. They are a step lower in cultivation than the Caffres of Beetjuel, in the interior of the country.

Before I proceed to the description of their customs and modes of life, I

* These sheets were printed thus far, when I received from Holland the work lately published by my friend Alberti, upon the Caffres, entitled: _De Kaffers aan de Zuidkust van Africa, natuur-en geschiedkundig beschreven._ This description is much more ample than mine, and I propose therefore to incorporate some of the most important parts with the remainder of my own description. I must also mention that Vander Kemp's observations upon the Caffres, imparted nine years before to the Mission Institute at London, was by them printed in the Evangelical Magazine for February, 1802. A German translation of them was published in the July and September following, in the Universal Geographical Ephemerides.
must acknowledge the obligations we are under to Mr. Barrow, for the manner in which he has introduced these people to our acquaintance. His remarks upon them are in the principal points perfectly accurate; they are put together with a particular spirit of observation, and seem to have been collected with particular industry. I consider myself as the rather bound to make this acknowledgment, since I have in so many other instances combated the views he took of things; I might therefore be suspected of having wished to decry his work, in order to exalt my own. I must, however, intreat those who are disposed to make such a remark to consider that praise is comprehended in a few words, but on the contrary, faults must necessarily be dwelt upon; they require proof before they can be demonstrated to be faults, and every opinion in which one writer differs from another must be supported by argument, in order to make it appear that his opinion is the right. He would, however, be highly deserving of censure who should suppress what appears to him the truth, from a desire of avoiding difference of opinion; who should abstain from noticing what appear to him faults and errors, because they are to be found in an author held in very general esteem; it is even the more necessary for that very reason to notice them, because the error spreads the more widely, in proportion to the reputation of the writer by whom it has been circulated. I do not claim any particular merit to myself that I saw many things much more fully and clearly than he did, since his information and researches had in a great degree smoothed the way for me. He who is desirous of obtaining an accurate knowledge of the Caffre tribes, of which I mean particularly to treat, will not find Mr. Barrow's observations superfluous by the side of mine, since I have diligently avoided a repetition of whatever he has fully and accurately described. Where my testimony is in contradiction to his, I only desire that credit may be given me for differing, upon the fullest conviction that I am in the right, and from a consciousness that I had more opportunity of knowing the real fact than he had.

The tribe of which I mean more particularly to speak call themselves Koossas, or Kaussas, but to their country they give the name of Ammakosina. These people are exceedingly offended at being called Caffires,* and have

* How much the name of Caffre is held in contempt over the whole colony may be understood from the circumstance that the executioner's servant in the Cape Town, who is taken from among the blacks condemned to work at the fortifications, is called the Caffre.
the more reason to object to it, since in their language $j$ is a sound that occurs but seldom, $f'$ and $r$ never. As to the outward form of the Koossas, the same may be said of them as has been said of the nation in general; the men are handsome, strong made, and their limbs exquisitely proportioned. They are in general from five feet six to five feet nine inches high; some are even considerably taller, as for instance, their King Geika; but few indeed are less. Alberti once saw a man not more than five feet high, but he was an universal object of ridicule among them. The skull of the Caffre is highly arched and well formed, his eye is lively, his nose not flat, but sufficiently prominent, and his teeth of the most brilliant whiteness. They hold themselves exceedingly upright; their step is quick and dignified; their whole exterior denotes strength and spirit.

The women are not less handsome, but much smaller, seldom exceeding five feet in height. A very sleek soft skin, beautiful teeth, pleasing features, expressive of great cheerfulness and content, and a slender form, make them even in the eyes of an European exceedingly attractive. The dark colour of the skin, and the short black hair drawn together in little locks, somewhat detract from this agreeable impression, before the eye is accustomed to them.

Both men and women have the custom of colouring their bodies red with a sort of earth, or with iron rust. They mix this with water, and then rub themselves well till it is dried on, after which they smear it over with fat. This is not renewed every day, only once in three or four days. Very few of the Koossas are to be found tattooed, but among the more distant Caffre tribes this custom is not at all unfrequent.

Diseases are but little known among them; and their temperate modes of life, interrupted by few cares, or by violent corporal exertions, will sufficiently account for this. The most dangerous complaint to which they are subject is a violent fever, attended with eruption. For this they make use of both external and internal remedies, the utility of which they have learned from experience, but the effect of them is considered as magic, or rather the recovery of the patient is considered as his being disenchanted: their materia medica is rich in those nonsensical kind of remedies which we should call sympathetic. At times these fevers are epidemic, when they have recourse to local bleeding: rheumatic pains in the limbs are among the symptoms of this disease, and they are generally relieved by the loss of blood. The
diseased limb is pierced in several places with a sharp pointed iron, when the end of a cow's horn is applied to the wounded part, in the manner of a cupping-glass, by which the blood is drawn out. This manner of bleeding was observed by Kolbe among the Hottentots, and is described by him in his work. Intermittent fevers are unknown to the Caffres: their soil is dry, they have no lakes or morasses, and their huts are commonly built about three or four hundred paces from the river, at which their cattle are to drink.

The small-pox has at various times raged exceedingly in the country, and from the effects it is plain that it has done so in no very remote times: numbers of men not more than thirty years of age are now to be seen exceedingly marked with it. It was particularly prevalent in the years 1753 and 1754: some believe that the infection was brought by some beads which they had purchased of a distant tribe, others are of opinion that it was taken from the crew of a vessel stranded upon their coast. I could not find, upon the most accurate enquiries, the least traces of any prevailing chronic diseases among them, and the answers they made, when I questioned them upon the subject of infectious ones, lead me to suppose that they are not liable to any except the small-pox. Another disease is here wholly unknown. A man who had resided for some time in the colony, in the district of Graaff Reynett, returning with it, was banished as soon as the dangerous nature of his complaint was discovered, nor was he suffered to re-enter the country till he was entirely cured.

A very extraordinary circumstance which I had to remark among these people is, that I never knew one of them sneeze, yawn, cough, or hawk. I do not rest this entirely upon my own observation; the very same thing was remarked by our whole party. They never have colds or catarrhs, and it may be presumed, according to appearances, that they are equally free from the spleen and ennui.

It is very remarkable how nicely attentive they are in many respects to the little decorums of life: no one ever rubs or scratches himself in the presence of another, though they are in general very much troubled with vermin: indecorums of a grosser kind are still less admissible. They are particular in training their children to a nice observance of these things; and a little boy, who once in Vander Kemp's presence transgressed in some way, was immediately sent out of the door.
Among the Koossas there is no appearance of any religious worship whatever. They believe in the existence of a great Being who created the world, but in their own language, as Vander Kemp assured me, they have no name by which he is called: they have therefore adopted one from the Gonaquaas, who call him Thiko. The Caffres, however, pronounce the word Thuke, which word Vander Kemp says signifies exciter of smart. I have heard some Caffres pronounce the word Thauqua.

Their superstition, their belief in magic or enchantment, and in omens and prognostics, is in proportion to their want of religious feelings: they even draw omens from their own hands. There are among them persons who occupy themselves solely with divinations and magic, and who hold in a certain degree the rank of priests. The missionaries who have hitherto come into the country have been universally considered as magicians or diviners, and it was this which drove Vander Kemp finally out of the country. Once when a great drought prevailed, the queen-mother sent to him to say, that if he did not bring them rain in three days, he should be considered as an enemy and betrayer, and treated accordingly; for they have great faith in the power of magicians over the weather. He had besides talked much to them about imploring God, and his inclining his ear to them, so that they could not be persuaded but that he could procure rain if he would. It happened, however, fortunately for him, that rain fell within the three days, so that for that time he was safe; but they were the more urgent with him afterwards, as it seemed clear that the thing was entirely in his power; and since, upon future occasions, several times in succession, his prayers had not the desired effect, he was obliged at last to secure his personal safety by flight. The king, whose ideas were somewhat more rational, protected him awhile, but at length advised his departure. In many other instances Geika also shewed more understanding than his subjects, but his confidence in the prayers of the christians was not less than their's, and Buys assured us that

*One of my learned friends reminded me, on reading this part, of the gypsies, between whom and the Caffres there are certainly many points of resemblance. It would, however, be very difficult to account in any probable way for this fact, without giving what might, perhaps, be thought too much weight to the presumption, that the origin of both is to be sought among the people of Northern Africa.
he was often obliged to pray for him, particularly once in a dangerous illness; and as he recovered from it, he was only obliged on that account to be more assiduous in his prayers. The Koossas, when they want to affirm any thing very solemnly, or to utter any malediction, make use of the name of their king, or of some of his ancestors, as Non Geika! Non Chachâbe! Non Khambuhâje!

There are places which nobody passes over without throwing a stone, a twig, or a bunch of grass upon them, though I could not find that they had any reason to give for it: probably they are the graves of some persons of particular merit, whose bodies, from pious superstition, they would guard against being scratched up by wild beasts: they always intreat all passers-by to encrease the mounds upon the graves, by throwing a stone or bush upon them.

At the mouth of the river Keissi, or Keisskamma, as it is called by the Hottentots, lies the anchor of a stranded ship. Chachâbe, the grandfather of the present king, had a piece of it broken off, and it so happened that the person by whom this was done died soon after. The anchor was immediately considered as an enchanter, who had power over the sea, and was angry at the offence which had been given him; a name was in consequence conferred upon him, and he is saluted by it whenever any one passes the spot.

If an elephant is killed after a very long and wearisome chase, as is commonly the case, they seek to exculpate themselves towards the dead animal, by declaring to him solemnly, that the thing happened entirely by accident, not by design. To atone for the offence more completely, or to make his power of no avail, the trunk is cut off and solemnly interred, they pronouncing repeatedly: “The elephant is a great lord, and the trunk is his hand.”*

Their songs are chiefly learned from the tribe of Mathimba,† who say that they received them from a number of birds, with the heads of men, who came into their country, and used to sing them by night. The sense of the songs is not to be unravelled, and the greater part does not consist of words, but of single syllables, which are not comprehensible to themselves.

It is a current belief among them, that far to the north of their country, there is a vast subterraneous cavern, from which their horned cattle originally

---

* This circumstance is taken from Alberti’s work. † The Tambuckis of Mr. Barrow.
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

255
came, and that cows and oxen might still be procured from it in great abundance, if the entrance of the cavern could again be found, and a proper bait silently laid there. The cattle would then come forth, when they might be taken, and they would bring a blessing upon the possessor.

Sometimes, as Buys informed me, they will burn a whole ox alive. The smoke which ascends from it is an object of their very particular, even almost devotional observation, but no one has yet been so fortunate as to learn what is understood by it.

Their diseases are all ascribed to three causes, either to being enchanted by an enemy, to the anger of certain beings, whose abode appears to be in the rivers, or to the power of evil spirits. The cures consist in the first place of medicines, which have probably a good effect, but recourse is also had to some means of appeasing the wrath of the being in the river, by throwing him in a four-footed beast—a dog, a hare, or something of the kind. If the question be of an evil spirit, and of these they have a great variety, called by the general appellation of Thokilohse and Umsjuluhgu, he must be driven away. This task must be performed by a magician, and the people, who are easily deceived, are taught to see the evil spirit under the form of some animal, a serpent perhaps, or a wasp, or a spider, and all that remains is to catch him, and put him to death.

The following particulars are related by Alberti: The Koossas have no priests or religious ceremonies; thence, according to his opinion, their want of traditions. They know of nothing but enchanters, and these are of two sorts, well-disposed and evil-disposed. It is only by the assistance of the former that the evil influence of the latter can be combated. For the most part it is old women who occupy themselves with magic, in the good sense, and gain their livelihood by it. If a disease be considered as owing to enchantment, one of these enchantresses is sent for. She forms a number of little pellets of cow-dung, which she lays upon the belly, this being considered as the seat of all inward complaints, making many mysterious gestures and grimaces, and pronouncing certain mysterious words, bringing forth at last a snake, a tortoise, a lizard, by which she affirms the patient to be enchanted, and that this is the cause of his illness. If the sick man dies, the excuse is that the appointed term of his life was expired, and he would have died without the effect of the enchantment; or else the wizard honestly confesses that the power of the evil spirit was greater than her own. Before the
beginning of the cure she stipulates for her reward, which is commonly a cow or an ox, but this must be returned if the remedies prove unsuccessful.

Not content, however, with the restoration of the patient, it is necessary that he by whom he was enchanted shall be exposed. For this purpose the whole horde must be collected together: the enchantress then shuts herself up alone in a hut, where she says she must sleep, in order to see the malefactor in a dream. The people without, in the mean time, dance and sing for awhile, till at length the men go into the hut, and beg the enchantress to come forward. At first she hesitates, then they carry her a number of hassagais as a present, when she comes forth with the weapons in her hand; her eyelid, her arm, and thigh, on the left side whitened, but on the right died black: she is half naked, being only covered about the middle, but is soon clothed with mantles from all sides. She is then required to name the enchanter: she still hesitates, but soon throws the mantles aside, and rushes amidst the people with her hassagais, striking with one of them the person whom she means to point out as the aggressor. He is then seized, but before any punishment is inflicted, the enchantress must declare where he has concealed the instrument by which the enchantment was performed. She names a place; it is searched, and a skull, or some other part of the human body, is found, when the accused is fully convicted of the crime. The punishment to which, according to her counsel, he is commonly sentenced, is either to be buried under an ant heap, there to be stung by these animals, or else to be laid on the ground and covered with hot stones. Should he survive these tortures, instances of which have happened, he is banished the horde, his hut reduced to ashes, and all his property confiscated to the chief, the enchantress being still the person who dictates all these things. It therefore not uncommonly happens, that a man who possesses a more than usual number of cattle, is accused by the old lady and brought to punishment. Sometimes the weight of offence falls upon her own head, and she is seized by the people, when her fate is sealed by repeated blows from the kirri. Sometimes the accused person exculpates himself by affirming that the true enchanter has laid the fault upon him to keep himself concealed: if the enchantress admits the legality of this excuse, he is then declared innocent.

In long continued droughts they have recourse to magic to procure rain. A Hottentot commonly, very seldom one of their own people, is made use of for this purpose. A certain number of cattle are brought to him, of which he
chooses one, when it is slain, and he dips a rod in the blood, with which he sprinkles the ground all about: he afterwards walks round in a circle for some time with a thoughtful air, and then goes into a hut by himself. They wait patiently for a month, but if no rain falls by the end of that time, and the poor exorciser has not removed himself out of the way, he is seized without any farther accusation, and put to death.

They have many opinions with regard to uncleanliness strongly resembling those of the Jews. A husband who has lost his wife is considered unclean for a fortnight, a widow is so for a month, and a mother who has lost a child for two days: all persons attending at the death of another are so, as well as all men returning from a battle; and during the time it continues, no one must have any intercourse with them; they must then be purified by their bodies being washed and new dyed, and their mouths being rinced with milk. This must not be done till the full time is expired, and during the interval they must forego all washing and dying their bodies, or the use of milk. An enchanter is considered as unclean, but may be purified by renouncing his art, and undergoing a solemn washing in the river.

If any one kills a man he is considered as unclean. He must then roast his meat upon a fire made of a particular sort of wood, which gives it a bitter taste, and having eaten it, must rub his face over with the cooled embers till it is quite black. After a certain time he may wash himself, rinse his mouth with milk, and dye himself brown anew. From that time he is clean.

Does a lion come into the neighbourhood of a kraal, the people go out in a considerable number, armed with hassagais, kirris, and shields. The lion is surrounded, and enclosed in a narrow circle. They then tease him with their lances till he springs out from the bush, and attacks one of the hunters; the latter falls upon the ground, covering himself with his shield, when the rest attack the animal with their spears, and dispatch him: sometimes, however, some of them are wounded, or even lose their lives in the conflict. The first who receives a wound is considered as a hero, though he is made unclean by it for a time. When the hunting-party return to the kraal, the hero is raised by his companions upon their shields, and held up to the view of the people. One of them steps forward with strange gestures, and makes a speech in praise of the warrior; the rest continue somewhat behind, singing a sort of hymn, and striking with their kirris upon their shields. Some others, in the mean time.
hastily build up a small mean hut at a little distance from the general dwelling-place, and here the hero is shut up apart from all the rest for four complete days; he is then purified, and brought in solemn form by a life-guard of the Chief, back to the kraal. In conclusion, a calf is slain, which all his companions partake with him, as a proof that he is again clean.

When the Koossas wish to do honour to any body, they give him a new name, the meaning of which nobody knows but the person who gives it. This is particularly done by any white people, who come among them, and remain with them for any time. Vander Kemp had in this way three names given him, *Jinkhanna, Gobuhso, and Tabeka-Kelekré.* It is incomprehensible how soon a stranger is known throughout the country by his new appellation.

If a storm falls upon a kraal, it must be immediately forsaken by its inhabitants, or at least the hut or huts that have been struck must be pulled down, and the place purified by the slaughter of a certain number of oxen. Till this is done nobody can come into the kraal, or have any intercourse with its inhabitants. Should this misfortune happen to the king’s kraal, or to one which had been his habitation, a hundred oxen must be slain, and all left there. Any one who pleases may come and carry away the flesh; the rest becomes the portion of the hyænas.

As soon as they perceive a sick man near his end, he is carried from his hut to some solitary spot under the shade of a tree: a fire is then made, and a vessel with water set near him. Only the husband or wife, and the nearest relations, remain with him. If he appear dying, the water is thrown over his head in hopes of its reviving him; but should this fail, and it is evident that he must die, he is left by every body, except the husband, if it be a woman, or the wife if it be a man: the relations stand at a distance, and the person staying calls to them from time to time to let them know how the sick person goes on, and at length to announce his death. When that is over, the relations purify themselves, and then return to their habitations.* The wife,

---

* According to Vander Kemp’s information, a dying person is sometimes forsaken by every body, and if it should happen that he comes to himself, he is set out again for the second time. The motive of so horrible a proceeding seems to be a superstition, that an illness, or a misfortune of any kind, may fall four-fold upon others if the sufferer be not driven away. From the same motive, if they see a person drowning, or in danger of his life in any way, particularly
however, who must pay the last duties to her husband, cannot do this. She leaves the body, about which no one is any longer solicitous, to become a prey to some hyæna, and goes with a firebrand taken from the fire that had been kindled near the dying man, to some other solitary place, where she again makes a fire, and though it should rain ever so hard, she must not suffer it to be extinguished. In the night, she comes secretly to the hut where she had lived with her husband, and burns it, then returns back to her solitude, where she must remain a month, entirely secluded from the world, and living the whole time upon roots and berries. When this time is expired, she throws away her clothes, washes her whole body, scratches her breast, arms, and thighs, with sharp stones, girds her body round with rushes twisted together, and at sun-set returns to the kraal. At her desire a firebrand is brought her by a youth to the place where her hut stood, and there she makes a fire. At the same time she is served with fresh milk to rinse her mouth, and from that moment she becomes clean. The cow from which the milk was drawn, on the contrary, is rendered impure, and though not killed, is no more milked, but neglected entirely, and left to die a natural death. The next day an ox is killed by the relations; they eat its flesh with her, and give her the skin to make a new mantle. By the help of her sisters and sisters-in-law she then builds herself a new hut, and re-enters into social life.

A widower has nearly the same mourning ceremonies to observe, only with the difference that his seclusion lasts but half a month. He then throws his garments away, and prepares himself a new cloak from the skin of an ox. He takes besides the hair from the tail of the ox, with which he makes a necklace, and wears it as long as it will last. The ox becomes impure, but is not killed. If a grown person dies suddenly in his hut, the whole kraal becomes impure, and must be abandoned by its inhabitants. The corpse remains undisturbed in the hut. If a child dies in the same manner, the hut alone becomes impure, and must be closed up and forsaken.

if he should utter a scream of terror, they always run away from him, nay, will even turn and throw stones at him. Even women in child-birth dare not cry out, lest every body should forsake them, and they should be left helpless and alone. It is probably these customs which have given rise to what has been related by former travellers, that the Cafrres throw their superannuated old men alive to the hyænas.
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

It is only the Chiefs and their wives who are buried. They are left to die in their huts; the corpse is then wrapped in the mantle, and the grave is made in the fold for the cattle. After the earth is thrown in, some of the oxen are driven into the fold, and remain there till the earth is entirely trodden down so as not to be distinguishable from the rest. The oxen are then driven out, but they must not be killed. The widows of the deceased burn all the household utensils which they and their husband had used together, and after remaining three days in solitude, purify themselves according to the usual manner; they then each kill an ox, and each makes herself a new mantle of the skin: the place is after this forsaken by all its inhabitants, and never built upon any more, not even by another horde. Sometimes in the spots where Chiefs have been buried bones are seen, but it is regarded as a very ill omen when their bones are disturbed from any cause whatever. A Chief whose wife dies has the same ceremonials to observe as another man, excepting that with him the time of mourning is only three days. The place in which the wife of a Chief is buried is forsaken in the same manner as in the case of the Chief himself.

The physical treatment of children among the Koossas is the most simple possible. If the mother has not sufficient milk to nourish her child it is fed with cow's milk, but no woman ever suckles the child of another: this their superstitions will not permit: healthy mothers commonly suckle their children till they are two years old. Diseases among infants are rare; some few die in cutting their teeth, from cramps and bowel complaints; for these they give them the slimy sap pressed from the leaves of a particular species of mesembryanthemum. It is very rare indeed to hear a child cry; all my companions agreed with me in this point; we never knew an infant scream, or an older child weep. Till the children are about seven or eight years old, they remain entirely under the mother's care, who keeps them obedient by restraint, without the father's concerning himself with them. As soon as the boys are old enough to be employed in any kind of service, perhaps to look after the calves, they are taken entirely under the father's tuition; the girls remain with the mother, and are trained up to little household occupations, fetching wood and water, or the like. All children above ten or eleven years old are publicly instructed under the inspection of the Chief; the boys in the use of arms, and other things
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

wherein strength of body is required; the girls in works by the hand, and household services.

The boys are early taken to join the occupation of their fathers in tending the cattle, and, as pay, have some of the young ones awarded to them. When grown up, the little herd is increased by a present from the father, and then the youth begins to think of employing a part of it in the purchase of a wife. He enters into a commercial negociation with the father of the maiden whom he has chosen, and the price is in proportion to the situation of the respective parties, or the wealth of the bridegroom. Some other circumstances, however, enter into the contract; for example, if a girl be particularly handsome, it will procure her admission sometimes into a more wealthy family than her own, and her father will get a higher price for her.

Most of the Koossas have but one wife; the kings and chiefs of the kraals only have four or five. The nuptials are celebrated with the slaughter of oxen, and with banquetings, which last until the flesh of the animals is entirely eaten: the father has then no more concern with the bride; she belongs entirely to her husband.

Orphan children are educated by the brothers of their father, and the marriage price to be given for the maiden then becomes the uncle's. If, however, she has brothers come to manhood, the eldest of them has the advantage of the purchase, but he must give something out of it to the younger ones.

Alberti gives us the following information relative to the marriage ceremonies among these people. To the feeling of a chaste tender passion, founded on reciprocal esteem, and an union of heart and sentiment, they seem entire strangers. The necessity of mutual assistance in household concerns, and the propensities of nature, are the motives which unite the youth and maiden to each other. That this union, according to the ordinances of these people, or at least according to their uninterrupted custom, is for their whole lives, and perfectly indissoluble, is a proof that they have attained, or retained, a not contemptible station in the scale of moral and social civilization.

The young man commonly endeavours, in the first place, to gain the goodwill and consent of the maiden; yet that is not always the case. Sometimes, nor is this very unfrequent, he waves the consideration of her consent, and occupies himself in the first instance with seeking to obtain her from her father on the best possible terms. The price is generally a certain number of cows; a portion of these is brought by the suitor, and if the parents are not satisfied,
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

he brings another and another cow till they are so. The number seldom exceeds ten, except in the case of the bridegroom being extraordinarily rich, or the bride being extraordinarily handsome. The bartering for the price often continues several days, both parties examining carefully into the advantages they may derive from the transaction, before the bargain is brought to a close. As soon as it is arranged, the bride, with her parents, relations, and companions, goes to the habitation of the bridegroom, where the chief of the kraal and almost all the inhabitants are assembled. A number of oxen are then slain, with the flesh of which the whole assembly are feasted for four days. On the fourth, the bride, after having been ornamented by her companions, in particular having been new dyed, is led by two of them before the Chief, who, with his train, has taken his place in the general cattle-fold belonging to the kraal. He now declares his formal consent to the marriage, the bride giving at the same time her solemn assurance that she will be a faithful and industrious wife, and that her husband shall never have any cause of complaint against her. When she retires, the bridegroom in like manner appears before the chief, and gives equal assurances, that he will be hospitable and careful in the entertainment of his guests, and will duly pay the tributes he owes to the king, and to his representative, the Chief of the kraal. The bridegroom then returns to the company, and his relations hand a basket of milk to the bride, reminding her that it is from the cows which belonged to the bridegroom or some of his family. Of this milk she must not drink as long as the bridegroom is only her suitor, but now she is to drink it, and from this moment the union is indissolubly concluded. All the people present shout unanimously, and begin dancing, crying, "She drinks the milk! She hath drank the milk!"

* It is curious to observe, how much among these pastoral people, milk, which is one of their principal articles of food, has, when taken under particular circumstances, a highly symbolical signification affixed to it. The drinking of milk is the last act by which a maiden is consecrated as a wife: no person while in a state of impurity must drink of it, and the being permitted to drink it again is the conclusion of the purification. The cow, of whose milk the widow drinks after her days of mourning are completed, becomes impure, while she is purified. What a coincidence with the ideas of many celebrated nations, both of antiquity and of the middle ages! Yet this coincidence is less to be regarded as conclusive of the customs being transmitted from ancient times, than as proving how closely the idea of moral impurity is connected among people arrived at a certain degree of moral and political civilization, with the sacred signification and purifying medium of a principal article of food, taken under particular circumstances, as milk, blood, bread, &c.
If a youth have made an agreement with the parents of a maiden for an union with her, the bargain once closed the latter cannot refuse to surrender herself; if she makes any attempts at resisting the union, corporal punishment is even resorted to, in order to compel her submission: if still she wishes to show her dislike to the marriage, she drives the cattle, which the bridegroom brought as a present to her parents, out of the fold.

Sometimes it happens that parents are desirous of offering their daughter as wife to a man of particular distinction, and then the following ceremonies are observed. The maiden goes by night, attended by a number of her young companions, to the habitation of the bridegroom, who is already apprised of her intentions. When there, the party by coughing, hemming, or some other kinds of noises, contrive to make their arrival known: somebody then comes from the hut, and asks, Who is there? One of the women mentions the name of the bride, and some distant place whence she comes. Although it be not always true that she does come from a distance, yet immemorial custom prescribes that she should be represented as an entire stranger. The travellers are then introduced into an empty hut, and presented with wood and fire; food they bring with them, that they may not be considered as needy. The next day the bridegroom assembles the bride’s relations to enquire of them into the state of her health. The young man is then asked by her parents whether he is disposed to take the young woman as his wife. He commonly replies that he wishes first to be better acquainted with her, in which case she is left alone with him the following night. If, after that, he declares himself in her favour, the negotiation for the price commences, and she returns home till it is concluded; then the ceremonies above described are all observed. If a widow is about to marry again, the parents are again to receive a certain number of cows from the bridegroom, but not so many as in the instance of the first marriage.

Till the birth of the first child the parents must not make use of the milk from the cows they have received as the price of the wife. After her delivery they present the son-in-law with a cow. The husband must also make the sisters of his wife some little present; they take it exceedingly ill if he does not. If a wife dies without children, the cows that her parents received for her must be returned.
Marriages between an uncle and niece, and between the children of brothers and sisters, are not permitted. The father-in-law must not see his daughter-in-law but in the presence of other persons: if by chance he should find her alone, she must not stay with him: neither must she ever appear before him with her head uncovered. The same rules must be observed between a mother-in-law and her son-in-law.

Where there is more than one wife, the domestic peace is seldom disturbed by it, since for the most part each wife has her separate habitation. There are many instances, however, where a man has not more than two wives, that they live all together, and in the utmost harmony. The children are brought up in common; the wives share equally the household work, and in case of sickness attend upon each other like sisters. If any misunderstanding should happen, the youngest must leave the house, and build a separate hut for herself. The husband does not concern himself with the quarrel, but lives in peace with both, sometimes taking his meals and lodging with one, sometimes with the other, according to his pleasure. The Caffre women are very prolific, having upon an average from eight to ten children.

Separations between a man and wife rarely occur: a woman who runs away from her husband is by command of the Chief of the horde brought back to her duty by force. A violation of the marriage vow is only a crime with the wife; a husband may live without disgrace upon the most intimate footing either with an unmarried woman or a widow. If a man detects his wife in the act of violating her vow, he has a right to put the seducer to death upon the spot; this however he seldom does, finding it more advantageous to complain to the Chief, and share with him the fine to which the culprit is sentenced. If a man detects the infidelity of his wife by her unexpected pregnancy, the seducer must be named to the Chief; she is even constrained to it by blows: the offender is then fined a number of cattle, which are shared between the Chief and the husband. This done, the wife has no farther reproach to fear, the child then belongs to her husband, and is brought up by him. A young woman who violates her chastity has not much more shame to apprehend. If she cannot be married to her seducer, he pays a fine of cattle to her parents, and it is no obstacle to her future marriage. A traveller remaining some time with a horde, easily finds an unmarried young
woman, with whom he contracts the closest intimacy; nay, it is not uncommon, as a mark of hospitality, to offer him one as a companion.

Notwithstanding this, the Koossa women have a great deal of decency and modesty in their behaviour. Their clothing covers their whole body; only their face, arms, and feet are uncovered. They avoid carefully every unnecessary exposure of their persons in suckling their children, or in wading through a river, and never appear before strangers with their heads uncovered. No woman thinks of mixing in public business; the women are entirely excluded from the deliberations which the Chief sometimes holds with the principal people of the horde. In extraordinary instances only are exceptions made, as where a woman has from her age obtained a particular degree of experience, and from her situation commands respect; this is the case with the present king’s mother. But the woman’s influence in household affairs is proportionably great; they are directed almost entirely by her. Even in the manner of disposing of the common property, the wife has the principal direction, and the husband submits to her opinion so unconditionally, that even after closing a bargain in the way of trade, he not unfrequently recedes, because his wife refuses her consent to it. A man never mingles in his wife’s quarrels as long as they are confined to words, but if blows ensue, he then steps forward immediately as her protector and defender.

The Koossas have a very laudable respect for their parents, and their relations, who are advanced in years. A father, when unable, on account of his age, to attend any longer to his affairs himself, gives up his whole property indiscriminately to his sons, and is sure of receiving the utmost care and kindness from them for the remainder of his life. Any one who should fail in respect for his father, or shew any neglect of him, would draw on himself the contempt of the whole horde; there have been even instances in which want of filial duty has been punished with infamy and banishment. During his whole life a father must be consulted in all his son’s undertakings, and after his death the uncle or elder brother, as his representative, must be the counsellor. All persons advanced in years have particular respect shewn them, their advice is always listened to, and if they become sick and helpless, every one is eager to afford them assistance. Poor relations are not less kindly treated, and if any one is sick, and has not cattle sufficient to pay for
being disenchanted, his nearest relations do not hesitate a moment to furnish whatever is necessary for his restoration.

The business of the wife consists not only in the whole care of the domestic management, and the education of the children, but many works are done by women which in other countries are chiefly performed by men. Not only all the household utensils, pottery, baskets, and cloaths are made by them, but they also build the houses, cultivate the land, gather in the fruits, and collect the fire-wood. The men in time of peace employ themselves only in the chase, and in tending the cattle.
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

CHAP. XIX.

Description of the Koosa Caffres continued.—Their Habitations and Cattle-folds.—Their Manner of keeping their Cattle.—Their Food.—The Chase.—Agriculture.—Cloathing and Ornaments.—Their Arms.—Manner of fighting.—Works of Art.

The huts of the Koossas are in the form of a hemisphere, from eight to nine feet in diameter, and are seldom sufficiently lofty for a man to stand upright in them. The entrance is about four feet high, and is closed by a door of lattice-work. The skeleton of the hut is composed of slender poles stuck into the ground in a circle, at the distance of about a foot from each other, and united together in the centre. The spaces between the poles are filled up with twigs, or rather faggots, and then the whole is covered over to a certain height with a mixture of clay and cow-dung, the remainder being thatched with rushes. The hordes inhabiting the interior of the country, who live more quietly, and do not change their habitations so often, build their huts stronger, and for the most part double, that is to say, two together, which are united by a low anti-chamber, if that name may be given to it. The floor of the hut is a kind of plaster made of the white-ant heaps, beat very smooth and hard: it is kept exceedingly clean, and is often renewed. They sleep upon rush mats, six feet long, and from three to four broad, covering themselves with the mantle which they wear in the day. To express a married man, they often say that he lies under two mantles. The Caffres always sleep with their bodies stretched out at full length; the Hottentots, on the contrary, draw themselves up almost round.

Near the huts are places hedged round, in which the cattle are enclosed at night to guard them from the wild beasts. To some kraals there is a common fold for all the cattle, which, in the day when the animals are out grazing, serves the inhabitants for holding their public assemblies. As the Koossas live almost entirely upon the produce of their cattle, the attending upon them is the principal business of every householder, and from the extreme care taken of them, the cows of this tribe give more milk upon an average than
those of any other part of the country, supposing always that the year be tolerably favourable, and affords a sufficient quantity of grass to feed them properly. The cattle are so well trained, that they are perfectly obedient, and stop or go on at the call of their masters, or at the sound of a little pipe, which he sometimes blows. The Koossas love their cattle exceedingly, and know every single animal perfectly, its disposition, qualities, &c.; it is not without reluctance that they part from them, either to kill them or give them away.

They are only killed for the purpose of some festivity, or upon other solemn occasions, or against going to war. The manner of killing them is horrible. The animal is thrown upon the earth, and bound. A long cut is then made in the skin of the throat with the hassagai, the hand is thrust into the wound, and the aorta is torn away, so that the animal bleeds to death. This is performed within the cattle-fold, and the dung from the entrails of the animal is carefully strewn about, in the superstitious hope that the loss of the animal will then be much sooner repaired. When the supply of grass fails, either from drought or from long continuance in the place, the whole kraal is broken up, and the inhabitants remove to another spot, perhaps less pleasant, but this they do not concern themselves about, provided it affords good feed for the cattle. The oxen are trained both for drawing and for being rode, and even while calves they know how to distinguish which will be best for either purpose. The riding oxen are guided by a pin of wood run through the nose to which a bridle is fastened, and they are for the most part excellently trained. The chiefs of the kraals have several riding oxen, but they are kept only for pomp, and as a proof of their wealth. They are sometimes used to afford a favourite recreation. At a certain cry made to them, they are taught to run loose at the people, and the delight is, as they seem ready to run against and trample upon any one, for the person, by a dexterous stroke, to turn them aside.

These people are likewise very assiduous in ornamenting their cattle, as they consider it. This is done in two ways; either by giving the horns strange and fantastic directions, or by cutting, soon after their birth, pieces of skin from the neck to the knee, and letting them hang down. In order to change the manner of the horns growing, they are, from the moment when they begin to appear, pushed into the direction intended to be given them. By these
means they sometimes drive them back like the horns of the antelope, or
turn them in a variety of strange and absurd ways. Mr. Barrow is ill-
formed, when he says that they bend the horns by softening them with
hot irons: he seems to have conceived this idea from the method used by
turners to prepare the horn for being worked. The attachment of the
Koossas to their cattle leads them to admire particular ones for particular
qualities, about which we should never concern ourselves. They know the
voice of each separate animal perfectly well, and are sometimes in such
raptures at the tones of a cow which they consider as having an unusually
fine voice, that they will try all means of getting her into their possession.
They eat their milk sometimes fresh, sometimes sour, and are very fond of
whey and cheese. They make butter by shaking the milk about in leather
pouches, in the manner that Kolbe describes its being made by the Hotten-
tots; but they only use it for smearing themselves; they never eat it.

Before a party goes out hunting, a very odd ceremony or sport takes
place, which they consider as absolutely necessary to ensure success to
the undertaking. One of them takes a handful of grass into his mouth,
and crawls about upon all-fours to represent some sort of game. The rest
advance as if they would run him through with their spears, raising the hunt-
ing cry, till at length he falls upon the ground as if dead. If this man
afterwards kills a head of game, he hangs a claw upon his arm as a trophy,
but the animal must be shared with the rest. They generally, after a hunt
is over, burn up the field where it has taken place, that they may find the
blades of the hassagais again. They take game also very much in slings.
In bushy countries they make a low hedge, sometimes of a mile long. At
intervals openings are formed in it, through which the animals seek their
way, and here the slings are concealed with so much ingenuity, that they
entangle their legs in them in such a manner as to render their escape
impossible.

The larger game, such as buffalos, elands, and others, are taken in deep
pits, at the bottom of which are pointed stakes; they are made in the route
that the animals usually take to go to the water. Like pits, but with
stronger stakes, are made near the banks of the rivers between the bushes,
where the hippopotamos comes by night. The animals are watched, and
a loud cry is made, by which they are frightened, when attempting to hasten
back to the river, they fall with all their weight upon the sharp stakes, and never can rise again. Panthers are taken by hanging a piece of raw flesh at a certain height upon a bush, in the midst of which a hassagai is ingeniously fastened, the sharp point being upwards: when the panther springs at the meat, he falls upon the iron, and is stuck by it in the breast.

The elephant hunt occasions them much more trouble, and seldom answers. They only take single elephants which have strayed from the herd. When they find one in a favourable situation, they set on fire the grass and low bushes round, knowing that he will not quit such a circle at least by day. They then get as near him as possible, and throw at him an innumerable quantity of hassagais, which, however, on account of the thickness and hardness of his skin, do him very little injury. In the night he commonly escapes, or perhaps does not run away till the fire is burnt out, but by moving he generally drives the hassagais deeper into his body. The hunters follow him now with more circumspection, and endeavour to drive him into chasms among the rocks, where they can, with greater security, throw more hassagais at him. If the country is still flat, they continue to encircle him with fire, till at length he is wearied, or falls sick from the number of little wounds he has received, and thus sometimes they continue to torment him for days or even weeks, till he is fairly persecuted to death. Their perseverance in this pursuit is the more extraordinary, since they do not eat the flesh of the elephant, but only take away his tusks; even these they must not keep, but must give them to the king. All this toil is incurred without any view of profit, merely from their general activity and the pleasure they have in the pursuit. Their love of action is indeed such, that they will occasionally take long journeys, in which they have all sorts of hardships and difficulties to encounter, merely to visit some distant acquaintance, and not to be idle at home.

Besides their cattle, they have no other tame animals on which they set any value, except their dogs. The latter, notwithstanding that they seem to have a love for them, are very ill-fed, and are as miserably lean and mangy as Mr. Barrow describes. They are rather kept as guards against wild-beasts at night, than that they know how to use them in the chase. Although they like the flesh of sheep very much, yet these animals are not to be seen among the Koossas. This is principally owing to the nature of their country. In the first place it does not afford the aromatic plants on which the sheep feed
so much in the colony, and in the next place it is so woody, that there would be great difficulty in keeping the flocks together. Here we saw no poultry, but among the more northern Caffie tribes, there are hens of a small size, and without combs, though in other respects much resembling ours. Vasco de Gama found hens among the Caffies on the coast of Terra do Natal.

Besides the millet, already mentioned (Holcus Sorghum), Alberti says that the Koossas cultivate in some parts buck-wheat: they also cultivate water-melons. No one possesses landed property: he sows his corn wherever he finds a convenient spot, without any other preparation of the land than digging it with a little spade made of very hard wood: the weeds soon shoot up again, but they help to preserve the ground from getting too dry. When the young corn begins to appear, it is weeded very carefully, and kept perfectly clean; when ripe, it is cut with the hassagai, then threshed with a stick, and thrown up to the wind to separate it from the chaff. The millet is stored up in pits in the cattle-fold: these pits are dried by fire, and after the corn is deposited in them, they are covered over with straw, stones, and dried ox dung. When one of these storehouses is opened, the owner must give his neighbours and friends a little basket of the corn, and a larger portion to the chief of the kraal. The wild plant which they use for smoking instead of tobacco is kept dried in bunches hanging upon the walls of the hut. Neither the sort of millet or of water-melon which they cultivate will grow in the colony. The latter differs from what is cultivated by the colonists, in having a somewhat bitter taste: it is both eaten fresh, and cut into slices and dried.

As the Koossas are so exceedingly sparing of killing their cattle, it is very desirable that they should pay more attention to procuring themselves a supply of vegetable food. Their millet is an excellent resource; they eat it cooked with milk, and make a sort of bread of it, which they bake upon the hot embers. They also make from it a fermented liquor, which tastes almost like beer, but of a much more intoxicating quality, and much sooner spoiled: they call it tjalloa. A better sort is even made called inguhja, which is not unlike wine, and they make vinegar of it, which they call tjalu. Mr. Barrow has been therefore, as it appears from hence, misinformed in saying that the Koossas do not make use of any intoxicating liquor. These different liquors are obtained according to the different degrees of fermentation which the millet undergoes by being put for a certain time, mixed with water, into milk
baskets, which have had old fermented matter in them. In the place of sieves for straining it they use the nests which many sorts of the African toxia build with the woolly parts of particular plants.

It has been mentioned already by other writers, that the Caffres do not eat any kind of fish or sea-animal. Some kraals, however, which are near the coast, and have a scarcity of other food, eat muscles and several kinds of fish, but they are held in contempt for it by the rest of the nation.

The Caffres are hospitable. Vander Kemp, who has travelled the country over and over, assured me that whenever he passed the night at a strange kraal they always gave him a hut to himself, which was furnished with a bed of mats and skins, and with a fire in the middle; he had besides an ample provision of milk and cooked millet. Before his principles were thoroughly understood, an old woman generally used to come to him and inquire whether he would not like one of the young women of the kraal to keep him company for the night. This, as has been mentioned before, is considered as a duty of hospitality, but it would be taken extremely ill if the stranger were to think of chusing for himself, or if he should ask for a married woman.

Whenever any one kills an ox he must invite all his neighbours to partake of it, and they remain his guests till the whole is eaten: even the king is not exempt from this custom, and must be contented to share his meals with his neighbouring subjects.* In return, it is the custom that the breast of every ox killed is sent to the king; even the most distant kraal must not fail in doing so, although it be obvious from the distance that it cannot reach him before it becomes putrid. The breast, the head, the heart, and the feet of the oxen, are eaten only by the men, the women never partake in them, not even the wives of the king.

The skin cloak, or mantle, which they wear, if made of an ox-hide, is called gubo, or ingubo, but if made of the skin of a wild animal, it is called unebe.

* It is also a custom that if any European travelling among them receives a present of food, he must share it with all around him, even though the piece he gives to each should be ever so small. Alberi says he has heard people when they have not been invited to participate in the food upon such an occasion, at going away, imitate the yell of the hyæna, as a reproach upon the unsociableness of the visitor.
A Caffeo Man and Woman of the Tribe of the Kaffirs

Weapons, Ornaments, and Household Implements of the Kaffirs

Published under the Order of the Rt. Hon. Lord Amherst, Governor-General in Council.
Even the Chief seldom wears any thing but the hide of an ox or an eland. All panther skins must be brought to him, but he does not so much wear them himself, as keep them for presents occasionally, when he wants to shew particular favour to any one. The skins are prepared with considerable ingenuity: the process of preparing them is extremely well described by Mr. Barrow. The mantles are seldom made out of many pieces; they are commonly only one skin. Those of the women are ornamented with parallel rows of copper buttons, the greater or lesser number of which distinguishes the rank and wealth of the wearer. The Caffres are exceedingly fond of these buttons, and whoever has them on his clothes when he visits their country is very likely to be importuned for them in a manner that it is scarcely possible to resist; but they must be quite flat and smooth, for if they have any kind of embossed figure upon them they are stigmatized as blotchy. The women besides ornament their mantles with the tails of wild-cats, which are put on near the shoulder, and hang down on each side. Much more pains are bestowed upon preparing the skins for the womens' clothes than upon those for the mens'. They sew the skins with thread made of the sinews of the oxen, piercing the holes to put it through with an iron punch, something like a bodkin, in the place of a needle. A girl to earn her first mantle must go out once with a hunting party, when she receives from her brothers an antelope's skin as her share of the booty.

Here and there women as well as men are to be seen tattooed, but not in the face, only upon the breast, the back, and the arms. The smearing themselves with grease mixed with some mineral substance, as iron-ochre, iron-rust, mica, or something of the kind, gives their bodies a not unpleasant tint, but nobody can touch them without bringing away very visible marks of it upon his hands and his clothes. The men wear their heads naked, or with a sort of diadem round them made of a strip of leather about an inch broad: sometimes this is ornamented with thin plates of copper, sometimes with beads of a variety of colours. The men also ornament their heads with a large knot of zebra's or jackall's hair, about five inches long, and which must stand upright.*

* For the dresses of the Caffres see the annexed plate.
The head-dress of the women consists in a sort of turban. A long piece of fine thin leather, commonly the skin of the red deer, is wound round the head in many folds; the two ends, which run to points, are concealed under the folds, and so fastened. This leather is at least two ells long, and in the middle half an ell wide; the middle is sometimes sewed to a cap, from which the points hang down on each side. Directly in the centre is always a tuft or tassel of beads, or of strips of leather, with little bits of copper. The true coquette wears her turban a little on one side; indeed, the utmost care is shewn in putting it on, and is perpetually pushed it this way or that, to give it if possible a better effect.

Necklaces of different kinds are worn both by men and women. They consist of small metal chains, little red stones, muscle-shells, glass-beads, or even pieces of wood, and are so long that they hang quite down to the breast. Glass-beads are prized particularly for necklaces; but the Koossas have their fashions in these things as well as other nations, and the same sorts, or the same colours, are not always in equal favour. The great rage at present is for a small sort of beads which are procured from the tribe of Imbo, and which are considered of such value that a cow and calf is given for two small strings. They have an idea that these beads creep out of the earth like worms, and are caught by the Imbos; but, according to Vander Kemp's account, they seem to be common glass beads, or perhaps chaplets, which have been brought by the Portuguese into the northern parts of the country, and thence found their way among the Koossas. They wear in their ears strings of beads of five or six inches long, as also buttons or rings of copper.

Bracelets of ivory are worn by the men on the upper part of the left arm, sometimes even to the number of ten; the broadest may be an inch, or between that and an inch and half in breadth. The number of these bracelets depends upon the rank of the wearer. As all the elephant's teeth are the king's property, the bracelets made from them are given by him as tokens of friendship or favour, and no one can wear them without his permission. On the right arm, just above the elbow, a leather strap is often worn, set with five or six tyger's teeth, all with the points standing out. Copper and iron bracelets are also worn between the elbow and the wrist. Round the waist is fastened a leather girdle stuck so thick with plates of iron or copper that the
leather cannot be seen. The females, from their birth, wear a leather apron, which is called *inkyo*. Several of these aprons of different sizes are sometimes worn, one over the other, the outermost of which is richly ornamented with buttons and beads. The fingers, particularly the thumb, and even the great toe, are often decorated with rings of iron and copper wire; and the men generally wear fastened to one knee a large bunch of hair from a lion's mane, or tail, or of quagga's hair, which hangs down nearly to the ankle.

Their weapons of war are, as we have already mentioned, the hassagai, the kirri, and a shield. The first is a spear from five to six feet in length, with an iron spike at the end from half a foot to a foot and half long, and from one to two inches broad. This is two-edged, and is sometimes the whole length like a blade, sometimes it is half way rounded, and only towards the end flat, and sharpened at the edges. The shaft is made of the slender stem of the hassagai-tree (*Curtisia faginea*), and near the spike is about as thick as a finger, but at the other end is not thicker than a quill. The spike is fixed very ingeniously into the shaft, and the shaft itself is in this part bound very fast round with the sinews of beasts that it may not split. The manner of using it, as well as the shield and the kirri, has been explained in a former chapter, when describing their mock fight. It requires particular strength as well as great dexterity to throw the hassagai upwards into the air; the principal art in lancing it, is to give the shaft a sort of tremulous motion, which accelerates its flight exceedingly. They are obliged to give it the direction of a bow, and this is the principal reason why it is so difficult to hit a particular mark. The farthest distance at which a hassagai can be expected to hit is a hundred paces, but the aim is commonly taken at about seventy or eighty. These weapons stand very much in the place of money among the Koossas; they are the most common medium by which all articles of barter are valued, and by which the worth of every thing is estimated. They throw the kirri as well as strike with it, and can hit at a tolerable distance; it is used in the chase as well as the hassagai: both are used besides as implements of husbandry in breaking the ground.

The Koossas are brave and resolute, like all the other tribes of the Caffres, and often involved in wars with their neighbours; yet they cannot be called quarrelsome in their dispositions: they seem much more disposed to lead a
quiet and pastoral life. When engaged in war, no man capable of bearing arms shrinks from the fight; and to fly in battle is considered as a disgrace never to be expiated. The neighbours with whom they are the most frequently at war are the Bosjesmans, on account of the depredations which the latter are perpetually committing on their cattle. As the Bosjesmans, however, never meet an enemy in the open field, but endeavour to shoot their poisoned arrows from some secure place of concealment, so the Caffres cannot come to fair and equal fighting with them: the warfare on both sides rather consists of petty conflicts between hordes. The enmity of the Koossas, and all the other Caffre tribes, against the Bosjesmans, knows no bounds. The latter are considered by the former in the light of beasts of prey, who ought to be extirpated from the earth; and on this system they pursue them in the same way as they would wild beasts, putting to death every one that falls into their hands, of either sex, or of any age. If the robberies have been very frequent, they will seek out their hiding-places, nor cease the pursuit till they have found the horde, and destroyed every one of them.

I myself once saw a striking instance of this hatred of the Caffres towards the Bosjesmans. In the year 1804, a Caffre, who came to the Cape Town as ambassador from a little horde which was then roving about the northern parts of the colony, was received with great hospitality at the house of Governor Janssens. The governor had at this time among the servants in his house a Bosjesman lad about eleven years old. The Caffre, notwithstanding that the boy was in no way distinguished from the rest of the Hottentots, immediately recognised one of the race of his mortal enemies, and made a push at him with his hassagai, intending to run him through. The boy escaped, and fled to the kitchen, where he found shelter; and as the people pressed about the Caffre, and enquired of him what their young comrade had done that he should endeavour to take away his life, he replied in broken Dutch, glowing with rage, "that what he was doing was out of gratitude to the governor for the kind reception he had given him. He would have freed him from that little rascal, who was indeed then too weak to do him any mischief, but who, he might be sure, if he was permitted to live, would at length deprive him both of his property and life. It was impossible that a Bosjesman could ever abandon his villainous ways, and it was necessary to destroy such vermin wherever they were found."
The wars of the Caffres among each other are of much more consequence. They are commonly occasioned either by the rebellion of the Chiefs against their common king, or by the desire of the latter to bring some separate tribe under his subjection, and make it tributary to him, or in contentions with regard to the extent of their territories, and about feed for the cattle. But no one ever falls upon the enemy while he is unprepared for the fight, or without making a public declaration of war. For this purpose ambassadors are sent, who require submission, or, in failure of it, threaten an immediate attack: as a token of their inimical embassy, they carry in their hands the tail either of a lion or a panther.

This declaration made, all the vassal chiefs, with their dependents, are summoned to assemble. Every one must implicitly obey this mandate, and follow his leader: whoever does not, is in danger of having his whole property confiscated. As soon as the army is collected at the habitation of the king, a number of oxen are killed, that the warriors may be strengthened for the fight by eating abundantly of their flesh: at the same time they dance, and deliver themselves up entirely to rejoicing. The king presents the most distinguished and the most valiant among the Chiefs with plumes of feathers, from the wings of a sort of crane: these they wear upon their heads as marks of honour. They are then obeyed as commanders; but it is their duty, during the fight, to be seen at the head of their respective divisions: any one who fails forfeits his life irredeemably: among the followers, too, whoever forsakes his leader, is punished with death.

The army is now put into motion, taking with it as many oxen for slaughter as are deemed necessary for its support. When it approaches the habitation of the enemy, ambassadors are again sent to give notice of the intended attack, and repeat the declaration of the motives which have given occasion to the war. If the enemy declares that he has not yet collected all his people together, and is not prepared to fight, the attacking army waits with patience till he notifies that he is ready. A wide, open place, without bushes and without rocks, is chosen as the field of battle, to avoid all possibility of an ambush, which is considered as wholly degrading. The two armies then raising a loud war-cry, approach in two lines till they are within about seventy or eighty paces of each other. They now begin throwing their hassagais, endeavouring, at the same time, to turn aside those of the enemy. The king,
or commander-in-chief, whoever he may be, remains always in the centre of his line, and takes an active part in the fight. Some of the inferior commanders remain near him, the rest remain some at the heads of their divisions, some behind, to prevent the troops giving way. By degrees the two bands approach nearer and nearer to each other, till at length they come hand to hand, when the hassagais are no more used, but the kirri alone decides the combat. Sometimes, however, they do not come to these close quarters, but remain at a distance, till they are obliged to give over, either by the coming on of night, or by the flight of one of the parties.

In the former case both sides retire to a certain distance, where a line of demarcation is agreed upon, and during the night negotiations for peace are carried on: if these are fruitless, the combat must then be renewed till finally decided. If one of the armies has taken to flight, the commander alone is to blame: every thing depends upon his personal bravery, and his falling back is the signal for the whole body to do the same. A flying enemy is immediately pursued, and, above all things, the conquerors seek to possess themselves of their women and children, and cattle: of the latter a great part are immediately killed and eaten. If the vanquished party agrees to submit, his submission is accepted, on condition that he acknowledges his conqueror from that time forward as his sovereign, and solemnly promises obedience to him. When this is done, the women and children are sent back: the victors also return some of the cattle taken, though perhaps but a very small part, dividing the rest among themselves. This claim of the conquered to the return of some part of the booty rests upon a principle which is a common saying among the Koossas, "that we must not let even our enemies die with hunger." When both parties are returned to their respective habitations, the vanquished, as a token of submission, send a present to their new king out of the little that remains to them. The conqueror treats his followers again before they separate, in the same manner as when they first assembled.

In these fights among the Caffies the number of lives lost is not so great as might be supposed; for the hassagais do not very often hit, or if they do, the wound is seldom mortal. Any one who falls unarmed into the hands of the enemy is never put to death: the women and children, equally, have never any thing to fear for their lives; they are universally, and without exception, spared. For this reason women are sometimes employed as ambassadors;
that is if there is danger of the enemy considering matters as having gone so far that he is at liberty to put the ambassador to death, supposing a man to be sent: and this may be the case under certain circumstances, though in general it is wholly unallowable by the customs of war to touch the person of an ambassador. Allies, who are sometimes sought from very remote tribes, if the parties feel themselves weak, are entitled, in case of victory, to half the booty.

It remains to say a few words concerning the works of art among the Koossas, and passing over those which have already been occasionally mentioned, I shall first notice their working of metals. They have no copper or iron in their own country, but receive it, in the way of barter, from some of the tribes in the interior, as will be more fully shewn hereafter. Most of it comes to them ready worked; but they have sufficient acquaintance with the smith's art to improve their hassagais, or to make of them other implements which they want, as for example, the punches they use in making their baskets: they employ stones as hammers to bring the hot iron or copper into the form desired. In order to quicken the fire, and give it the necessary degree of heat, they make use of a sort of bellows consisting of two leather bags, which communicate with the same pipe, and by being pressed against each other, they are alternately filled with air and emptied again. This discovery was imparted to the Koossas from a distant tribe. The fuel used for their smith's work is dried ox-dung, which makes a very glowing fire: the tribes in the interior burn charcoal.

To strike fire they take two pieces of wood of different hardness, one of which is a thin round stick, the other is flat, with little volutes at certain distances. Into one of these the round stick is passed, and then drawn backwards and forwards exceedingly quick, till by this friction the stick at length catches fire, and being applied to a wisp of dried grass, a flame iskindled.

For keeping liquors, and even for cooking, they make pots of fine clay, which are hardened in the sun, without being glazed. Some of these pots will hold six buckets, or perhaps more: they keep the liquor very cool. In their form they resemble large bottles with wide necks.

Their works with rushes are exceedingly ingenious: the baskets, which are so exceedingly solid as to hold milk, are very well described by Kolbe,
Le Vaillant, however, is misinformed with regard to the manner in which he says they are quenched before they are capable of holding liquid.

The Koossas are much behind hand with some of their neighbours with regard to music. Instruments proper to themselves they do not appear to have, for only those of the Hottentots are to be seen among them, and not so well constructed. Their melodies are insufferable to a musical ear, and their song is little better than a deadened howl. Their dances have been already described. They amuse themselves with them very much in moonlight nights, and are never weary with the exercise.

Although they have numerals, they have but little idea of counting: very few can reckon beyond ten; many, even, cannot name the numerals. Notwithstanding this, they know perfectly well of how many head a herd of cattle consists, nor could a single one be missing without its being discovered immediately. If a herd of four or five hundred be driven home, the owner knows, almost at a glance, whether they are all right or not. Possibly these people have a manner of counting within themselves, without using words, yet by which they can calculate accurately; or perhaps the more probable thing is, that they know every individual cow or ox, and from this recollection can tell immediately whether they are all there.

Their memories are, indeed, particularly strong, as far as the recollection of objects of sense is concerned. For example, they instantly remember a man whom they have once seen, though they should see him again at ever so remote a period, and will immediately cite, with the utmost accuracy, a number of occurrences which happened at their previous meeting. In the same manner the countenances of animals, or some other distinguishing mark about them, is impressed upon their minds so firmly, that they can instantly recollect them. Some of them recognised immediately among our draught oxen particular ones which had been once in their possession; taken by them during their war with the colony, and restored, by agreement, when peace was made.

They are very little capable of calculating time: a period more remote than a few months they know not how to describe, though all the events that have passed in it are distinctly and circumstantially present to their memories: still less can they at all tell their own ages. The age of an
absent child is given by shewing its height; and if a woman would describe how many children she has borne, she does it by pointing out their different heights. According to their external appearance, it seems as if their oldest men were not more than between fifty and sixty years of age. Such is Alberti's opinion, and it agrees extremely well with the estimation of the Christians who have lived for any time among them, or who have been in the habit of visiting them from time to time, for a considerable period.
CHAP. XX.

Description of the Country of Arrnalosina, or of the Koossas.—Its Political Relations and Institutions.—Power of the King.—Judiciary Proceedings, and Punishments.

In considering the Great Fish-river as the western boundary of the territory inhabited by the Koossas, and taking the extent of coast eastward from this river, along which people of this tribe are still to be found, a parallelogram will be given of between forty and fifty geographical miles in length, and about half that breadth. From a calculation made upon conjecture only, this vast surface does not seem to be inhabited by more than thirty thousand souls. It even appears to me, that in making this calculation, Vander Kemp has included the Mathimbas or Tambuckis, who were not at first distinguished from the Koossas. It is to be regretted that of this latter tribe, which in many respects is the most accurately known to us, we know so little in other respects, and can therefore give but an imperfect account of its political relations. Future travellers will here find a wide field for their researches, and may throw much light upon the subject. To me it appears probable that the number of the Koossas, properly so called, that is, the subjects of King Geika, does not exceed twenty thousand. This presumption is grounded upon Geika’s not having been able, of his own power, to reduce his rebel chiefs, with their followers, to obedience, and the whole body of these did not consist of above two thousand five hundred persons. He expected troops from the Tambuckis, but either they never arrived, or, even with their assistance, he thought himself not sufficiently strong, since in 1806 the matter remained entirely upon its old footing.

As to what concerns the topographical description of the Caffre country, our notices must necessarily be exceedingly scanty. No particular parts of the country have names, since there are no permanent places of residence among the inhabitants; nothing but wandering villages, and these commonly bear the name
of the chief then presiding over them as the king's vicegerent. The rivers only have fixed names. Of these the principal are, the Great Fish-river, from which, on the side of the Caffres, branch out three considerable streams, the Konab, the Kacha, and the Gwenge: from the former of these again branch two smaller ones, the Tkaussi, and the Tkui. The Keissi, which flows into the sea at 33° 12' southern latitude, and 44° 56' eastern longitude, receiving in its course the rivers Sjommi and Debe. Northwards are the Guakubi and Sileni, which join the Konga, and flow with that into the sea. Farther in the interior, towards the north-west, are the rivers Gobuhssi and Karoonga, which both flow into the Black-Tey; and this river uniting itself afterwards with the White-Tey, they form the Amera, the most considerable stream in the country of the Koossas. About thirty smaller streams flow into these rivers, but none of sufficient consequence to be particularized here. The river Bassch is the boundary between the Koossas country and Mathimba: this is a considerable stream, and flows into the sea.

High mountains, some of which are covered with snow even till late in the spring, bound Amnakosina towards the north-west, and most of the rivers above-mentioned flow from them. At the foot of the mountains are large forests; but towards the coast the country is level, and affords plenty of wholesome grass. Karroo plains are not to be found here, and the mountains consist of granite and sand-stone, not of schistus. The tract between the Great Fish-river and the Keissi abounds in large trees, particularly the mimosa. On the other side of the Keissi but few tall stemmed trees are to be found, but there are more large succulent plants; a sort of euphorbia, probably the euphorbia officinarum, grows here to the height of from thirty-six to forty feet.

The different sides of the Keissi are equally distinct with regard to the animals by which they are inhabited. Westward of this river the country abounds with numerous flocks of small antelopes and quaggas, as well as with beasts of prey. On the eastern side they have only the larger kinds of antelopes, particularly the antilope aresas, with abundance of elephants, and in the rivers vast numbers of hippopotami. Alberti says that he saw here a flock of elephants, which his companions thought could not consist of less than five hundred; he himself estimated it at least at three hundred. Of the hippo-
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

potami, in one of his journeys he saw two and twenty killed in a single river. This difference in the animal world between the two sides of the Keissi, Alberti explains from the difference of the vegetable products, as on one side sweet fine grass is every where to be found, on the other nothing but sour grass, which only affords good food to animals of a grosser organization. These lands, however, when cultivated, yield very plentifully. The Koossas, to amend the quality of the grass, sometimes burn them, when a new and better vegetation springs up.

For this fertility the country has to thank its happy climate, strikingly different from that at the Cape Town, as will be seen by the following observations, for which I am indebted to Vander Kemp. The time which may here be called winter, and which in many other hot countries, even in the colony of the Cape, is distinguished by torrents of rain, is here the dryest part of the year. From May to August, when the length of the nights and the northern inclination of the sun considerably diminishes the heat, it rains very seldom. These winter days are throughout serene and cool; but the nights are often foggy and hazy. On the contrary, in summer the air no sooner becomes sultry, than thunder-clouds come on, which commonly break about three hours after mid-day, and by the abundant rains they bring, the air is cooled and refreshed. Seldom a week passes in summer without at least two thunder-storms: it even rains sometimes in this season without thunder. In the year 1800, when Vander Kemp lived near the Guakubi-river, he made the following observations:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Month</th>
<th>Days</th>
<th>Storms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>January</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>February</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>March</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>April</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>June</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>July</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>August</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>September</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>October</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>November</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>December</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
All these storms came from the same quarter, the north-west, that where lie the principal mountains, and in sixteen months that Vander Kemp lived in the country, he but once knew a storm come before noon. The lightning is extremely sharp, is little extended, as in our climate; but the rays may be plainly distinguished descending from the clouds, and springing from one cloud to another. Vander Kemp, indeed, calls them streams of fire, continuing from two seconds to three and a half. The claps of thunder are tremendous, and the rain falls sometimes in such torrents, that the houses at a distance from the river are almost beaten down.

In the coldest days in winter, upon the plains, the thermometer seldom sinks lower than 50° by Fahrenheit, nor at this season ever exceeds 70°. In summer it is seldom lower than between 70° and 80°; and just before a thunder-storm the heat is almost insupportable. The air is particularly hot with a north wind, so that when under the wind one seems as if by a large fire: the thermometer is then little above 100°. At this hot time of the year, thick fogs often arise at night, which sometimes continue even till noon the next day, and contribute much to keeping the soil moist. These fogs are very rare indeed in the colony, and even in the Koossas country they are confined pretty much to the eastern side of the Keissi.

The fertility of this country, and the abundance of grass it produces, will sufficiently account for the pastoral, or semi-nomade life led by the inhabitants. There is no question but that if it were cultivated according to the European manner, it would be productive beyond any that has yet been known. At the same time very weighty objections lie against the projects that have been formed for colonizing it by several persons, particularly by Captain Benjamin Stout, of the American ship Hercules: but it would be carrying us too much out of our way to enter into an investigation of them *.

The trees here continue their leaves nearly the whole year, retaining almost

---

* The Hercules was stranded, in the year 1796, upon the Caffre coast, near the mouth of the river Amera. Those of the crew who escaped met with a very kind reception from the Caffres, and most of them got at last happily to the Cape Town. Captain Stout afterwards gave an account of the whole affair to Congress, and endeavoured to impress them strongly with the expediency of planting an American colony upon this coast.
always the same vivid green, and the birds never forbear their songs: parrots
and turtle-doves alone are heard in greater force in summer than in winter,
and the swallows disappear in autumn; in Mathimba they are, however,
seen the whole winter.

There are years in which the thunder showers in summer are less
frequent, and this was the case in 1804 and 1805. The drought of these
years in the colony, which, if it did not produce an absolute dearth, at least
occasioned a great defalcation in the usual quantity of corn, extended even
to this favoured country, and the Koossas lost a great number of cattle from
want of feed for them. Whole societies strolled into the colony, in hopes of
finding places which had been exempted from the general calamity, and the
country was much indebted to the zeal and prudence of Alberti that this
inroad was not attended with renewed dissensions between them and the
colonists.

The number of families who live in one place are generally from about
forty to fifty; these form a little state like a village. One of the householders
is chief of the kraal. At the death of a chief his subjects choose a successor,
commonly from the family of the deceased, but the king has the power
of confirming or of setting aside the choice. Sometimes the people of
one kraal will choose the chief of another to be their chief, and thence it
happens that there are chiefs who have the command of two, three, four, or
more kraals. They are all vassals of the king, chiefs, as well as those under
them; but the subjects are generally so blindly attached to their chiefs, that
they will follow them against the king, as has been particularly the case in
these latter times. The power of the chiefs did extend even over life and
death, but King Geika has set this aside, and declared it to be his will that
henceforward no sentence of death shall be carried into execution without
his consent. Every chief chooses from among his most wealthy subjects five
or six, who act as counsellors to him, without whose advice he seldom underrates
any thing of importance. Commonly it is old and experienced persons
who are selected for this purpose. The great council of the king is composed
of the chiefs of particular kraals.

The government is entirely monarchical; the king is absolute sovereign. He
makes laws, and executes them entirely according to his sole will. Yet
there is a power to balance his in the people; he governs only as long as they choose to obey. If he pursues any measure which displeases universally, he is warned by one of the oldest and most esteemed chiefs of the displeasure of his subjects. If this warning be not attended to, every kraal, from the first to the last, breaks up, and retires to the borders; a hint which seldom fails to produce an alteration in his conduct. But should he still resist their will, at the first symptom of resistance one kraal really passes the borders, and the rest immediately follow. Van der Kemp twice saw this method pursued, one time when Geika had made a law against private revenge, forbidding a man, who had detected his wife in infidelity to the marriage bed, taking away the life of the seducer; and the second, when he would have made the king heir to all his subjects who died without heirs in a direct line. He was required to retract both; that however relating to private revenge was established, the other was set aside.

Yet, unless in instances when this spirit of resistance is particularly awakened, his will is implicitly obeyed, and when he pronounces a sentence of death, it is executed without a murmur. Though the Koossas have no mode of saluting each other when they meet, yet there is a courtesy practised towards the king wherever he is seen, by pronouncing his name with the syllable Ann before it, thus, Ann-Geika. His title is Inkoossi, which signifies ruler. On journeys the king is accompanied by his counsellors, and a train selected from his poorer subjects: wherever he comes, an ox is immediately killed for his entertainment. His wives, especially those who are of a distinguished family themselves, are also treated with particular distinction, and are followed by a train of women from the lower ranks. But neither the king or his wives drink any milk upon their journeys, excepting from their own cows, which always follow in their train.

The revenue of the king consists in a certain annual contribution of cattle, each subject contributing in proportion to his own riches. A certain proportion of the fruits of the earth also belongs to the king, and he has besides, the breast of every ox killed, and of every eland taken in hunting, with all elephants' teeth,* panthers' skins, and cranes' feathers. A father who esta-

* Alberti mentions, in speaking of the ivory bracelets presented by the king as tokens of favour, that they are considered as marks of so much honour, that they must never be laid
lishes his daughter by marriage must give one of the cows he has received for her to the king, for this express reason, that the girl was educated under the eye of the king and his wives.

The habitation of the king is no otherwise distinguished than by the tail of a lion or a panther hanging from the top of the roof. His messengers, or those who are sent to summon before him any one against whom a complaint has been made, carry a lion’s or panther’s tail in their hands, to shew that they come on the part of the king.

All sons of the king are born captains; one of them always succeeds to the government at the death of their father, but not always the eldest; it is commonly him whose mother was of the richest and oldest family of any of the king’s wives. The rest are only chiefs of small kraals, which they generally form themselves, with the young men and their wives who have been their attendants, in some spot selected according to their own fancy. The king may, however, pass over all his sons if he chooses it, and appoint a successor from any other family. If the king dies while his successor is a minor, his preceptor is regent till he attains his eighteenth or twentieth year, and his mother, with the assistance of her relations, watches over the preservation of his rights.

When a criminal has been brought before the king, and has upon clear evidence been found guilty, the king pronounces, “Let this man be no more;” some of the attendants immediately lead him away, and he is executed. Sometimes he is purposely permitted to escape, and by flying out of the territories, he is no longer liable to punishment. Geika, who from the mildness of his disposition appears extremely amiable and interesting, seldom makes use of this right. Instead of this, for most offences which were punished with death, he has substituted a fine of a certain number of oxen, proportioned to the nature of the offence, which oxen are killed immediately. This mode of punishment has been established some time; death is now only

aside. He himself saw a Koossa, whose bracelet, from his growing extremely fat, had become much too small for him, and occasioned a violent swelling of his arm, but notwithstanding this it was not to be taken off; even the king himself had not power to give permission for it. It is a custom of war that the ivory bracelets found upon the bodies of enemies killed in battle are kept with great care by the conquerors, and restored to the vanquished party on peace being made.
inflicted for the most heinous offences. Robbery is punished by paying an equivalent, and by a fine of cattle to the king, the number of which he himself determines. Any one who has partaken in eating an ox that was stolen must also pay a fine to the king.

A short time since, a rich man sent a boy into the field to take care of his cattle, without the knowledge and consent of the lad's parents. A lion tore him to pieces, and Geika sentenced the person by whom he was sent, to pay a fine of seven cows and two oxen to the unfortunate parents. It is considered as a capital crime to ease nature in a cattle-fold, or in a river, as it pollutes the water: in both cases the offender is subject to the punishment of death. The apparent hardship of this is diminished, when it is considered in the one instance how sacred the Koossas hold their cattle, and that the fold is, besides, the place where the public assemblies are held; and in the other, that water is an article of indispensable necessity, and that no one would think of using any again from a stream which had been thus polluted.*

There are certain persons appointed for the purpose by the king, who, on occasions of peculiar difficulty in the government, must at his requisition assist him with their counsels: they are called pagati, and may be denominated his privy-counsellors. Vander Kemp was once secretly accused of having attempted the life of the king, by giving him poisoned wine. Two pagati came to him, and questioned him very minutely, but with so much circumspection, that he had no suspicion himself of the accusation which had been preferred, till after judgment was passed upon him. Geika came himself to him, and asked him very unconcernedly for a glass of wine. It appeared, however, that Vander Kemp had not a drop of wine in his possession: this was conclusive, and the king then told him in the most friendly manner of what he had been accused, adding that the pagati would fain have had him condemned to death.

* Alberti does not mention this custom; but according to the testimony of Mr. Barrow and Vander Kemp, as well as from my own inquiries, the fact is fully established.
History of the Koossa Tribe, and of its Wars with the Colony and with the English.—
The Caffre Tribes of the Interior.

The Koossas have some traditions among them, but they cannot go farther back than a few generations, and indeed in these the information to be obtained from them is very obscure: they are not even agreed among themselves in the manner of relating occurrences; the same circumstance will be very differently related by one and by another. There are people among them who are considered as more knowing than the rest, and they form together a sort of college, whose verdict on all doubtful points is decisive beyond contradiction: what they believe with regard to the history of the country is considered by all the rest as indisputably true. How imperfect the knowledge of these historians is, will, however, be manifest from the following notices, which contain all the information upon the subject that we were able to collect.

Tōguh is the oldest among their kings, respecting whom they have any tradition. The descendants from him are in the following order:

```
| Tōguh.       |
| Gonde.       |
| Tsijo.       |
| Tgareka.     |
| Palo.        |
| Khauta.      |
| Khambuhsje, called Chachabe. Langa: |
| Geika.       |
| Hientza.     |
```

Palo was brother to Tgareka, but never was king himself, although Le Vaillant follows the general error in describing him as having been so, under the name of Farao. He was only regent under Tgareka, as Chachabé and
Umiao were under Khauta. Palo was a powerful chief, very much beloved by the people, and revolted against his brother the king. The latter had made an unjust demand of an extraordinary number of cattle from his subjects, and the whole nation murmured against it. It was on this occasion that Palo first opposed his brother, but it did not come immediately to a regular contest, because Tgareka, by compliance, won over a part of the nation to his side. Palo’s adherents in the mean time increased very much, and upon the next provocation, matters came to a decision by force, when Tgareka was conquered, and made prisoner; yet Palo, though a heathen, had so strong a sense of right, that he did not place himself upon the throne, but restored his brother.

The latter, however, no sooner felt himself again in power, than he thought only of revenge, and in the end, Palo, with his adherents, were attacked, beaten, and himself taken prisoner; yet Tgareka, now on his side, shewed himself not destitute of generosity, and his haughty brother’s power was only circumscribed and rendered harmless for the future; but this done, he was restored to liberty and to his former dignity.

In the next generation, the descendants of Palo were stronger than he had been himself. His son Chachabé stands recorded in the history of the country as a real hero. He did not undertake any thing against his cousin Khauta, although the whole nation would have been on his side; on the contrary, he was the king’s most faithful subject and counsellor: but his merits are universally acknowledged, and this period, which seems to have been between 1780 and 1790, is rather called the period when Chachabé lived, than when Khauta reigned. The latter was, however, in this respect deserving of esteem, that convinced of the superiority of Palo’s line above his own, and desirous to obviate to the country a cause of destructive wars, he named Chachabé’s son Umiao as his successor, to the exclusion of his own children. Umiao died young of a wound given him in anger by his own father, and left an only child, Geika, the present king, he being upon the death of his father named by Khauta as his successor. He was a boy when Khauta died, and was left under the guardianship of his uncle Sāmbe, who, as his guardian, administered the government in his name. Geika’s mother, who was daughter to the King of Mathimba, was sent back to her own country during the minority of her son; but when he attained the age of eighteen, and succeeded to the throne, she...
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

returned. Sambeh, however, was not disposed to give up the reins of government which he had held so long, and he drew over the children of King Khauta and his brother Jaluhsa to his party, while Geika, supported by his mother, prepared to defend his rights by force of arms. Besides the ancient and steady adherents of Palo and his descendants, he was supported by his brother-in-law Tlibi, and another chief, by name Umgulji. It was about this time that Buys sought an asylum in the country, and proved a great support to the young king’s party.

The plan of the rebels was to attack the king at the same time from two different quarters, but by a misunderstanding, Jaluhsa’s party commenced the attack a day too soon, and was vanquished. The next day Geika fell upon his uncle Sambeh, whom he also conquered, and took him prisoner. This was in the year 1796, and for two years the usurper was detained in a sort of custody, in which Mr. Barrow saw him in 1797. This writer celebrates with justice the noble behaviour of the young king towards his prisoner. He left him all his cattle, his wives, and his servants, and often asked his advice, only he was compelled to remain constantly in the place where Geika himself was. As the latter thought at length that he had entirely won him back to his interest, he restored him to full liberty, saying, in Vander Kemp’s presence, at the time of granting it, “Uncle, I thank you for the education you have given me, which has taught me to acquit myself with honour as a sovereign. For this I will forget that you ever acted unkindly towards me, and deal with you as you yourself have taught me to do. In like manner do you learn of me to behave as becomes a true and faithful subject.”

He now redoubled his proofs of esteem and regard, yet never could wholly divest himself of suspicion, and endeavoured in many ways to prevent Sambeh’s acquiring any increase of property. The latter, in consequence, came at length to the resolution of leaving Geika’s territories, taking with him all his family and treasures. His brother Jaluhsa, the Chiefs Conga and Tsjatsjo, together with Umlao and Tholy,* the sons of Langa, who was Palo’s

* The readers of Mr. Barrow’s Travels are already acquainted with these two young men, whom he calls by the names of Malloo and Tooley. Umlao afterwards returned to Geika. Langa had also another son, Luhasabha, but being born after his father’s death, he was considered as a bastard.—Author.

It seems proper here to observe, that any difference to be found in the orthography of Caffre names, and indeed of Caffre words in general, between Mr. Barrow and our German author,
youngest son, fled to him with all their kraals, and settled in the country upon the coast on the other side the Great Fish-river.*

Geika was so much weakened by this desertion, that it was impossible to reduce the rebels to obedience by force. They remained therefore unmolested by him, but they were too much in the neighbourhood of the colonists for a good understanding to be long maintained with them. Their numerous herds grazed upon the territories of the colonists: the solitary farmers, too weak to withstand them, fled inwards with their own cattle, sometimes, however, returning to revenge and remunerate themselves, by secretly driving away

may most probably be resolved into the different ideas with regard to the orthography of the word which the same sound would convey to an English and to a German ear. A German, for example, though spelling this name Tholy, would, in pronouncing it, drop the h and call it Toly, which will not vary essentially from the pronunciation Tooley, given by Mr. Barrow. It is not so easy to account for the very great difference in the case of the other name, called by the one writer Umbao, by the other Mallow. This subject will be treated more amply in occasional notes upon the Vocabulary of the Koossa language given in the Appendix.—Translator.

* In this relation I have followed Vander Kemp, because his account is more ample than Alberti's, and because he understood the Koossas' language much better: he had lived longer among them, and had therefore more opportunity of making himself acquainted with their traditions. In all other respects their testimonies concur exceedingly, but in this they differ so much, that I think it better to give Alberti's also, and then leave the reader to judge between them for himself.

According to him, Pało was lawful regent, and the contest first began between Tgarcka* and Chachabé, his two sons. After a long war carried on with various success, Chachabé was overcome, and fled with all his adherents to the western side of the Keissi river, into the territory of the Gonaaquas, which is on the borders of the colony. A great contest arose in consequence, between the colonists and these emigrant hordes, in which the Caffres, after having destroyed a number of farms, were driven back, and compelled to make peace. In this peace, which was concluded in 1793, the Great Fish-river was fixed as the boundary of the Caffre country, and all contentions might from that time have been easily averted, if the existing government had been sufficiently powerful to prevent the agreement being infringed. But the too justly apprehended attack of the English, united with the revolutionary movements of the colonists in Graaff-Reinet, rendered this impossible. In 1795, the attack by the English was really made, and at the same time Sámbhe revolted against Geika, and encamped with his people upon the territory of the colonists, already embarrassed with their own contentions: thence, according to Alberti, arose all the mischief of which we proceed to treat.

* Albert always writes this name Kaleka, but Vander Kemp, who understands the language extremely well, expressly mentioned the name to me as the only Caffre one in which the r occurs, and from this, as well as the class in the first syllable, he considers the name as entirely of Hottentot origin.
some of the stray cattle of the Caffres. The latter had then naturally recourse to reprisals, so that the parties even came to little skirmishes, in which the colonists, from the superiority their fire-arms gave them, easily had the advantage. The Caffres, however, soon gained a most welcome reinforcement. A large body of Hottentots were induced to fly from their masters, on account, as they complained, of their too great severity with them, and joining with the Caffres, they hoped to find an opportunity at once of revenging their alleged ill-treatment, and of enriching themselves by plunder. These people knew accurately the ways about the colony; they could almost point out the situation of every individual farm; they besides brought fire-arms with them, and some powder and shot, which they secured at their flight. They were therefore formidable, and it is much to be presumed, that had it not been for their assistance, the Caffres would never have ventured to make the attack.

Thus reinforced, the united body soon spread terror over the whole district of Graaff-Reynett, and in a few weeks almost all the country between the Bosjesmans'-river and the Fish-river was in their hands. A great number of cattle became their prey; all the houses of the colonists were burnt, and many fell in the unequal struggle to preserve their property. In this exigence the Commandant Vander Walt, after having in vain sought to bring about an amicable accommodation, assembled a number of colonists, in order if possible to drive the invaders back to their own borders by force of arms: but even in the first conflict this brave man fell by the ball of a Hottentot, who concealed himself in an ambush for the purpose.

Vander Walt enjoyed the universal esteem of all his fellow-countrymen; he was beloved by the Hottentots on account of the mildness of his disposition, and had formerly maintained a good deal of intercourse in the most amicable manner with the Caffres. Even the English respected his memory, and I have been witness myself to the praises bestowed upon him by General Dundas, in a conversation between him and General Janssens. With him the colonists lost all their hope, as well as their courage, and instead of resistance, thought no longer of anything but flight. His successor, Henry Janssens Van Rensburg, equally endeavoured to re-establish tranquillity in Graaff-Reynett; but in vain, for it was at this very time that the peasants rose against the English government. When Rensburg, therefore, with his troop, would have
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

marched against the Caffres, General Vandeleur, with his detachment of soldiers, appeared to quell the insurrection; this was in March, 1799. Rensburg, and sixty families with him, fled to the district of Tanka, and to the Bamboo mountains; those that remained submitted, as we learn from the second part of Mr. Barrow's Travels, and the ringleaders were for the most part carried prisoners to the Cape Town.

In the mean time the Caffres continually pressed forwards, nor was General Vandeleur, even in his march to Algoa bay, free from their attacks. He succeeded, however, in driving them back to the Bosjesmans'-river, and there took a strong position; but as they were very superior in numbers they contrived to enclose him round and cut off his supplies, so that his situation became exceedingly precarious. Rensburg then, informed of these events, and convinced that the oppressions of the Caffres would be much more intolerable than the sovereignty of the English, advanced with his corps, and having delivered the general, the latter continued his march to Algoa bay, where he embarked his troops, and left the colony to its fate. The arrogance of the Caffres now knew no bounds; they pressed rashly forwards, along the coast, through the Long-kloof, and by Plettenberg's bay, as we have seen, half way to the Cape Town, marking their progress with fire and massacre. It was not till they arrived at the farther bank of the Kaiman's-river that the united power of the English troops and the peasants succeeded in stopping them; and at length, in the beginning of the year 1800, they were forced back to the Zwartkops-river. Lieutenant General Dundas, governor of the colony, had in the mean time established the settlement at Algoa bay, and taken all possible precautions to prevent like misfortunes in future. It was not at first in his power to prevail upon the rebel chiefs of the Caffres to return over the Great Fish-river, and it did not appear advisable to attempt driving them over. This part of the colony therefore remained for some time in their hands; the lands consequently were uncultivated, and the reciprocal distrust was unabated.

Geika in the mean time continued quiet, nor would suffer his subjects to take any part in these disturbances and quarrels, yet perfect peace could not be preserved between him and the colonists. The latter never lost the idea of taking advantage of the first opportunity presented them for regaining from the Caffres a part of the booty they had taken, but went from time to time
in little parties over the borders, and once fell upon a troop of Geika's adherents, whom they either could not, or would not, distinguish from the other party, and drove away their cattle. Reprisals were naturally resorted to, and thus, after the revolted chiefs had been chased from the colony, and compelled to remain quiet, a petty warfare was carried on between the party among the Caffres who had not taken any share in the great contest, and the inhabitants of Bruintjeshoogte, Zwagershoek, and a part of the Snow Mountains. That the evil was not productive of more important consequences was owing, as many affirm, entirely to Conrad Buys, against whom so much has been said, and of whom Mr. Barrow relates that he was the author of all the mischief. He was indeed living with King Geika before the troubles broke out; but having supported him in his defence against Sambeh, he was in the sequel either constantly with him, or else travelling in the northern parts of the Caffre country, far from the theatre of war. Besides, it is scarcely credible that he would promote the devastation of his native country, and the misery of his friends: it was not from any quarrel with them that he fled and sought an asylum elsewhere; it was because he saw the colony passing under a foreign yoke. That an irreconcilable aversion to the English induced him rather to take up his abode among heathens than in a country of which they were the masters, he himself avowed. Even had he been disposed to excite his friend and protector Geika against the English, yet he never had any concern whatever with the rebel chiefs, the enemies of Geika, nor could be in any way involved in an attack made by them.

Vander Kemp himself, who was no friend to the colonists, and a zealous adherent of the English, exculpates Buys from such accusations. Both lived for a considerable time with Geika, but Buys possessed his confidence in a much higher degree than the missionary: the latter indeed assures us that the confidence placed by the king in his mother, and in his fugitive friend, was so great, that no measure of importance was taken by him without consulting them. A sort of marriage, as has been already mentioned, had taken place between the mother of Geika and Buys. She was a princess of Mathimba, and had procured for her son the sovereignty of that kingdom in addition to his former dominions. A vicegerent had been appointed by Geika, to administer the government, and the senior among his wives was taken from that nation.
Geika always treated his mother with the most profound respect, and even now she exercised a sort of guardianship over him. This was exemplified on a particular occasion, when he was sitting in judgment, earnestly endeavouring to discover among a number of persons who had been cited into his presence which among them was the perpetrator of a crime that had been committed. The question was that some injury had been done to a woman of distinction without her being able to say who was the offender. As soon as the queen-mother heard the nature of the complaint, she commanded her son to stand forth in the midst of the circle, as he was with the rest on the spot where the affair happened, and seating herself in his place, made him take an oath that he himself was innocent: afterwards resigning his place to him again, she permitted him to proceed in the investigation. Geika commended exceedingly the wisdom shewn by her.

When Sambe was conquered, the children of the former King Khauta fell into the hands of Geika. Some of them were put to death, and one, who was somewhat deformed, he killed with his own hands. The life of the youngest, however, by name Hiëntza, was not only spared, but the king took him under his especial protection, and educated him with the utmost care and kindness. Now that he was twelve years old he had at the youth's earnest request restored him to his mother. Geika has many times to persons in his confidence expressed his wish that Hiëntza might prove a man of worth and talents, for he had resolved in that case to name him his successor, and restore the succession to its former line, hoping by that means to put an end to the unhappy discords which had so long reigned in consequence of the original contest between Palo and Tgareka. Besides Hiëntza, there are two other sons of Khauta living, the name of one of whom is Khaudi.

It remains now to say something of the more distant tribes of Caffres, as far at least as they are concerned with these notices respecting the Koossas, or became known to us from the travels subsequently undertaken into the northern parts of the country. What I have learnt upon this subject is confined principally to the names of the several tribes, and to having established the important fact, that their language, though diverging into different dialects, is essentially the same throughout this vast tract, and that the most distant tribes understand each other, though not always without difficulty. Buys, who has travelled over the country, even to the Matumasis, is my principal
authority for the fact, though in the sequel a confirmation of his assertions was not wanting from the mouths of the Caffres themselves.

The first tribe after crossing the river Basseh is the Tambuckis, or Mathimbas; they are somewhat lower in stature than the Koossas, but their language is exactly the same; a strict alliance has been preserved between these two tribes from time immemorial. Proceeding along the coast, the next tribe to the Koossas is one which is called by many different names; that by which it is most generally known is the Gonaquas, but by the colonists they are usually called Mambuckis; the Koossas call them the Imbos, and in Van Reenen's Journey they are called the people of Hambona. I will not pretend to decide whether all these names belong to the same tribe, or whether they are only different divisions of it. They were brought into notice from the shipwreck of the Grosvenor, which happened upon their coast, and from the journey, which, at the instigation of the Dutch government, was undertaken in 1791, to seek out such of the unfortunate crew as had been saved.

In pursuing the course of the Basseh into the interior of the country, south of this stream lies the tribe of the Abbatoanas, and still farther up the river are the Maduanas. The latter are a numerous and peaceable race: Buys lived for a considerable time among them, and assured me that there was scarcely any difference between their language and that of the Koossas.

Far to the north-west,* in the interior of the country, the Koossas speak of a tribe which they call the Macquinas, and say that it is from them all the other tribes receive their copper and iron. This information appears to me the less to be doubted, inasmuch as I found the same name afterwards among

---

* There seems some confusion here, since the country of the Macquinas is represented by the author as to the north-west, and in the interior; yet if it were so, it could not lie between the eastern coast and Beetjuan, as it appears to do from what follows. The Beetjuans spoke of them as the most easterly tribe they knew, and the author supposes them to have had intercourse with the Portuguese on the eastern-coast. Perhaps a very unfortunate instance of misprinting has here occurred, and we ought to read "far to the north-east." Still there is a difficulty, as to its being called in the interior of the country, since from all that is said, it appears rather to be towards the eastern-coast. I have, however, given the passage exactly as it stands in the original, but have thought proper to notice it in this way in order to exonerate myself from having created the confusion. Translator.
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

The people of Beetjuan. They spoke of them as the most easterly tribe they knew, as the Koossas had called them the most northerly, and said that their very extensive territory was crossed by a great mountain, from one side of which copper was dug, from the other iron. The number of these people is not to be calculated, and no traveller has ever yet reached the extent of their territories. Through them, many generations before, the Beetjuans were assured of the existence of such beings as white men. Probably therefore this tribe had already had some intercourse of trade with the Portuguese on the eastern coast of Africa, at least they had heard of them. The Macquinas belong to the great nation of the Beetjuans, but they are superior in numbers and knowledge to all the other tribes.*

The Koossas besides talk of an extraordinary people, far to the north, that have no resemblance to the Caffres, who do not speak their language, or follow their customs. They call the country Mathola. Hitherto no one has visited or seen these people, but according to report, the colour of their skin is yellow, and they have long strait hair, which they do up in locks, and wind round the head. Such an account does not seem deserving of much attention, and appears at first wholly fabulous. But probably Europeans may here be meant, who have from time to time landed upon various parts of the coast; for it is to be observed that similar things have been repeatedly said from the first researches made by the discoverers of Africa. Even from the time of Prester John, long hair has been among the Africans a principal characteristic of every unknown and remarkable people. The company whom Governor Tulbagh sent out upon discovery in 1761 returned with like information, which they had obtained from the Briquas; and it is well known for what a length of time rumours had been spread of a people dwelling on the eastern coast distinguished by their long hair, till Van Reenen in his journey found among the Hambonias some old Europeans, who in early youth had been cast by shipwreck upon the coast, and had given occasion to such reports.

The trade which the Koossas keep up with the other Caffre tribes is very

* I cannot refrain from remarking on the affinity between the name Macquina, and the Arabic word Makini, which signifies a worker of iron. This similarity to the Arabic with others which I have particularized in the notices annexed to this work respecting the language of the Caffre tribes, are exceedingly striking, and sufficiently enigmatical.

Ω q 2
insignificant; the tribes of Beetjuan are in this respect much before them, since they carry on a far brisker trade, and draw from it many objects contributing to the comforts of life. This may perhaps be principally ascribed to the remoteness of the Koossas, who live entirely at one corner of the Caffre country. There is not therefore much reason to hope that our knowledge of this singular nation, and of its inhabitants, will be increased through them. Among people who live a kind of nomade life, and are often engaged in civil contentions with each other, the habitations being so often changed, the customs are changed also, nay even the names, so that it is difficult to distinguish one tribe very decidedly from another. Each separate tribe is in a certain degree only a passing phantom, which is afterwards overpowered by a mightier neighbour, or is spread out into many little hordes, one of which wanders hither, another thither, so that in the course of a few generations they become wholly unknown to each other. Such divisions have often taken place among the Koossas. In the time of the struggles with Palo, a considerable number, headed by a person of the name of Madjoagga, went north-westwards; and later, in Chachabé’s time, another party, under the conduct of a Chief named Bakka, wandered from the country; nor was it known where either of these had settled. I afterwards found some traces of them when I travelled from the Cape north-eastwards over the Orange-river.

A like emigration recently took place, when a Caffre Chief, by name Baai, who lived on the southern bank of the river Basseh, was compelled from a long and fierce war with the Abbatoanas to quit the country of the Koossas, and make his way with his horde to the sources of the river. Here his successors, if circumstances are favourable, may perhaps found a new kingdom.

As to what concerns the language of the Koossas, I refer the reader to the Appendix. I have there endeavoured, both from the best information I could myself obtain, and also from the additional information procured by subsequent travellers, to give as accurate an idea as lies in my power of the language of this nation, considering this as affording very important grounds on which to found a judgment of the degree of cultivation that subsists among them.

I must now flatter myself that I have put the reader in possession of data which will enable him to form a tolerably accurate idea of the situation of the Caffre tribes; and I cannot help entertaining a hope that this will give a
double interest to my account of the continuation of our journey, when we not only passed the borders, but even penetrated into the midst of the Caffre country.

I have been permitted to make use of the journal kept by General Janssens in his travels among the Caffres; and as it affords many interesting circumstances, which will contribute towards a better knowledge of these people, and of the relations between them and the colony, and will equally elucidate the situation of the eastern districts at that time, I have thought that I could scarcely make a more acceptable present to my readers than by giving at full length the following extract from it.
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

CHAP. XXII.

Fragment from the Journal of General Janssens.—His Stay in Algoa Bay, and Conference with the Rebel Caffre Chiefs.—Journey into the Caffre Country, and Interview with the King Geika.—Intercourse with him.—Transactions of the Commandant Alberti in the Caffre Country.

The situation of the eastern part of the colony, at the return of the Dutch, was in the highest degree disturbed and lamentable, and no part of the territory required the particular attention of the new government more urgently. The war with the Caffres had continued four years, without the English government having been able to re-establish a good understanding between them and the colonists. The great obstacle to this was not so much want of good-will in them, as the general distrust and suspicion that reigned on all sides, first between the government and its subjects in these parts, and secondly, between the rebel chiefs of the Caffres and their lawful sovereign. As long as this fourfold distrust existed, so long no union among the parties could be restored, so long was it hopeless to think of peace being maintained. This was necessarily more doubtful from one party being a savage nation, whose ideas upon the sacred nature of a contract, and upon the rights of nations, were but very imperfect; who were more likely to act upon a conviction of the superiority of their antagonists, and of the unity that reigned among them, than from any adherence to their word given not to pass the borders.

It is true that for the last three years the Caffres had discontinued to rob and plunder; but it was only because there was scarcely any thing left for them to seize, and because the new settlement in Algoa bay was formidable to them. But as little had the colonists ventured to return to their habitations, and to think of raising them again out of their ashes. Hundreds of families wandered about without a home, living scantily upon the small remains of cattle which they had been able to save from the hands of their invaders, sometimes seeking a shelter among the friends who had been spared, sometimes living under tents in a distant, solitary, but fertile country. The
cessation of acts of enmity, however, the Caffres having not for some time ventured to drive away the cattle which the colonists had imprudently suffered to stray into their neighbourhood, and the latter having abstained from seeking to remunerate themselves upon the treasures of the Caffres, had greatly diminished the spirit of revenge which once subsisted between them. The murderous warfare which had been carried on was by degrees thought of with less bitterness, the sense of suffering was partially abated, many deeds of horror were forgotten, and the longing for a firm peace was become universal. The time seemed now particularly favourable for its restoration, the return of the colony under its former rulers having removed the principal obstacle to it.

Immediately after the arrival of the Dutch commission, a deputation of the colonists appeared in the Cape Town, who made the new government acquainted with the state of things, and earnestly pressed the Governor to visit this part of the country in his own person. As soon, therefore, as the English had actually quitted the colony, the Governor hastened to comply with their request, and after a journey of thirty-six days, arrived on the eighth of May, 1803, at Algoa bay. A detachment of one hundred and fifty men of the Waldeck Jägers, under the command of Major Von Gilten, were in the mean time sent thither by sea, a part of whom had arrived before the Governor. From the time that the English garrison quitted the post, a colonist, by name Thomas Ferreira, had taken possession of it as steward, a man of so harsh a disposition, and of such arbitrary principles, that it seemed as if Mr. Barrow had taken his picture of the colonists from him. This Ferreira was looked upon by his countrymen as one of the principal instigators of the Caffre war; at least it is certain that during its continuance some prisoners taken by him were scandalously ill-treated, and that he was mortally hated by the incensed savages. Major Von Gilten, upon his arrival, put Ferreira and some other turbulent spirits under arrest, that they might be punished by the Governor, and prevented from doing mischief in future.

Messengers were now sent to the Caffre Chiefs to propose peace, and to invite them to an interview with General Janssens. A like embassy was sent by the General to two hordes of Hottentots who were hovering about the country, under the conduct of Klaas Stuurmann, and Boewezak, the first of whom is known to the readers of Mr. Barrow's Travels. He had at the time of that gentleman's mission collected together a number of Hottentots, who
were discontented, and greedy of plunder, and was with difficulty persuaded by Mr. Barrow to follow him to Algoa bay; nor, when this was accomplished, would he remain there long, but soon with his followers joined the Caffres, and assisted them very much in the inroad they made upon the colony soon after. He seemed at first afraid to venture to the bay himself, notwithstanding the Governor's invitation, and wanted the latter to meet him at an appointed place. Hearing however that the Governor had summoned all Hottentots who had any complaints to make to appear before him, that their grievances, where any really existed, might be redressed, he assumed confidence, and went himself to Fort Frederic.

The General immediately ordered him into his presence, and put many questions to him, which he answered freely, though warily. When he was asked what the number of his followers might be, he did not appear willing to give a decisive answer; he also carefully evaded the inquiry into the complaints he had to make against the colonists, which occasioned his first secession from their service. Perhaps he thought that by what had since happened his grievances had been more than atoned, and that it was not prudent to come to a reckoning. Some of his followers, however, and other Hottentots from Vander Kemp's Institution, brought forwards their grievances, which were afterwards inquired into by jurisdictions appointed for the purpose. Stuurnann farther declared that his most earnest wish was to return to the colony, and enjoy, as formerly, peace and good-fellowship with the Christians. He proposed to the Governor to award him a little domain in the fertile country on the left bank of the Chamtoo river; but when the Governor endeavoured to persuade him that it would be more for the interest of both sides that he should have his habitation nearer the Cape Town, where he could be better protected by the government, he would not hear of it. All his followers, he said, earnestly wished to return, and live under the Christians, since among their present connections they had often scarcely sufficient to live upon, and had much to suffer from the Caffres. They would be very willing, upon good conditions, and under the Governor's pledge that the colonists should behave well to them, to hire themselves again as their herdsmen and house servants.

The General upon this informed him that a new code of laws was to be made for the Hottentots, by which the enjoyment of perfect freedom would
he secured to them, together with good treatment in the service of the Christians: all that had passed should be forgiven and forgotten, and himself and his party should be included under the protection of these laws, if they would return back into the colony. On the other side, it could never be permitted that they should continue to live as a company of vagabonds, and they must impose it as a duty upon themselves, if they wished for security, to gain their livelihood by diligence and industry. Robberies would be severely resented, and he should know how, especially since there was now a prospect of peace with the Caffres, to punish them with the utmost rigour. The General sent him away at last with some presents, and this interview had the good consequence that after some time most of his people returned quietly into the service of the colonists, or enlisted in the Hottentot corps, raised by the Dutch; and this corps, as long as they continued in possession of the colony, behaved in the most regular and orderly manner, nor ever gave any cause of complaint against them. Stuurmann himself remained with some of his associates in the neighbourhood of the Caffres, and supported himself, like them, in keeping cattle, and in the chase. In November, 1803, in hunting the buffalo, his gun unfortunately burst, and shattered his right arm, of which he died in a few days.

Two days after this conference with Stuurmann, two Caffres appeared before the Governor, one of whom was an envoy from Jaluhsa, the other from Sambil. They had another Hottentot family with them, who had lived for a long time in the Caffre country: they now however wished, under the protection of the new government, to return into the service of the Christians. They were clothed after the Caffre fashion, and assigned as the reason of their wishing for this new emigration, the want of sufficient means of support.

The ambassador from Jaluhsa had a timid appearance, but spoke quick, and with much facility; a Hottentot served him as interpreter. He said that he had come a week before to Algoa bay to seek the General, and in the name of his Chief to give him an assurance of his friendship. He came then in vain, and was returning, but before he arrived at Jaluhsa's habitation learnt that the Governor was actually arrived, and had therefore immediately turned back once more, in order to see him, without having spoken to his Chief again; he the rather considered it as unnecessary to continue his
journey home, before he thought of seeking the Governor, as he found that ambassadors from the latter were on their way to his master. On his solemn assurance that it was now the earnest wish of the Chiefs to live in peace and friendship with the Dutch, the Governor asked whether they themselves would come to confer with him upon the subject. To this the envoy answered that it could hardly be supposed they would venture upon such a thing, although he did not doubt but that they would be perfectly safe, that no harm would be done to them. He was then asked how he had ventured by himself. He replied that he had been commanded by his Chief, and fear could not then come into consideration; but no man could command his master, therefore the case was quite otherwise with him. The envoy was now handsomely entertained, and requested to remain till the return of the messengers sent to the Chiefs.

General Janssens in the mean time appointed a commission from among his followers, who were in his name to draw up articles of peace between the Dutch and the Caffres. He sketched also a plan of regulations for his own conduct, which he submitted to the most respectable among the colonists, they being better acquainted with the Caffres than himself; and it was upon some hints furnished by them that the plan was completed.

On the eighteenth of May, the envoys sent by the Governor to the Caffre Chiefs returned. They met with a very amicable reception from Conga, Sambeh, Jaluhsa, and Tholy: each of these princes had a fat ox killed for their entertainment. They promised to be all at the Zondag's river in five days, and requested the Governor to meet them there, as they were afraid to come on to Algoa bay. They were still at enmity with King Geika, who not only sometimes attacked them, and took away their cattle, but had lately commissioned the Commandant Rensburg, who was returning into the country, to make a treaty for him with the Christians, and to endeavour to procure him their assistance, in reducing his rebel subjects to obedience. Since they had learnt this they were become distrustful, and wished first to speak to the Governor alone, that he might endeavour to reconcile them with the king.

Very soon after arrived an envoy from Conga, who confirmed all that the Dutch ambassadors had reported. This envoy called himself first minister to Conga; he had been before employed upon a similar errand, and wore upon his breast a copper-plate engraved with the arms of General Dundas,
which before the breaking out of the war he had received from the then
Landdrost of Graaff Reynett. His name was Nacaban. He appeared about
middle aged, was tall in stature, had a martial air, and a very keen eye. He
said that he had four wives, but the purchase of them had cost him so much
that he had scarcely any cattle remaining. He wore a mantle of tiger’s skin,
the point of which was fastened to the right shoulder, so that the arm
remained at liberty. As he stood in presence of the Governor, he took care
to throw back his mantle over the left shoulder, when on the left arm, above
the elbow, eight beautiful bracelets were displayed, each cut out of a single
piece of ivory. On both wrists he had copper bracelets, and round his waist
he had a girdle ornamented with a double row of plates of copper. His head
was decorated with a sort of diadem, consisting of a strip of leather about
an inch wide, on which were sewed beads of all colours in symmetrical
figures, and on the top of his head was a large bunch of quagga’s hair,
standing upright, intermixed also with beads and pieces of copper.

He contemplated with curiosity and admiration the number of new objects
which now met his observation—the little fortress, the barracks, and the
travelling apparatus of the Governor. As he went over the barracks the
soldiers were at dinner, and he expressed his admiration very strongly at the
order that reigned among them. He said that the Caffres had indeed a great
many warriors who were not suffered to want; but that he must be a great
man indeed who had so many rich people under him: if every one of the
soldiers did but give him a button, what a rich man he should be, and yet
they would still have enough left for themselves. It was incomprehensible
to him how, amidst such a variety of business, every one should know his
own. The large vessel which lay in the bay, De Verwachting, and which
had brought the last part of the troops, above all things excited his astonish-
ment: it was very much tossed by the swelling of the waves in the impetuous
bay, and he stood for a long time upon the shore watching with eager curiosity
the unloading of its cargo into boats. When he was invited to go on board,
he repelled the idea with manifest terror at the thoughts of it, and declared
that nothing could ever induce him to go upon the water. A dread of the
water is common to all the Caffre tribes, even more particularly to the inha-
itants of the coast. They have no sort of vessel for the purpose, and not-
withstanding their want of resources for food, despise the easy one offered
them by the means of fisheries. The Caffres in the interior of the country equally reject the fish which their numerous streams might afford, and will only drink water from great thirst, and a total want of milk and whey. It is solely on account of their cattle that they fix their dwellings in the neighbourhood of springs and rivers.

But to return to our envoy. On his inquiring with great curiosity into the use of a cannon, the General, after explaining the effect, ordered one to be loaded and fired. At the going off of the piece, he gave tokens of great terror, but it was even exceeded by his astonishment. He sprang forwards with his eyes staring, and holding both his ears, and after drawing his breath very deep, whistled out a long protracted tone. He then inquired very eagerly how far such a shot would hit, and how many men it would kill at once. When it was proposed to him that the experiment should be repeated, he declined it anxiously, with a number of singular motions and gestures. The gold epaulets of the officers, the naked swords, the muskets, and many other objects, attracted his attention exceedingly, and when he was permitted to feel them, or to take them into his hands, his astonishment was expressed by repeated whistling. A watch interested him at first very much, but when he was informed that this instrument kept pace with the sun, he gave it back again without saying a word, almost as if offended that he should be told any thing so utterly incredible.

On the twentieth of May the Governor set out with his train for the Zondag's river, the appointed place of his interview with the Caffre Chiefs. As the train halted at the Kuga-river, the General was surprised by the arrival of five colonists, who came to inform him that at a short distance more than a hundred inhabitants of the neighbouring districts were assembled to testify their joy at the return of the old government, and to renew their oaths of allegiance to it. It was with no small pleasure the General heard that Rensburg was at the head of this assembly; he had for a long time expected his arrival, and the delay of it rather perplexed him. A little farther on, the train met eight more elderly colonists on horseback, who were sent by Rensburg to welcome the Governor, and ask his permission to receive him, according to the custom of the country, with a salute of fire-arms. As the road lay along the plain of the Zondag's river, the assembled colonists were soon discovered drawn up in a long row on their horses, with a great
number of waggons and tents behind them. After the Governor had been complimented with the proposed salute, Rensburg stepped forwards, and testified in a plain and concise speech how exceedingly overjoyed they all were at seeing the return of the Dutch government. They were come, he said, to assure him of their faith and obedience, of their desire to participate in the restoration of peace with the Caffres, and to receive the commands of the General from his own mouth.

The General availed himself of this opportunity, while he gave them many assurances of his paternal care, to remark upon the causes of the misfortunes they had experienced. The greater part of them he said were to be ascribed to their own misconduct,—to disunion among themselves, and to the intrigues of some evil spirits by whom they had been led astray. He however now hoped and expected to see an end of these things, to see them remain in peace and amity among themselves, and that he should receive their assistance in the restoration of tranquillity without doors as well as within: such were the objects he assured them most dear to his heart. His emotions in delivering these expressions of good-will towards them on the one side, and on the other the many assurances repeated by the colonists of their repeutance, gratitude, and fidelity, rendered this scene extremely affecting and interesting to the by-standers. A quiet composure appeared among them all, and many of the party remarked upon the countenances of these rough unpolished men evident traces of inward emotion. The General, happy to observe this disposition, endeavoured, by conferring with several in a confidential manner, to procure his exhortations a more favourable reception, and to insure their making a more lasting impression.

In the mean time a common camp was formed on the bank of the river, which, from its extent, and the great number of men, horses, waggons, and tents, in this otherwise pleasing spot, made altogether a truly interesting scene. The train of the Governor consisted of a detachment of fifty-six jägers, nine dragoons, and thirty other persons, so that with the hundred and eight colonists and their Hottentots, there were altogether not less than two hundred and fifty men. Klaas Stuurmann was encamped on the other side of the river, and here and there appeared Caffres attracted by a particular share of curiosity. Stuurmann sent a basket of fresh milk over to the Governor as a present, and several of the Caffres joined the messenger, to beg meat,
tobacco, and a little drop of what they prized above all things, brandy. Nothing that they asked for was refused them, and they returned over the river at night extremely delighted.

Nacabaneh remained all this time with the Governor, not however without evident signs of fear and distrust, on account of his numerous train. It was very difficult to quiet his apprehensions, and although he frequently assured the people about, even with loud laughter, that he was not afraid of any thing, he could not so far conceal his suspicions but that they were visible in his eyes. The whole of the following day the arrival of the Caffre Chiefs was expected in vain. In the interval, the General had many conferences with the colonists, particularly with Rensburg and Jaarsveld. From the first he learned that Geika had sent a messenger to him, to request that he would support him against his enemies, and constrain them finally to submit to him. To this Rensburg replied, that no step could be taken by the colonists without the consent of the government. Jaarsveld, whom the General had already sent from Zwellendam, informed him that he executed his commission to Geika, and that this king wished anxiously to see the Governor, and conclude a peace with him: he was ready for this purpose to meet him at any place he would appoint. Jaarsveld had also, he said, talked with Conrad Buys, and found him ready to submit in every way to the commands of the government.

Two days more elapsed before the eagerly expected chiefs made their appearance. In the mean time, messengers came from Conga to announce that he was approaching, and only waited for the arrival of the rest to make his appearance personally. People on the part of the Governor were again sent to him, whom he received in a very friendly manner, and repeated to them his assurances that he desired peace most ardently. He begged of them, as a token of friendship, a little flask of brandy, which, with some other presents, was immediately sent to him. The camp was never free from Caffres, whom curiosity brought thither: they were sometimes very importunate, and rather troublesome: they would amuse themselves with dancing and singing, in their way, for hours together. At length, on the twenty-third of May, the Chief Tholy, accompanied by another Chief named Tsjatsjo, and about twenty Caffres, came to the camp. They told the General that when all the others were collected, they would confer with him upon matters of business; that their present visit was meant only as a token of friendship and confidence.
They were conducted into a tent, and a cow was killed to do them honour: some of the flesh was given to them, which they roasted themselves, and they were besides, to their infinite delight, treated with plenty of tobacco and brandy.

Tholy hinted a wish for presents, and on being informed that there were some destined for all the Caffre Chiefs, which would be given them after the conferences, he begged to be permitted to see at least those intended for him. Tholy is tall in stature, somewhat plump, and has a more flat negro-like countenance than the Caffres in general. He had no other distinction in his dress than that his mantle was of a tiger’s skin. In the afternoon the party returned over the river to Conga.

In the interval during which he was waiting for the arrival of the Chiefs, the General visited the Hottentot leader Klaas Stuurmann in his kraal, and endeavoured to obtain from him some farther insight into the occasion of the unfortunate disturbances. Stuurmann talked of the gross ill-treatment which he and his people had suffered. He named several colonists in particular, of whom he complained bitterly: they were all among those who had been for ten years considered as turbulent spirits. In the times of the English they had been the most eager in resisting the ordinances of the government; they had ardently wished for the contest with the Caffres, and by their harsh unruly behaviour had essentially promoted it. Indeed, it clearly appeared that the colonists of these parts were much more rough and rugged in their manners than any others; while the events of the last ten years, in which they had been engaged in rebellion, and in a war with savages, and subsequently lived a roving life, wandering hither and thither without any settled habitation, were well calculated to increase such unamiable propensities in their dispositions.

Early on the twenty-fourth, the Chiefs sent to announce their approach, and the General dispatched the Field-Commandant Botha, with some others, to receive them with due solemnity. When they arrived on the other side of the river, the Chiefs gave them to understand that they should not trust themselves to go over to the Governor’s camp. A second embassy, consisting of the Adjutant-General and Captain Alberti, was equally fruitless: how much soever they endeavoured to inspire them with confidence, and prove to them that they had nothing to fear, they adhered to their point, and insisted that the Governor should come over to them. Even when he had yielded in this respect, still they found new difficulties, and were not without much per-
suzasion induced to come out from among the bushes upon the plain. The General went with a very small train of his officers, and the Commandant of the colonists: still they kept him waiting a considerable time, till at length the interpreter and Stuurmann persuaded them to come forwards.

They approached with slow and trembling steps, one after the other, often stopping and looking back; at length Jaluhia came forwards, and held out his hand to the Governor, after which Sambeh, Conga, Tholy, Amaassi, and Tsjatsjo, did the same. They then seated themselves upon the ground in a semicircle: the Governor spoke to them in the kindest and most friendly manner, and before he entered upon the negociation, asked them, through the interpreter, what made them so extremely fearful. They would not say positively, but intimated that they understood the Governor to have come to an understanding with Geika, and that he had promised to seize them and compel them to obedience. When satisfied that they were in an error upon this point, they assumed more confidence, but had no patience to wait the process of a regular negociation: they said that the Governor had only to send them the presents he had mentioned, and peace would be concluded. It was impossible to make them comprehend that there were many points upon which the parties must come to a right understanding before peace could be concluded; they insisted that it was easily made, and began to return. Nothing then remained but for the officers appointed to draw up the conditions of peace to follow them to their own camp among the bushes, and here some farther conversation took place, in which the following points were discussed:

Q. What was the motive of the war?
A. The past should be forgotten, and indeed the true motives which first occasioned it were unknown to them.

Q. Whether they had been offended by any individuals among the colonists, and whether they had any particular ill-usage from them to complain of?
A. Yes. Very lately one of their people had been grossly ill-treated by Thomas Ferreira, without any provocation having been given. Former grievances had been already avenged by themselves.

Q. What was their present situation with regard to King Geika?
A. They were at open war with him. He had plundered them of a great many cattle, and they had it in contemplation to attack him with all their might.

Q. What was the origin of their differences?
They are accustomed to make war whenever they have a mind to it; but they were once followers of Geika.

Q. Were they not disposed to make peace with him?

To this most of them answered in the affirmative, but upon certain conditions; particularly that the Governor should protect them from Geika's arrogance and revenge. They could besides never make peace with him, unless he would consent to send away Conrad Buys, who had always incensed the king against them. Sambeh alone declared that he never would be reconciled to Geika: he knew him well, as he had educated him from his youth, and no man could be so well aware as himself how little Geika was to be trusted.

It was now further signified to them, that if they would live at peace with the Christians, they must agree to the following conditions, and bind themselves to the punctual observance of them.

First. They should not prevent any of the Hottentots who were with them returning into the colony, if they were themselves inclined to it, and would enter into the service of the farmers, or join the mission-institute. The Governor promising the Hottentots sacredly on his part, that not only all former offences should be forgiven, but that they should be protected in the most powerful manner against any ill-treatment from the colonists.

A. There are scarcely any Hottentots among us, excepting those that were with Stuurmann, Boewesak, or Trompetter. The few that there are shall not be prevented returning.

Secondly. Whatever slaves of either sex, or of any age, shall have gone over to the Caffres during the war, or shall have fallen into their hands in any other way, shall be returned to their masters. None of them shall be punished for what has past, provided they behave well in future: this the Governor solemnly promises.

A. They are very ready to do this, but hope in return, that all Caffre children which have fallen into the hands of the colonists shall be given up.—Unconditionally agreed to.

Thirdly. All Dutch or other deserters who have taken refuge among them shall be given up, without promise of pardon.

A. Agreed unconditionally.

Fourthly. All fire-arms which they have plundered shall be restored.
A. As they did not know how to use fire-arms, all that they took were given to the Hottentots, who could use them, they had not therefore any in their possession.

Fifthly. The Great Fish-river shall be considered, as formerly, the boundary of the colony, and the Caffres shall return over it into their own country.

A. They acknowledge the Fish-river as their boundary, but they cannot return over it as long as they continue at war with Geika. They are at present about to offer him battle, and they petition the Governor that their cattle may remain under his protection till the battle is over. If they are conquerors, they will quit the colony entirely: but they must repeat the request, that the Governor will compel Buys to quit the Caffre country.

Sixthly. No Caffre shall come into the colony without the permission of his Chief, nor shall any colonist, without permission of the Governor, or of the landdrost of his district, pass over to the other side of the Fish-river.

Against this latter article they objected very much, and said that there could be no true peace, if people might not have intercourse with each other: besides, the colonists were such rich people, that they should be glad to come among them and gain a day's wages now and then.

Neither of the two last articles were of much avail, notwithstanding that the Governor in the sequel prohibited the colonists from taking any Caffre into their service. He recommended to the Caffres besides, to abstain from all commerce with the colonists, and promised them if they would do so, to send them from the Cape Town whatever they should want of European manufactures, at very moderate prices. They adhered to the proposition that it was better to trade with the colonists, although it was proved, and is easily to be conceived, that they were almost always overreached by them.

Seventhly. If a colonist offend a Caffre, the latter shall not revenge himself, but he shall give information either to the nearest magistrate, or to the commandant at Algoa bay, who shall take care that the offended party has entire satisfaction.

A. This request shall be punctually complied with.

Eighthly. On the other hand, a colonist shall be as little at liberty to revenge himself, but if he be plundered or injured by a Caffre, he shall complain to the Chief, and it is expected that in such a case the plunder shall be restored, and the offender punished.
A. Such offences shall be punished with death, nay, even the whole family of the offender shall be extirpated.

This compact was not brought to a conclusion without a great deal of trouble. The commissioners charged with the negociation were for three days together backwards and forwards with the chiefs, who soon grew weary of the conversation: whenever one side attempted therefore to renew the subject, the other shewed evident signs of listlessness and impatience. Several times the Chiefs seemed disposed to break off the negociation entirely, partly on the ground that they had no more provisions, partly pretending that they were afraid of an attack from Geika in their absence, when he might get possession of their cattle. At length, however, it was brought to a close, the Governor, in order to retain them, having sent them provisions for the last day. They were now invited to come to the Governor's camp to receive their presents, but only two of them, Tholy and Amaassi, ventured to accept the invitation: to them were consigned the presents both for themselves and the others. These peace-offerings consisted of knives, looking-glasses, buttons, beads, and tobacco; as presents in return, the Chiefs brought two oxen, and said they were their letters of compact. Klaas Stuurmann, who had been very assiduous in forwarding the peace, had also presents made him; and a number of the lower Caffres, who swam over to the camp on the last day, after having been well feasted, had some trifles given them at taking leave.

The General renewed several times to the Chiefs the offer of his mediation to bring about, if possible, a peace between them and Geika; he even invited them to send ambassadors to the king under his protection. They did not appear very desirous of peace, and were not without some difficulty persuaded to send a man with the Governor, who, after the interview of the latter with Geika, should return to inform them of the result, as far as they were concerned in it.

On the twenty-seventh of May, the Governor returned back to Algoa bay. There he instituted inquiries among the Hottentot disciples of Vander Kemp and others, respecting the complaints they had to make against the colonists. In this examination it appeared that some of the latter had indeed been guilty of the most atrocious conduct towards their dependents; there was but too much reason even to believe that they had deeds of murder to answer for. However, as positive proof of these things was not to be obtained,
and it was to be feared that without them the College of Justice at the Cape Town would suffer the offenders to go unpunished, the Governor thought it better to take the whole matter upon himself.

Thomas Ignatius Ferreira was banished for ever from the country, and admonished to transport himself and all his moveable property to Zwellendam, there to live under the immediate inspection of the landdrost of that district. A like fate was decreed to his two sons Stephen and Henry, with his last wife Martha, and another colonist, by name John Arend Rens. By the rest of the colonists, who were most of them well-disposed, well-judging men, this sentence of the Governor was highly commended, while upon many who were a little too conscious that they might have been justly involved in some censure, though perhaps not quite so severe, the example made a deep impression, convincing them clearly of the injustice of their proceedings, and determining them to alter their conduct in future.

The General now published an ordinance, that from the first of June no colonist should take a Caffre into his service, and whoever had any then as servants should discharge them immediately, and see that they were safely restored to their native country. Such only were to be permitted to remain who had been a full year in their service, and desired themselves to continue in it. At the same time he ordered that all children of Caffres who had been taken in the late wars, and were now in the hands of the colonists, should be restored by the safest means to their parents: no exception to be made here, not even in the case of their expressing a wish to stay.

On the second of June the Governor sent two colonists as messengers to Geika, to invite him to an interview at the Great Fish-river, and he immediately set out himself upon his journey thither. On their way through the fertile regions bordering the Zondag's and the Bosjesmans'-rivers, and the country formerly called Quammedakka, the company had daily visits from a great number of Caffres who now inhabited the district. On the dry plain between the two rivers they found vast numbers of antelopes, both great and small, and several quaggas. In one day, the Jägers in the Governor's train killed fifty-four head of mountain antelopes, with a great deal of other game. The red deer were in such abundance, that large spaces were covered with them; they seemed to be in flocks of several thousands, and it was really a beautiful sight to see them flying before the hunters, bounding
along with such springs, that they went almost as much through the air as along the ground. On another day, among a troop of mountain deer, which seemed not to consist of less than three thousand, one was seen perfectly white. The General no sooner expressed a wish to have this rarity, than some of the young people pursued the animal in such a way, that they soon separated it from the rest, and surrounded it, so that it was taken after some hours chase without being shot, by fairly wearying it out. The General, in the sequel, gave the skin of this rare animal to Monsieur Perron, who stopped at the Cape in his return from the South-sea, and it is now in the Museum of the National Institute at Paris, where it is considered as a particular curiosity.*

The camp at night was commonly visited by a great many jackal and hyænas, which were so daring that they even came between the tents and among the waggons, so as to terrify the oxen exceedingly. The cries of anguish uttered by these creatures, and their struggles to break loose from the waggons, to which they were tied, commonly frightened the marauders away again. During the first encampment, on the Zondag's river, one of the colonists killed a spotted hyæna in a very extraordinary manner. The man was lying sleeping at night upon a waggon, at the end of which hung a fresh killed sheep. The scent of it had probably attracted the hyæna, and while he was beginning to regale himself with the feast, the colonist, taking his gun, crept slowly forwards, and pushing it almost to the creature's mouth, shot him through the head. Among the bushes, through which the road lay at intervals, the party found an immense number of monkeys, chiefly the long-tailed green sort, which is peculiar to this part of Southern Africa.† Some of the colonists were singularly dexterous in climbing up the trees after these animals and taking them.

On the tenth of June, General Janssens with his train reached the Great Fish-river, but the messengers who had been sent to Geika did not return till the fourteenth. They had been received in a very friendly manner, but the King declared, that menaced as he was by his enemies, he was afraid to go so far from his residence, and must intreat the General to come some days

* Humboldt mentions some sorts of the Cervus mexicanus, which are to be met with in the Caraccaes, entirely white.
† Cercopithecus glaucus, mentioned by Le Vaillant.
journey nearer to him. Directly after them came Conrad Buys to the camp. He brought with him three deserters from the ninth battalion of Jägers, who had taken refuge with the Caffres,* but Geika, in delivering them up, earnestly solicited that they might be pardoned. There was also an Englishman in his party, who had given himself out as a traveller from London, but who was afterwards found to be a deserter. In the course of his journey the General met in different places with six other English deserters. Some were concealed among the savages, some among the colonists: many such had wandered as vagabonds about the colony, and their influence upon the character of the colonists had been extremely pernicious. Even the most uneducated European surpasses the African colonist, bred up in perfect solitude, in a certain readiness of wit; and these men, not being troubled with very strict principles, seldom made use of their superiority for any other purpose than to preach their convenient doctrines to the rough borderers, which was often the occasion of seducing them into crimes, and into disobedience to the government. The General therefore awarded the English deserters an abode near the Cape Town, where, being in an inhabited country, they might be under the constant eye of the magistrate, and gain their living in a more creditable manner. The Dutch deserters were carried prisoners to the Cape, and there punished according to the military law.

Buys repeated Geika's invitation, and expressed great doubts whether the compact with the rebel Caffre Chiefs would ever be executed. Geika had many complaints to make of their robberies and petty attacks, and he was every moment in expectation of their falling upon him with their united power. The General exhorted Buys to use all his endeavours to dispose Geika to peace, as the colony suffered exceedingly from these dissensions among the Caffre Chiefs. He further required of him, that he should himself return into the colony, as his abode with the king was a great cause of discontent to the rebels. Buys declared his willingness to comply with the Governor's wishes in both instances. He had twelve Caffres with him, four of whom were amongst Geika's most distinguished officers; these were

* These belonged to the piquet of Poles which were mentioned some way back as having deserted from the Weinberg in February, 1803.
Enno, Cassa, Spondo, and Umlao: the last is the brother of Tholy. When they were introduced to the Governor, they said pretty much the same as Buys had done: some presents were made to Enno, who was brother-in-law to the king, and he was dispatched to inform the latter and the Queen-mother that the General was on his way, and would meet them in five days at the Kat-river.

On the following day therefore the journey was recommenced. The route lay through a wild country, every where entirely uncultivated, and abounding in game to an almost inconceivable degree. There were many sorts of antelopes, quaggas, and wild-boars, and in one day the hunters killed so large a number of animals of different kinds that their united weight amounted to some thousands of pounds. This was an excellent supply, as in making provision for the journey, it was not calculated that the company were to go so far from any habitations of Christians. The country was not mountainous, but there was no tracked road, and a number of little streams to cross without a beaten way through, so that they were very inconvenient for the loaded waggon: sometimes it was even necessary to cut a way through the bushes, or the waggon could not have got on. On the twenty-first of June the General and the party at length reached the appointed place, having travelled six days constantly in a south-easterly direction. In the interval the perplexed state of public affairs was increased by some colonists of Bruintjeshoogte, whose cattle had been stolen by the wandering Caffres, having followed the robbers; and as the latter would not give back their prey, two of them had been shot. This affair had, however, no farther consequences, and in the end Geika said that the colonists had done right.

On the twenty-second, some couriers who had been sent forwards announced the approach of King Geika. They were commissioned to request that the Governor would on the morrow dispatch some of his officers and dragoons to meet him, and that a waggon or car might be sent for his mother, as, on account of her corpulence, travelling was fatiguing to her. These requests were complied with, and the waggon with the guard of honour set off in the morning. They met the Caffre king seated on a horse without a saddle, and as the detachment drew near he stopped. After contemplating them for a few moments with a pleased and curious eye, he seemed to consult the principal people
with him, then rode a few steps forward, then halted again, and seemed for some minutes doubtful whether in his confidence he was not running himself into danger. At last he appeared to come to a hasty resolution: he made a long whistle with his mouth, and at this signal his whole train, which consisted of about a hundred and fifty persons, women included, put themselves in motion. His mother got into the car, the king remained on horseback, and all the rest were on foot: thus they proceeded in a brisk trot to the Dutch Camp. When arrived there the king dismounted, and being conducted to the General’s tent, he with the most perfect ease, and not without dignity, held out his hand to him.

Geika is one of the handsomest men that can be seen, even among the Caffres uncommonly tall, with strong limbs and very fine features. His countenance is expressive of the utmost benevolence and self-confidence, united with great animation; there is in his whole appearance something that at once speaks the king, although there was nothing in his dress to distinguish him, except some rows of white beads which he wore round his neck. It is not hazarding too much to say that among the savages all over the globe a handsomer man could scarcely be found. Nay, one might go farther, and say that among the sovereigns of the cultivated nations it would perhaps be difficult to find so many qualities united, worthy of their dignity. His fine tall well-proportioned form, at the perfect age of six and twenty, his open, benevolent, confiding countenance, the simplicity yet dignity of his deportment, the striking readiness of his judgment and of his answers, his frankness, and the rational views he took of things;—all these properties combined are not often to be found among those, who, according to our commonly received opinions, have had infinitely greater advantages in the forming their persons and minds.

Besides his mother, two of his wives accompanied him, whose names were Nonihbe, and Solohgöü. These three came with him into the General’s tent, where, after the first courtesies had passed, and while they were partaking of a little entertainment, a conversation was begun, which from the unembarrassed manner, and liberal assurances of the King, so far beyond all expectation, was interesting in the highest degree. On account of the warmth of the day, the side coverings of the tent were thrown half open, and the military officers and
colonists stood round. Near Geika, at the entrance, were his principal people, and behind them, in a semicircle, the whole train of the Caffres, with their hassagais at their feet.

At dinner, the king, with his family, were invited to the Governor's table, and although he was a perfect stranger to most of the dishes, as well as to the manner of eating, he immediately caught the use of the knife and fork, and instructed his wives in it, who were not so ready as himself. He several times declared that he liked the European manner of dressing meat exceedingly; and when any thing particularly pleased his palate, he immediately handed a piece over his shoulder to his attendants, who were standing without. He seemed to drink wine with pleasure, but drank little; his wives liked it still better; indeed, as it appeared in the end, they rather liked it too well. The European dress pleased him particularly; and as there was a suit of clothes among the presents destined for him, it was presented upon the spot. He was exceedingly anxious to put it on immediately, and some of our officers, who in the interim had entirely won his confidence, assisted him. He then shewed himself with evident delight to his subjects, who on their side uttered many exclamations of astonishment and admiration. The clothes were much too short and too small for him; but he, notwithstanding, looked extremely well in them, and they made him indeed appear of gigantic stature. Nothing seemed to please him more highly than the military hat with the feather and cockade. Yet feeling himself rather confined, he afterwards expressed a wish to have, instead of them, the General's large cloth cloak; this, however, was so indispensable to the latter on the journey, that it could not be spared, and instead of it the king was promised that one should be sent to him.*

* This promise was punctually fulfilled, and with the cloak several other things were sent, among which was a complete Hussar uniform, richly trimmed with gold lace, and a horse with a handsome saddle and bridle, and embroidered housings. Alberti gives the following account of the satisfaction which the whole present seemed to afford the king. "When I had conversed with him for some time," says he, "upon various subjects, I retired from my tent, all his train following me, that he might dress himself in the uniform which had been sent him from the Cape Town. It fitted him extremely well, and was very becoming to him. He then came out from the tent, where a richly caparisoned horse, sent also by the Governor, was waiting for him. He mounted it with his usual address, and his pleasure seemed to reach its highest possible point,
On the following morning a solemn interview was again held, in which
many proposals made to the king as the foundation of a lasting peace under-
went a long discussion between him and the Governor. He appeared in his
usual Caffre dress, and was accompanied by his mother and his most con-
fidential followers. The trains on both sides were, as the day before, without
the tent. Buys served as interpreter on the side of Geika; on our’s we had
a Gonaaqua from Bethelsdorp. The conference lasted a long time, as Geika
upon any difficult point consulted his mother and his friends. The following
is the substance of the most important matters that came under discussion.

After the Governor had explained the object of his journey, Geika assured
him that it gave him very great pleasure to see the regent of the colony, and
that this interview was more gratifying to him than all the presents that had
been made him. He always was a friend to the Christians, and that was

when a looking-glass about six feet high was produced and set before him. He was so astonished,
that it was even some minutes before he could recover himself. His vanity was now fully
displayed, by galloping to a certain distance backwards and forwards before the people for a
considerable time, while they contemplated him with the utmost admiration, uttering all the
time loud shouts of applause. I observed that he was more particularly delighted with the
applauses he received from the women.”

According to Alberti’s account, the Caffres infinitely prefer the European fashion of clothing
to their own, and acknowledge it to be more convenient, and a better protection against the
weather. They find besides something in the dress which distinguishes them, and gives them
consequence. The Queen-mother was very happy in wearing a man’s night-gown, which she
had received as a present from an European, and seemed to be very much admired in it.

This love of European clothing is common to almost all savages. The blacks on the coast of
Guinea are so particularly desirous of it, that the traders thither formerly used to buy large
bundles of frippery at the market at Amsterdam upon speculation to carry to this coast. An
acquaintance of mine among the Dutch navy officers, who in his early years had been at the
Gold-coast, gave us a very humourous description of the purchases which he once saw made
by the blacks from one of these speculators. The choice of a negro captain, among a variety
of clothing laid before him, fell upon a small three-cornered hat with gold lace, a scarlet frock
of the old French make, and a pair of velvet shoes with pinchbeck buckles. He immediately
put them all on, and took into his hand a long metal-headed stick, which he had also purchased,
and exhibited himself this grotesque figure with his black body beneath his red coat (for a shirt,
waistcoat, small clothes, and stockings, which had been proposed to him, he rejected as useless
and troublesome) before his fellow-countrymen with the utmost self-satisfaction, and was
contemplated by them with no slight degree of envy.
imputed to him as a crime by those rebel subjects, who were now making war upon him on all sides.

The Governor. The disunion among the Caffres has been the cause of great misfortunes to the colony, since numerous bodies of them have penetrated into the heart of it, and are even now established very far beyond the bounds which had been agreed upon as the limits of the two countries.

Geika. That was not his fault. He could not restrain the intruders, and had never taken the remotest share in the plunders and devastations that had been committed.

The Governor. From the concord now established between the present Dutch government and its subjects, the power of the Christians is, beyond all comparison, greater than it was in the time of the English, and they should now be able to repel immediately any attack that might be made.

Geika. This is a thing at which he sincerely rejoices. The dissensions among the Christians had been as unfortunate to him as to themselves, since, had it not been for them, his rebel Chiefs would not have succeeded in finding an asylum in the colony.—He took this opportunity of inquiring what was become of the rebellious colonists whom the English had at that time carried prisoners to the Cape Town, and seemed very much to rejoice that they had been leniently dealt with. He seemed not less rejoiced to learn that by the colony being given up again to the Dutch a general amnesty was established.

The Governor. In what relation does the King stand with the Caffres who are now in the colony?

Geika. He is totally at variance with them; in a state of the most destructive war.

The Governor. It appears of the utmost importance to the King himself, that the rebels should submit, and that a reconciliation should take place upon equal terms. What then stands in the way of such a reconciliation? and why should not the King send messengers with proposals of peace?

Here Geika broke out into bitter complaints against the rebels, and with manifest grief of heart assured the Governor that since his accession there was nothing he had endeavoured with more zeal than to preserve peace among his subjects; but his uncle was a man ambitious of rule, and who could never support the idea of being a subject to his pupil. It was he who had estranged the hearts of some of the people from him, and taught them to
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

despise the principle that they owed to him their faith and allegiance. He would say nothing of his personal flight out of the country, but his having seduced away so many kraals, and having subsequently waged such a destructive war against his king, and those of his subjects who adhered to their allegiance, was wholly unpardonable. Nor had they only made war against their king; they had even attempted his life—a crime till then without example.

His mother here took up the subject, and related with appearances of the highest indignation that they had even gone so far as to throw a hassagai at the King, by which he was wounded. The recollection of this circumstance excited equal indignation in all the Chiefs who were present; they began to speak eagerly, and all together, and their whole demeanour clearly evinced what an exalted idea these savages entertain of the inviolability of majesty.*

The king interrupted them, and proceeded, observing that it was scarcely possible to live in peace with such men. The Governor himself, he added, must recollect the horrors of which they had been guilty, in their attack upon his countrymen: the malignity of their dispositions was throughout that affair sufficiently manifested. He had hoped that the Christians would not have forgotten such atrocities, but would have been ready to unite themselves with him against them: their whole behaviour, since their first entering the colony, he was sure had merited the severest chastisement. But, he remarked, since the Governor thought otherwise, and had condescended to make peace with them, he was ready to do the same, upon their unconditional submission; he would even promise to forget all past offences, and take them again under his protection. He would not, however, send messengers to them; it was their part to send and solicit peace from him. He had several times sent them proposals of accommodation, but the messengers had been exceedingly ill received, and sent back with contumely, and no more overtures should be made on his part. In promising if the Governor could persuade

* This feature in the character of the nation throws, as it appears to me, a particular light upon the degree of their political cultivation. It will be recollected in the conflicts between Palo and his brother, above related, that when the former had the king in his power, he not only did not put him to death, but restored him to his dignity, as he should otherwise have drawn upon himself the indignation of the whole country.
them to submission, to receive them with kindness, and forget all that had passed, he considered himself as making no slight concessions.

The Governor then proposed it peace should be made, and the revolted tribes should be reduced to obedience, that in order to bind the union closer, implements of husbandry, and tools for mechanical works, should from time to time be sent from the colony to the Caffres, that the latter might have the means afforded them of acquiring greater wealth, and a more abundant portion of the comforts and enjoyments of life. A Commissary should also be sent annually into the country to see that the articles of peace were punctually observed by the colonists and the Caffres, and to settle any differences that might have arisen with regard to their respective rights.

These proposals were received by Geika with particular delight; and when he expressed his earnest wish to live in the closest friendship with the colonists, he remarked that the distance of the Cape Town was a great obstacle to the maintenance of such a friendship. He inquired therefore whether it would not be possible to appoint some person, not too far from the Caffre borders, to whom he might apply in any case when he wished to be informed respecting the Governor's pleasure. The latter answered that his wishes for a close union between the two nations were no less eager and sincere, and that the Commandant at Algoa bay might always be applied to, whenever the King wished for any communication with the government.

The Governor. The boundaries of the colony shall then remain the same as they were settled by Governor Plettenberg.

Geika. Agreed.

The Governor. No Christian shall travel in the Caffre country without permission from the government, nor shall any Caffre come into the colony but under the sanction of his king. In order to ascertain whether travellers have such a permission, some token shall be agreed upon to serve them as a passport.

Geika. This the King entirely approves, and will immediately send information to the Commandant at Algoa bay, when any Christian is found travelling in the Caffre country without such a token; and he intreats that like information may immediately be dispatched to him, if a Caffre should appear in the colony without being duly authorised.
The Governor. The Caffres shall deliver up to the Christians whatever has been taken from them during the war, whether Hottentots, slaves, firearms, horses, or cattle.

Geika. These are things not in his power. If the Christians shall succeed in reducing the rebel Caffres to obedience, this must be made a condition before their return home shall be permitted. But if they should be driven out of the colony, and thus placed again in his power, he promises that every thing shall be duly restored.

The Governor. All white people who are now in the Caffre country shall be compelled to return to the colony, or they shall be considered as enemies to their country, and Geika as their protector.

Geika. He is perfectly satisfied that all the white people shall quit the country; he only desires to retain Buys, for he knows him well, and cannot dispense with his counsels.

The Governor, however, adhered to the condition, of Buys, as well as all other white people, being compelled to return as indispensable, and assured the King that the colonist would not the less remain his firm friend. If he should want counsel, he might apply to the Commandant at Algoa bay, who would be equally his friend.

The Governor. In case ships of any nation shall be stranded upon the Caffre coast, the crew shall be kindly treated, the property, if any can be saved, shall be carefully guarded, and information of the matter shall be immediately conveyed to the nearest landdrost, or to the Commandant of Algoa bay.

Geika. This is faithfully promised; and moreover, the crew shall be furnished with food, till assistance can be sent them. But he hopes that the General will assure to every Caffre who is active in assisting the sufferers a suitable reward, exceeding any presents that he might previously have received.

The Governor. Lastly, the King is requested to afford all the elucidation in his power with regard to an accusation brought against certain persons, that they had endeavoured to excite him against some colonists, and persuade him to seize them and put them to death.

To this Geika answered clearly and distinctly, that four or five years before, Meinier, then landdrost of Graaff-Reynett, had sent presents to him, and
promised him others, if he would consent to put Buys and Rensburg out of the way. With regard to their property, all their cattle should be his (Geika’s); the sheep should be given up to the landdrost, and the horses divided between them. This proposal he had indignantly rejected, as he was incapable of betraying his friends.

After the several articles of this agreement, according to what is stated above, were drawn out upon paper, and signed by the proper persons, the King’s presents were laid before him, which consisted, besides the suit of clothes already mentioned, of provisions of various kinds, tobacco, many different ornaments, and other trifles. The latter he immediately divided among his followers,* and of the other things he also gave parts among his Chiefs and principal officers, although they, as well as the women, had separate presents made to them.

Soon after the Governor received from the King four fine beautiful oxen, as a counter-present, and as a ratification of the peace concluded. In the afternoon he made his farewell visit to the General, without his train, and in his Caffre dress, but wore on his head the three-cornered hat, with the white feather.

He now requested to know expressly how long the rebel Caffres would be allowed to remain in the colony if they did not accept the offered peace; and as he received no decisive answer to this question, he broke out anew into complaints against Sambeh, and said he must relate the following circumstance to the Governor.

A colonist of the name of John Botha had been living with him (Geika) for a considerable time, having fled when the colony fell into the hands of the English; but when he heard that it was restored to the Dutch, he resolved upon returning. Botha, at his departure, in gratitude for the protection he had received, made him a present of four oxen, four cows, and a gun. In

* The same was done by him with regard to the presents made him by Mr. Barrow, which consisted only in tobacco, beads, pieces of copper, and knives. On this occasion he observed to Vander Kemp, that they must consider the King of the Caffres in a very pitiful light, if they could suppose his friendship was to be obtained by such trifles. The presents which he received in the sequel from the government, and which were delivered to him by Alberti, consisted of European cloth, mantles, a horse, with a handsome saddle and bridle, a two-wheeled carriage, and other things of a similar nature.
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

his way home he was attacked and murdered by Sâmbeh's people, and all
his property was seized by them, which Sâmbeh afterwards declared to be
lawful plunder. Geika, however, required the restoration of the property
for the support of the widow, but only received from him two sick horses,
which soon after died, two female slaves, and a gun; these he had honourably
sent to the poor widow.

In this last conversation it appeared very clearly that Geika did not by
any means accurately understand the relationship subsisting between the
English and Dutch. When first the colony was taken by the former, and
they sent ambassadors to him, he could not comprehend what they wanted
with him: he knew of no other white people but his neighbours, and the
Company they represented. Afterwards, when Buys and other colonists fled
to him, who were not very well disposed towards the English, Buys endeav-
oured to explain the situation of things by a simile. The old Company
he said were inhabitants of a large country, and what they possessed in that
neighbourhood was only of the size in comparison to it that a cattle-fold is
compared with a whole farm. But the English were the Bosjemsans of the
sea, and had taken this cattle-fold from its rightful owners. Nothing could
more completely disparage the name of Englishman in the conceptions of the
Caffres: the idea of traitors and robbers was indissolubly associated with it,
and the whole nation became the objects of their hatred.* It was therefore
extremely difficult to make Geika comprehend how the colony could be
peaceably restored to its former possessors.

When the king at length departed, he held out his right hand again to the
Governor, and separated himself with repeated assurances of the utmost
personal friendship for him. The next morning Buys had permission to follow
the King, in order to settle, as soon as possible, all things necessary, prior to
his return into the colony. On the same day, General Jansens with his train
set out from the Kat-river, on their return to Graaff-Reynett.

A few weeks after, Captain Alberti, in the name of the Governor, resumed
the negotiations with the Caffres. Sâmbeh, Jaluhsa, and Conga, had
separated from each other, each taking his kraal to a particular circle of his
own, but all between the Bosjemsans' and the Zondag's rivers. The captain

* Vander Kemp is again my authority for this circumstance.
visited each singly in his camp, and found them disposed to be much more friendly, and to shew greater confidence in the Dutch, than at the former interview with the Governor. They all complained that no abatement appeared in Geika's hostile dispositions towards them; that he continued to plunder their cattle, and would not abstain from it. But the greatest subject of complaint was, that Buys was still with him, and that he did not send messengers to propose peace: never, they said, could friendship be restored between them till his conduct was altered on these points.

On the other side, in a letter recently received by Alberti from Buys, he said that Geika complained exceedingly of the still continued enmity of these Chiefs; that they had not only recently murdered some of his people, but had again attempted his life. A rumour was indeed abroad among the Hottentots that the separation among the Chiefs was occasioned by two of them having urged the attacking Geika's kraal while he was negotiating with General Janssens at the Kat-river, to which the rest would not consent, on account of their promise given to the General. Nor was such an intention positively denied by the Chiefs; they only when questioned upon the subject broke out into fresh complaints and accusations against Geika. Sambeh even declared that the murder of John Botha had been perpetrated in compliance with Geika's commands, and whatever had been taken from the murdered man had been immediately conveyed to him.

From all this it appeared evident that the hatred and distrust which had so long reigned between the parties would not be very easily removed, and during its continuance there seemed no hopes that the rebel Caffres would either by exhortations or menaces be prevailed with to quit the Dutch territory, or even to move nearer the borders: this was a great injury to the farmers, who were desirous to return to their habitations. The Caffres declared that they could only consider themselves as safe on this side the Fish-river, since Geika would not dare to attack them directly in the neighbourhood of the Christians; they were ready to fulfil all the conditions of peace if they might only be permitted awhile to continue in the place which had so long afforded them an asylum. It was indeed true that all their engagements had been punctually fulfilled: they had given up the slaves, the Hottentots, and some muskets, and their deportment in every respect indicated that they had no thoughts of disturbing the colonists; that an attack from them was not in the least to be
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

apprehended. On the contrary, their confidence in Captain Alberti seemed to increase with every visit made by him, and they repeatedly assured him that they were convinced peace was earnestly wished on our side. Yet notwithstanding these things, our intercourse with them was exceedingly embarrassing and disagreeable, since there was no reliance to be placed upon them; scarcely any thing that they said was wholly true, and in order to keep on good terms with them, it was necessary to put the most advantageous construction upon their representations that they would admit of. They besides closed their ears with a painful pertinacity against every proposal which was made tending to persuade them to pursue conciliatory measures, answering either that it did not please them, or that it was not a thing to be heard of.

It was moreover clearer and clearer every day that Geika's conduct towards them neither accorded so well as could be wished with the promises and assurances he had made to the Governor, or with what was required by justice and humanity. It was proved incontrovertibly that his people indulged themselves in acts of power and malignity towards their revolted countrymen which were wholly unjustifiable. From whatever cause these things might really originate, it became more and more urgent, that Buys, who, by the opposers of the King, was universally considered as the exciter of them, should quit his situation. He excused himself to Alberti, who sent requisitions to him upon the subject, on the ground that he had not the waggons necessary for the transport of his effects, and that he should run a great hazard in travelling through the country occupied by the King's enemies. In order to obviate this pretence for further delay, an escort was sent to him from Graaff-Reynett, and under its protection he returned into the colony about the beginning of November. He brought back also two Europeans, who had lived in the closest intimacy with him in the Caffre country, one a German, by name Faber, the other John Madder, an English deserter.

The latter informed Captain Alberti, that seven Christians, who, besides themselves, had been living in the Caffre country, intended to travel northwards, and if possible reach Da Lagoa bay. This party consisted of four colonists, who had for a long time not enjoyed a very high reputation, that is two brothers by name Bezuidenhout, and two other brothers named Lochenhout. The remainder of the party were Thomas Bentley, Cores Bork, and Harry
Obry, three English deserters. Their plan, which they had imparted to Madder, wanting to persuade him to join the party, was first to procure powder and shot, and some other necessaries, from the Cape Town, and then set off on their journey. The project was never entirely completed, since Alberti, in consequence of this information, watched them too narrowly. They set out therefore without being properly equipped, and instead of going directly northwards, followed the boundaries of the colony: they were in the sequel heard of about the Orange-river, where, in the Sixth Part of this work, there will be occasion again to mention them.

Although Buys assured us that Geika was very much disposed to peace, and thought earnestly of reconciling himself, if possible, with his revolted subjects, excepting only Sambeh, no advances had hitherto been made towards it. Two women from Geika’s kraal had visited some of their relations who were with Jaluhsa; they were on that account considered as a sort of precursors of messengers to propose peace, yet no symptoms of the visit leading to such consequences appeared. The good understanding between the colonists and the Caffre Chiefs however continued, although among the dependents of the latter there were still instances of individual robbery; whenever such occurred, whether from fear, or from a spirit of revenge, a great outcry was raised, and every means possible employed to discover the plunderer.

Among other instances of this kind, fourteen young oxen were stolen from a colonist by name Prinsloo. One of his Hottentots, a most excellent hunter and herdsman, followed their traces, and tracked them straight to Sambeh’s kraal, where he found them. The man had the good sense immediately to apply to the Chief himself to reclaim his master’s property. A search for the oxen was instituted; the perpetrator of the theft was detected, and was instantly put to death by Sambeh himself with his own hand. The animals were restored, all but two, which had been already killed, and instead of these the Chief gave two young oxen of his own, sending a third as a present to the field-cornet of the district. The latter sent all the three back, which Sambeh took very much amiss, and declared that if they were not accepted he should doubt very much the sincerity of the wishes for peace which had been so often professed. Notwithstanding this, he denied the whole transaction, when some time after Alberti had a conference with him: he was
afraid that the Governor might reproach him with his people committing such crimes, and conceive a contemptible opinion of his authority that he could not keep them better under control.

Nor were the rest of the Caffre Chiefs less eager to prove how sincerely they wished to live on terms of friendship and good understanding with the Christians. Many cows and oxen that were stolen by the people were by them sent back to the rightful owners, after the robbers had been severely punished; their return was, besides, commonly accompanied with some presents, and an earnest request that no complaints upon the subject should be made to the Governor. Once, when Alberti encamped for the night near Jaluhsa’s kraal, the Chief recommended to him to have his oxen tied up for the night, and well guarded, for there was no security that some of the vagrant Caffres might not be roving about in the night, and steal the cattle, if they found them straying; and then, the Chief observed, the robbery would be imputed to his people. Another time Sambeh punished a herdsman in Alberti’s presence, giving him many severe blows, because he had left the herd; and he said, if in consequence any of the animals had strayed away, ill-intentioned people might have said that they had been taken by the Christians, and it would grieve him exceedingly that they should get an ill name, since he was well convinced that they had no desire to break the peace.

Towards the end of November, Alberti, already informed of the Commissary-general’s intended journey, had again interviews with each of the Caffre Chiefs. He found them in much the same disposition, pertinaciously refusing to return and submit to Geika, because he had neither sent ambassadors to them, nor discarded Buys from his counsels; for they had not yet learned the arrival of the latter in the colony. The captain, however, found it advisable now to insist more urgently upon their endeavouring to reconcile themselves with the king, since they prevented the return of the rightful owners of the country to their respective properties, and even threatened them with being at last driven away, if they would not go peaceably. He warned them that a person no less high in authority than the Governor was on his journey into the country, who would see that the conditions of peace were in every respect properly fulfilled.

For the rest, all the Caffre children who had been found in the colony were delivered up, and this greatly strengthened their confidence in the sincerity
of the peace. It seemed indeed now so firmly assured, that the people ventured to rove about in small parties, visiting the colonists at their habitations, to their great annoyance. Parties of this kind, as has been mentioned, were met by us in our journey from the Kromme-river to Algoa bay, almost at every farm where we stopped; and my readers will recollect how very far these guests were from being welcome. Captain Alberti was not wanting in admonitions to them to remain quiet at their proper dwellings; he even warned them that he could not be answerable for the consequences, if they would persist in roving about; but nothing could restrain them: they said that they were so happy among the Christians, and that there was no better country for hunting after their manner than that about the Chamtoo-river. When they were asked whether it was their intention to renew the war, they answered that peace had been made, that the Governor himself had signed the agreement, and that they knew very well they had nothing to fear.
Continuation of our Journey.—Departure from Algoa bay.—Zwartkop's-river.—Remarkable Salt-lake.—The Koega-river.—The Order established in pitching our Camp.—Zondag’s-river.—Visits from a great Number of Caffres.—Large Flocks of Antelopes and Quaggas.—The Springbok.—The Bosjesmans’-river.—The Arrival of the Caffre Chiefs expected in vain.—Hofmansgat.—Deformity of the Mimosas.—Nieuwejaarsdrift.—The Little Fish-river.

Such was the situation of affairs between the Dutch government and the Caffres, when the Commissary-general arrived at Algoa bay. After he had been thoroughly instructed by Captain Alberti upon the subject, he judged that it would be highly expedient for him to obtain personal interviews with the rebel Chiefs who were within the colony, as well as with King Geika, that the quarrels among these savages, by which the colonists were such severe sufferers, might be accommodated as soon as possible.

Messengers then having been sent to the Chiefs, as was related in the latter end of the second part of this work, we ourselves departed from Algoa bay on the thirteenth of January: we were accompanied the whole way by Captain Alberti, at the head of a detachment of fifteen Waldeck Jägers. We pursued our way first along the shore of the bay, and soon passed the Little Zwartkop’s-river, which was entirely dry. Farther on we came to the house of the widow Van Royen, whose husband was killed in the Caffre war, in an attack which they made upon him by night, while he was resting quietly in his house. The ruins of the buildings which had been burned spoke it to have been in its prosperity a very large farm; the mill only was left standing, and served now as a dwelling-house. Though the family had been returned but a few months, the great orchard was already in perfectly good order. We were entertained with delicious grapes and melons. This spot is particularly favourable for breeding cattle, and, before the disturbances, furnished food for a thousand head of cattle and three thousand sheep; and yet from so large a stock but small profit was derived. The dealers in cattle would seldom come so far as to this remote spot to make their purchases, or would give no
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

more than from six to eight dollars for a fat ox, and half a dollar for a sheep. The inhabitants could not consume any thing like what they could produce, and the rather because the stock is never diminished here by the murrain. On account of this superfluity of the means of supporting life, and want of a market for the products, the country about the Zwartkop's-river truly deserved the attention of the government, and it was wisely allotted as the seat of the Droeny and village which are to form the centre point of the new district of Uitenhage. The proposal, that instead of extensive farms, it should be divided into small parcels of land, or erbes, appears in every respect a desirable one to be adopted, and will contribute very much to increasing both the population and civilization of the country.

At this house we found a number of people assembled, hoping, under the protection of the Commissary-general, to return to their old habitations upon the Caffre borders. Some of them joined our party, which gave us quite the appearance of a caravan: we occupied a length of several thousand paces. Among these new companions was the Field-commandant Rensburg, who had provided with the utmost care and attention for supplying the wants of such a number of men, and for our being furnished with the necessary relays of cattle.

The Great Zwartkop's-river runs very near the widow Royen's farm: in heavy rains this stream is very dangerous, but the water was now scarcely a foot deep. Soon after having passed it, we quitted the great cattle road, and took a sort of track to the left through a little wood of mimosas in full blow. In a little hour we were surprised with the sight of the celebrated salt-pan, the largest which has hitherto been found in Southern Africa. It is a long oval lake, which may be travelled round in about an hour. The water is perfectly clear, but so strongly impregnated with the common salt used for cookery, that a drop falling upon the clothes, as it dries away, leaves behind a very distinct crystallization. In heavy rains the salt is amalgamated entirely with the water; but in the summer, when the water evaporates, the surface, particularly at the sides, is covered with a thick rind of snow-white crystals, which gives the whole bason the appearance of being frozen, and the ice scattered over with a thin layer of snow.

As the water evaporates still farther, the little crystal needles are loosened, and carried about in flakes by the wind, forming monticules of salt.
upon the bank. The colonists for a great way round supply themselves with their salt from this lake; it is the purest in the whole colony, and is sent occasionally by sea to the Cape Town. The name of salt-pan is very appropriate, since the sun and the wind do here what in salt-works is done by art in flat copper pans over the fire. The rind was in some places so thick, that it would bear a man without breaking, and some little rocks by the side of it were crusted over several inches thick with large crystals. The vegetation about was luxuriant, and the succulent plants were beautifully in bloom, which, contrasted with the wintry appearance of the lake, produced a very singular and enchanting effect. The _Portulacaria ofra_ was distinguished above all the rest, and seemed to be in its true home; it reaches here from twelve to fifteen feet in height, and was full of beautiful lilac-coloured flowers. We found also an incredible number of the beautiful large _Buprestis_, and other insects humming about the lovely blossoms. The whole surface of the lake was strewed over with dead insects, and we loosened many rare species of them from the salt, in which they were fast encrusted. I must wholly reject Mr. Barrow's first idea upon the origin of these salt-lakes, but am disposed to assent to the opinion which he seems at last inclined to adopt. How little the evaporations of the sea can contribute to the engendering of the salts in these places scarcely deserves to be dwelt upon. Similar salt-lakes are to be found in the south-western parts of Asia; and, according to Pallas, even near Asoph.

After having eaten a very slender dinner under a tent upon the banks of this lake, we proceeded on our journey, and towards evening reached the Koega-river, where our people had already prepared us a camp upon a small plain on the river side. It was here, and in the sequel the same rule was always followed, composed of six tents arranged in a line, the largest of which served as a general place of assembly for the whole party, the others were sleeping apartments. At a little distance were the tents for the jägers, placed in front as guard houses, and on the sides were stationed the colonists, who usually slept in the waggons, though some of them had also tents. Behind the front was the kitchen, with the tents for the steward and servants, and behind them those for the dragoons. All the waggons, the number of which now amounted to fourteen, though they were afterwards, from new supplies of forage, or from the colonist families who joined us, increased to twenty, were
drawn together in a row, and between each were fastened the cribs for the horses. The oxen were always tied at night by the horns to the shafts or wheels of the wagons. Even if there had been no danger of wild beasts, or of wild Caffres, this precaution would have been necessary, since these animals have a great propensity, if they are left loose at night, to straying away towards their homes. A portion of the Hottentots and slaves alternately were always stationed as guards to the cattle, while the rest slept in the wagons. The dragoons and jägers in rotation also mounted a general guard at night.

In this way our camp resembled a little wandering village, in which every one soon knew his place with the utmost exactness, and easily learned the business, which, as a citizen of the little state, was allotted him for the good of the whole. As the country in which from this time we generally encamped was very much the same, a small plain near the bed of a river, and under the shade of mimosas, being selected for the purpose wherever it was possible; and as we always sent our wagons forwards that every thing might be in order against our arrival, so it often appeared as if we had only been out for the day, and returned to our home again at night. Our people were so accustomed to pitching and striking the tents, that we found them in the evening just as we had quitted them in the morning.

We were indeed become perfect nomades, sharing the lot of most of the inhabitants of Southern Africa, whom nature disposes, or compels, to stated changes of habitation. The colonists are driven by the snow from the mountains down to the Karroo; the Caffre hordes forsake their vallies when food for their cattle begins to fail, and seek others where grass is more abundant; the Bosjesman is fixed to no single spot of his barren soil, but every night reposes his weary head in a different place from the former; the numerous flocks of light-footed deer, the clouds of locusts, the immeasurable trains of wandering caterpillars, these, all instructed by nature, press forward from spot to spot, searching the necessary means by which that nature is to be supported.

A great number of Caffres from a neighbouring kraal thronged about our camp this day, and wearied us not a little with their importunities for tobacco, brandy, and beads. Among the colonists who followed us were some sick, who came in the full expectation that the physician to the Commissary-
general could not fail to cure them. As I was busied in preparing medicines for them, I was surrounded by a whole troop of Caffles, who had almost plundered my medicine chest before I was aware of them: the little phials, the scales, and the various weights, appeared to them invaluable treasures. It was not without much difficulty, and with a good deal of scolding and threatening, that I could at last get rid of the women. They inquired about every thing, they wanted to taste every thing, and when they liked the taste, were importunate to have the whole as a present. They were got rid of at last by having recourse to our chest of frippery; and in exchange for the treasures it contained, we procured several curiosities from them, as bracelets, bracelets, hassagais, and kirris. Late in the evening a woman brought a basket of fresh milk as a present, and many of them, both men and women, stayed all night in the camp.

The Koega, on which we were now encamped, is a very insignificant little river, in which there was scarcely sufficient water for our cattle to drink. To procure water for ourselves, we were obliged to dig, and did not then obtain very good. Here we took leave of the excellent Field-cornet Müller, who in the last week had been unwearying in making preparations, and fitting us out in such a way as to render our journey in the Caffre country as little inconvenient as possible. As this country is very thinly peopled, and many things absolutely necessary to travellers in it must be procured from a great distance, a vast deal of attention and foresight was necessary to think of every thing that would be wanted. It would be difficult to say too much of the Field-cornet’s attention, or to express our thanks to him too warmly.

From the Koega we travelled eastwards, over a high plain, here and there overgrown with bushes, and which produced grass and hedge plants in abundance: owing to the rains which had lately fallen, it looked now extremely pleasant. To the left were two high mountains, one of which was called the Winterberg, the other the Elandsberg. About noon we arrived at the Zoudag’s-river, which, on account of the rains, was swollen to an unusual height for the time of year. Although the water was three feet deep, and the ford was filled with loose stones, we all passed happily through, and rested on the other side under the shade of the blooming mimosas. While we here took a little repast, and saw our waggons pass the river, not without some apprehensions upon their account, a number of Caffles again assembled round us.
On the other side of the river also appeared a whole society, and all the men with very little hesitation waded through the water to us; but the women were too modest to come over in sight of our people. They went some way up the river to a place which was indeed deeper, but where they could cross without being seen. Among these latter were several young girls, apparently from fourteen to eighteen years of age; some of them were really handsome. Their pleasing appearance, and the cheerful demeanour of the whole party, made the intercourse, on this occasion, more lively and animated than any we had yet had with the Caffres. Our interpreter had great difficulty in following the conversation with the same spirit and animation that it was carried on. The girls seemed to assume confidence at every moment, and amused us exceedingly with their vivacity and naïveté, in which nothing was more striking than that, notwithstanding their almost unrestrained mirth, they never transgressed the bounds of the strictest decorum. They particularly admired our ladies, and were never weary with examining, and expressing their astonishment at, their fair complexions and fine long hair.

In the evening we found our camp ready prepared at about an hour's distance, still upon the bank of the river, which, having taken a remarkable bend, was here running almost due east. We had again a number of Caffre visitors at the camp, followers of Jalulsa, and not more scrupulous of begging than our guests of the day before. They were more than a hundred, who all wanted to barter their ornaments and other trifles for tobacco, pieces of copper, and buttons. We could get any thing of theirs in exchange for these articles, but the buttons in particular served as a sort of money by which the price of every thing was regulated. A cow was valued at thirty coat buttons.

Our farther route was very pleasant, over a broad gently sloping hill, overspread from top to bottom with a number of shrubs and trees beautifully in blow, particularly mimosas. The road had been cut through these shrubs, but was again half overgrown. Our guide assured us that before the invasion of the Caffres this place swarmed with elephants, rhinoceroses, and buffalos; traces of these animals were indeed still every where to be discovered. We stopped about half way in our day's journey to take some refreshment, and soon after, as we proceeded onwards, found the Hottentot who had been sent
as envoy to the Caffre Chief's sleeping in the field. He had fastened his necklace to a stick, and stuck up this ensign in a bush near him, as a token that he was there, lest, otherwise, we might pass him unobserved. He informed us that the Caffre Chief's were out upon a hunting party, but that messengers had been sent after them, to desire them to come the next day to the Bosjesmans'-river.

On a plain which we now crossed, called the Quaggas'-plain, we saw a great number of these animals, in divisions of from eighty to a hundred head each. They were very shy, and fled in the utmost haste at our approach. There were also an immense number of Springboks, or mountain Antelopes (antelope pygargus), who in like manner would not suffer us to come very near them. The sight of a number of Springboks flying from any object is, even to a man who is not a hunter, highly interesting; they run for some time extremely quick, and then, if a bush or piece of rock comes in their way, spring to the height of four or five feet above the earth, clearing at one leap ten or twelve feet of ground; they then stand still a few minutes till the rest are passed, after which they all set off again, running with astonishing fleetness. The beautiful form of this animal, its pretty marks, and the incredible lightness and grace of its motions, render this sight extremely pleasing.

The Springbok is of a snowy whiteness, only from the shoulders to the haunch on each side of the back runs a chesnut coloured stripe, and from these towards the belly are others more of the Isabella colour; on the shank, the ears, and the cheeks, are similar chesnut-brown stripes. The back is covered with long white hair, which generally lies flat, but stands up when the animal raises its back to take a leap. The horns are somewhat ringed, and at the points bend towards each other, in the manner of a lyre. A full grown Springbok weighs from sixty to eighty pounds. The flesh is extremely delicious, tenderer and whiter than that of any other antelope. Our Jägers had shot six of these animals, three of which were given to the Caffres; the rest were a very acceptable supply to our own table, as in making provision for our journey we had calculated upon the game to be killed in our route for a part of our kitchen stores. In the evening our camp was pitched about two hundred paces from the Bosjesmans'-river: a short time before we arrived at it, we descended the hill upon which, four years before, General Vande-leur had been enclosed by the Caffres, when Rensburg came to his assistance.
and released him. The country is here tolerably level; high mountains are only seen quite in the distance.

As it had been agreed that we should wait in this spot for the arrival of the Caffre Chiefs, another messenger was dispatched to inform them that the Commissary-general would remain here two days, in hopes of seeing them, but must then positively proceed on his journey. Our camp was constantly visited, during our stay, by the Caffres who were roving about: they were always begging for something, or brought their cloaths, weapons, and baskets, to barter. We also saw here a whole kraal pass, who were removing to another dwelling-place. A vast number of cattle led the van, then followed the pack-oxen loaded with the household goods, and the mats which serve them for beds. On the top of these were here and there little children tied fast, who sat very quiet, and suffered themselves patiently to be shook about among the mats and baskets. The larger children, and the grown people, carried upon their heads either some of their household furniture, or baskets full of milk. All the men, even those whose business it was to take care of the cattle, stopped half the day with us, but the women, how much soever they wished to stay, were ordered by them authoritatively to go on with the cattle, and did not dare to disobey.

The heat was on this day almost insupportable; and such an incredible number of flies swarmed about our tents, that towards evening, when they began to settle, the linen was quite black with them. A number of other sorts of insects, some very beautiful indeed, which we found in this country, was a much more agreeable circumstance to us. We particularly found a very large sort of scarabæus, the Copris Hamadryas, the chirping of which at night was a noise at first wholly enigmatical to us; nor could we imagine whence it proceeded, till in the morning we found a vast number of these animals under the ox-dung, where they had dug to two or three feet deep into the sand, and in these holes stored up magazines apparently for the first nourishment of the young larvæ.

Our hunters, and lovers of hunting, were very active in scouring the neighbouring country, and seldom returned without a rich booty: one portion was devoted to the use of our kitchen, another was reserved to add to our collection of skulls, skins, and other distinguishing parts of the animals hereabouts.
The sixteenth of January was the hundredth day of our journey, and on a calculation it appeared that we had travelled five hundred hours. Of these hundred days, however, we had rested forty, so that upon an average, on the days when we were in motion, we had travelled eight hours and a half, and might be supposed to have gone over five miles and a half of ground.

In the night of the seventeenth of January, the messenger who had been sent to the Caffre Chiefs returned with as evasive an answer as the former. They were still absent on their hunting party, but they had been sent for; they might not, however, return for some days. The messenger declared that he had good reason to believe this a mere pretence to evade the interview; that the Chiefs were really at home, but were afraid to come, apprehending that they should be again required to quit the country, and should be menaced with being compelled to it by force, if they would not go peaceably. Perhaps the positive declaration to this effect, recently made by Captain Alberti, and the arrival of a person so high in office as the Commissary-general, with a numerous train, almost immediately after, contributed very much to increase this fear; there appeared, therefore, not much reason to hope that they would be induced to hazard a personal interview. It seemed also probable that it was only by late events they had been fully convinced that the government did not contemplate their stay in the colony with indifference, and had seriously determined to insist upon the former relations being re-established; and though far from wishing that this should be done at the expense of dissolving the good-understanding so lately restored, were yet determined not to be trifled with, but that their purposes should by some means or other be effected.

As it was evident, however, that no good was to be expected by continuing here any longer, orders were given for breaking up the camp, and at eight in the morning of the eighteenth of January the whole caravan crossed the Bosjesmans'-river. Somewhat farther we came to the ruins of a very large farm, where almost at the same instant arrived eight waggons with fresh relays of oxen from Graaff-Reynett. On this, four waggons with the teams of oxen which had accompanied us from Algoa bay, were sent back. Many of the colonists who had been summoned for the purpose, had a journey of more than twenty miles to take with their waggons and oxen, and it proved alike the precision of the orders given by the Field-commandant Rensburg, and the
good-will and punctuality with which they had been observed, that notwithstanding the distance they had to come, there was not one who failed in being to the spot exactly at the appointed time.

Farther on, we came to the Hassagai-wood, an insignificant thicket, on the declivity of a small hill, scarcely deserving to have been marked on the map, if Mr. Barrow had not passed a night there. We hoped to have found a pretty considerable wood, that would have afforded us shade and water, but it failed in both. We were obliged, therefore, notwithstanding the burning noon-tide heat, to proceed to the next spring, where we proposed stopping for the night. This lay in a small narrow valley called Hofmanskot, where the water rose at the foot of a perpendicular rock, under the shade of a pleasing wood. I could not forbear remarking that the mimosas here grow in a very different kind of way from those in the interior of the colony, particularly in the Karroo; this arises apparently from the great difference in the soil. In the Karroo these trees have the form only of large shrubs, branches coming up from the very roots, which are fast enclosed in the earth; here they have stems eight or ten feet high before any branches are thrown out. Another thing remarkable in the mimosas we saw here was a diseased swelling very frequently to be found upon them. The thorns and young twigs were in many places six or eight times as large as their natural size, and entirely black. Instead of the pods, which commonly consist of two thin membranes, here and there were long cylindrical excrescences equally black, three times as long as the pods usually are, of a woody appearance, and entirely hollow. These anomalies on the mimosas are occasioned apparently by some kind of insects, and in that respect are similar to the gall-nuts. The gum which flows from these trees is in like manner often diseased, dark-coloured, opake, and smelling very disagreeable.

Our tents, fourteen in number, scattered about the little wood, and as the darkness came on, lighted within, with the fires burning between them, made at a little distance a most enchanting appearance; it was one, however, not easy to be described by words, and scarcely less difficult to be represented by the pencil. Hyænas and jackals interrupted us the whole night with an almost unceasing howl; our dogs barked at them, and the oxen and horses were so much frightened that it was not without very great difficulty the Hottentots could keep them from breaking loose.
The next morning, as we were about to depart, a Caffre came to us to search for two boys who had stolen to the camp, attracted by eager curiosity. After he had received from us some meat and bread, he took them away with him. The lads, however, escaped again, and in the evening came once more to our camp, because, as they said, they liked better being with the Christians than at home. As there was no means of sending them back, we kept them with us, expecting that the father would come for them a second time; it was not, however, till the third day that he did so: he had been seeking for his children all that time without having any thing to eat.

We passed to-day the Nieuwejaarsdrift and the Blackwater-river, and stopped for the night at a place called Dirkskraal. Some of our hunters brought home with them most excellent wild honey. This night the hyænas came absolutely into our camp, and scattered our sheep all about: most of them were retrieved in the morning: three only had become a prey to the marauders: a fourth we were obliged to drive on with his tail bitten and still bleeding.

We saw here fresh traces of rhinoceroses in abundance, and found on the road a tolerably perfect skull of one of these creatures. The country was here again arid and uniform; it is the same to which Sparrmann gives the now forgotten name of Quammedakka. We found through the whole day only one little wood of porticularias, cactuses, and guiacums; it afforded us but a trifling shade from the heat of the mid-day sun, yet it was the best spot we could find to stop and take our usual rest.

In the evening we arrived upon the bank of the little Fish-river, where our camp was pitched. This river is commonly dry in the summer, but was now tolerably full of water, in consequence of the heavy thunder-showers which had lately fallen in Agterbruintjeshoogte. Rensburg had here the melancholy intelligence, that at his farm there, the harvest, which was standing in sheaves in the field, and which he expected to yield him, at least, three hundred and fifty bushels of corn, had been entirely scattered by the bursting of one of these clouds. One of his neighbours, by name Van Aart, had three thousand three hundred sheep drowned at the same time; and in another house a child in a cradle was floated away by the torrent, while the elder children with difficulty saved themselves by climbing up to the rafters of the house. All these catastrophes happened on the same day that we had the terrible storm
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

which I have mentioned above, when we were in the neighbourhood of the Kabeljau-river.

The chase to-day produced us a great many springboks, also a steinbok, or wild goat (*capra ibex*) and some Pintado hens (*numida melagris*); the latter abound near the rivers in these parts. Their flesh is very tough, dry, and tasteless, unless when they are extremely young. A tolerably brisk wind which rose towards evening abated in some degree the excessive heat, but it had this disagreeable effect, that the soil here being all schistus, the poles of the tents could not be driven in very fast, and we were somewhat apprehensive of their tumbling about our heads.

To our left we had now the mountains of Agtebruinjtjeshoogte, and before us the Caffre country. A wide plain, which we were to cross, separated us from both. The springboks swarmed here, and the hunting of these lovely creatures shortened the otherwise very wearisome way. We surrounded large flocks of them, and were delighted with seeing them very near, running and leaping away from us. Only two were killed, since we had not at the time occasion for more. A good hunter who understands how to lay in ambush for the flock, at a convenient place, seldom kills less than six or eight at a shot, so closely do they keep together, and so powerful is the calibre of the guns used here. As a huntsman in these parts must be equally armed against an elephant or a rhinoceros as against smaller game, he seldom shoots with balls of less than two ounces. A true elephant gun (an olifantsroer as it is here called) carries balls of only five or six to the pound, and which are made a third part of tin.

The springbok generally keeps on large open plains, and from an instinctive fear, never runs into a wood to seek shelter from his quadruped pursuers. This circumstance is occasionally made use of in hunting, for the hunters drive the flock towards a wood, where they seldom find it difficult to take some of the young ones alive. All attempts, however, to tame them have been hitherto unsuccessful, and they commonly die in confinement. I have seen some half-tamed young springboks here and there among the flocks of the colonists, but there is no security that they will remain; that they may not as they increase in age and strength seek the more perfect freedom which their species seems so much to prize.
Arrival at the Modderfontein in Agtebruintjeshoogte.—Journey along the Bank of the Great Fish-river to meet King Geika.—Camp at Hermannuskraal.—The King does not arrive.—Conference with his Ambassadors.—Return to the Modderfontein.—Reconciliation between Geika and some of the Rebel Chiefs.

Early in the morning we arrived at the Modderfontein, which is the most southern place in the circle of Agtebruintjeshoogte. The proprietor of the place had not yet ventured to return, and it was now inhabited by a certain widow Bauer, who had been driven from her own habitation by the Caffres: she entertained us as well as her state of poverty would permit. We found fresh milk and butter, and some sorts of pulse, which to travellers who had been a whole week with nothing to live upon but meat and biscuit afforded a delicious regale.

In the evening the ambassadors sent to King Geika returned; they had seen him on the seventeenth at his then habitation at the Buffalos'-river. Geika immediately recollected one of them who had accompanied the Governor, and held out his hand to him in the most friendly manner, inquiring at the same time into the occasion of their visit. When they informed him of their errand, and that they came on the part of the Commissary-general to invite him to an interview at the Great Fish-river, he answered that it would afford him the sincerest pleasure to meet him; but he must intreat that the Christians would come some days' journey farther into the country, since he was afraid to remove to any distance from his own habitation. He was besides busied in preparing for an attack upon his rebel subjects, which he was resolved to make with his whole power, in hopes of reducing them to obedience by force. This disloyal body, he said, continued to plunder, and endeavour to seduce his subjects away from him; they were still roving about the Christians' country, although the Governor had only allowed them three months, in which they were engaged to return. Instead of fulfilling this engagement, six months were now elapsed without any hope being afforded of the calamities attendant upon such a state of things being likely to come to an end, and if it should
continue much longer, there was some danger of his being at length forsaken by all his people, and completely impoverished. He, therefore, only waited the arrival of a body of men from the Tambuckis, to make the attack, and, as he hoped, put an end to troubles which had been but too long endured. He would pursue the rebels to the utmost extremity, nor ever relax till they either submitted or were wholly extirpated.

His route, he said, would lead him to a place three days journey from his own habitation towards the Great Fish-river, called by the Christians Hermannus kraal; he would be there in three days, and would wait three more for the arrival of the Commissary-general. Messengers should be sent to announce his arrival, and he would leave people there who could come after him and recall him, if we should happen not to arrive till after he was gone. He begged that we would, in like manner, wait for him, in case we should arrive first at the appointed place. He acknowledged the Commissary-general as regent of the colony, for his friend and father, and said he would be at all times ready to assist him with his whole power; even to come to the Cape Town, if it was required of him. He would put himself at the head of all his warriors to assist him against his enemies the English, and he, therefore, wished and hoped that the Dutch would, in like manner, assist him against his rebel subjects.

He entertained the ambassadors very hospitably, accompanied them himself a part of the way on their return, recommending to them again earnestly, at parting, to deliver his answer faithfully to the Commissary-general. On their way back they had overtaken a part of the army, consisting of about two hundred men, and learnt from them that three other similar parties were already on their way towards the Fish-river, where they were all to be united; and farther, that Geika had even imparted to them the place where he intended that the battle should be fought, which was to be at some hours distance from Hermannus kraal, southwards towards the sea.

Whatever objections might appear against undertaking the proposed journey, and that there were many could not be denied, yet they were overbalanced by the arguments in its favour. The Commissary-general wished very much to gain the friendship of Geika, and to fix his confidence in the Dutch government, nor could he abandon the hope of being able to effect an amicable accommodation between the contending parties. The removal of Buys, whose
The abode with the King was one of the great alleged objects of discontent on the part of the rebels; he hoped, might render them more inclined to submission; and he thought that the Christians, appearing as mediators, might have a powerful influence upon the minds of all the Caffres. In any case, it was necessary to employ his whole authority to make the boundaries of the colony respected, and not to permit the contests of savages to be carried on within its territory. The presence of the Commissary-general in the neighbourhood of the theatre of war, with a considerable number of armed men, might, if things must come to extremities, influence the event, and procure to the conquered party a peaceable subjection. It was, besides, his duty, as regent, to animate the courage and confidence of the colonists, by not withdrawing, at so critical a moment, from farther negociations, and so run the hazard of their being reduced anew to fly their habitations and their country.

The necessary orders for the journey were, therefore, immediately given. Between thirty and forty armed colonists were added to the escort, and fresh horses were procured for some of the party, with some oxen for slaughter. A quantity of bread for ourselves, and forage for our cattle, was provided; and four waggon was packed with these, with our tents, and with other things indispensably necessary to us. The remainder of our packages were left behind, as well as our ladies; the former, because the Commissary-general wished that we should be as little encumbered as possible upon the journey, and the latter, because he could by no means think of their running the possible risk of being upon the spot in a contest such as we might be compelled to witness. They, therefore, remained under Rensburg’s protection, and removed to one of the best farms in the circle of Agtebruinjeshoogte.

We pursued our course, at first, over the plain which we had crossed two days before, then turned to the left towards the bank of the Little Fish-river, and encamped at night opposite a place where it may be forded. The bed of this little stream is richly grown over with trees of various sorts, among which were to be particularly distinguished the African willow, and a rare species of mimosa, with perfectly white flowers. The leaves of the latter seemed to have a higher degree of sensibility than is shewn even by the rest of its species; we found them in the morning entirely folded together, and it was
only as the warmth of the day increased that they gradually unfolded themselves again.

With this river constantly on our left, we continued travelling the next day in a southerly direction. The heat was excessive, and a scorching south-wind, a true sirocco, blew directly in our faces. Some of the party felt the effect of it so sensibly, that they were obliged to tie handkerchiefs over their mouths.* Notwithstanding this inconvenience, we continued our route for ten hours, and encamped at night upon the bank of the Great Fish-river, about half a mile below the spot where the Little Fish-river branches off. We had the heights of the fertile Zuure-Velden the whole day to our right, but the plain over which we travelled was very dry and barren, so that we were obliged to send our draught-oxen over the river, into the Caffre territories, that night, that they might get tolerable feed.

Close by the place where we were encamped, were the ruins of a very large farm, which had formerly belonged to a colonist by name Dupré. Among the rubbish we found a great many scorpions and a species of large poisonous spider, and made a rich booty of both for our collection. In the evening of this day, I had the misfortune to break down my field-bedstead, so that I was obliged at night to have my bed upon the ground. I perceived, afterwards, that this accident had put me into no small danger, for, in the morning, I found under my coverlid a number of these dangerous insects, probably some which we had chased the evening before from their hiding places, and who here sought a refuge, attracted by the warmth. An accidental involuntary movement had nearly occasioned my being stung by one of the scorpions. According to the universal testimony, the consequence is sometimes loss of life; and even, if in the end the accident is recovered, the progress of the recovery is very slow, and the suffering great. The spiders, when their legs were stretched out, were most of them four inches, or more, in length.

Early in the morning a messenger was sent forwards to King Geika to inform him of our approach. We had not seen a Caffre since we quitted the Bosjesmans'-river, nor, indeed, any other human being. Here and there walls

---

* My thermometer had been unfortunately broke some days before, by an overturn of the waggon, but I afterwards experienced in the Cape-Town a degree of heat much more intolerable, when the thermometer was at 113°.
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

blacked with smoke, or houses lying entirely in ruins, announced the former habitations of men, and near the river were still standing some skeletons of Caffre huts. But in proportion as the country was depopulated of human beings, was it superabundantly inhabited by wild animals. We saw the following day, at a little distance, the largest flock of springboks that we had yet seen, and which at a moderate computation could not, I think, be estimated at less than two thousand head. There were besides no small number of red deer, wild goats, hartebeests, hares, quaggas, and ostriches. We met in one place a large troop of quaggas, which were chased by us, all together. I was mounted on a very spirited horse which I had bought at Zwellendam, and rode into the midst of the troop, nor did my horse cease to keep pace with them for a long time. No one has ever yet succeeded in taming these animals, so as to make them useful as draught cattle, notwithstanding all the endeavours that have been made. They are besides very malicious in their nature, and so given to bite, whenever they find an opportunity, that there would be some danger in using them. Little besides would be gained by taming them, since the trouble and expense would be equal to the purchase of a good horse. A great number of these animals, as well as of eatable game, were killed by the party; more than we could put to any use.

The heat was little less this day than the day before; the road was untracked and fatiguing by the side of the Great Fish-river, but the bank was so steep, and so thick set with trees, that it was impossible to get at the water to quench our thirst. At length, after eight hours riding in a burning sun, we came to a place where the bank was so low that the water became accessible: such was the eagerness of our party to get at it, that we absolutely laid ourselves down at the edge, and drank like the cattle. We then most of us undressed, and threw ourselves into the water, without any one suffering by an act, which on reflection did not appear very prudent; but the water had attained no inconsiderable degree of warmth. While the oxen and horses were refreshing themselves, we sought in vain a shady place where we could enjoy a few hours rest. But the foliage of the mimosas is too delicate to permit of their affording much shade, and the willows stood entirely upon the bank on such a steep declivity that there was no sitting down among them. Nothing then remained but to fasten our saddle-clothe
and cloaks to the branches of the mimosas, so as to form an awning, which shaded us tolerably well from the burning rays of the sun. The prospect of the broad and tolerably well-filled river, shaded by willows, which we could see to a considerable distance each way, from the high bank where we had placed ourselves, was the only sight which could make us forget for a moment the aridity and inhospitality of the country through which we were travelling.

In order to reach Hermannuskraal that day, we could only allow ourselves a short rest at this place, and still had eight hours more to travel. The latter part of the way by moonlight, before our task was accomplished. It was half past ten when we arrived there. Before it was dark we had come through a little mountain pass, which is here called the Israelitish-kloof. In this pass there are several graves of Hottentots heaped over with large stones. These the first colonists who inhabited this part of the country, in pious simplicity, determined to be monuments made by the children of Israel, who had journeyed through the country during their wanderings in the desert; and thence they gave the place the name which it bears.

It was evident here, from the more luxurious vegetation, that we were drawing nearer to the sea-coast. The country was grown over with bushes and succulent plants, between which were many footpaths winding about, and crossing in every direction, made by the wild animals in going to and from the river. The rhinoceros is very frequently to be seen in these parts, and is often hunted by the colonists of Camdeboo and Agtebruinjtjeshoogte. This animal is one of the most dangerous to travellers by night, since he rushes forwards impetuously with blind rage at every noise of which he is informed by his acute hearing, or at every object betrayed to him by his more acute smell. Examples have been known of these monsters running by night against a waggon, and overturning it, trampling down and destroying both that and all the oxen attached to it. As there were in many places fresh traces of them to be seen in our route this day, it was judged prudent in the evening to put the strongest of our young Africans in front, since, from being more experienced, they would be better able, if necessary, to encounter such a danger.

Our waggons did not arrive at their destination till some hours later than ourselves. But notwithstanding its being so late, we were all glad to get a
hot supper, having lived for two days upon nothing but ship biscuit and dried beef. We therefore took our dinner and supper together at two o'clock in the morning.

We now learnt that neither Geika nor any of the people belonging to him had been seen by our messengers, although they had gone on to a considerable distance towards his habitation, in hopes of meeting him. They were therefore immediately sent to his usual residence, which was a long day's journey on horseback from our then station, with a commission to inform him that the Commissary-general was exceedingly mortified by not finding him at the appointed place; that relying entirely upon his word, he had undertaken a journey of thirty hours, which at this time of the year, and at his age, was very fatiguing, and delayed him very much in fulfilling the other purposes of his expedition. He could not therefore wait longer than two days, and if the King was not arrived by that time, he must have the mortification of returning into the colony without having seen him.

On the very evening of our arrival we had the consoling prospect of a storm coming on, by which the air was very much cooled and refreshed. In the following days a reviving rain fell from time to time, which soon made a surprising alteration in the appearance of the country. As it is naturally fertile, our wearied oxen soon recovered their strength against the renewal of their labours. Our young people amused themselves with hunting very eagerly, and brought many a nice piece of flesh and many a beautiful skin home with them. The large game had been recently very much frightened away, since one of our companions, by name Philip Botha, had but a few weeks before held a great hunt here. He, with two friends, and some Hottentots, had coasted the Great Fish-river almost to its mouth, and had in twenty days that their journey lasted, between going and returning, killed five hippopotami, eight rhinoceroses, nine hartebeests, two wild boars, and five wild goats; smaller game and birds, and indeed springboks, they thought hardly worth shooting. The whole booty, in the fat of the hippopotami, in rhinoceros' leather, in skins, and flesh, was sufficient to fill three large waggons, and when carried home and divided, supplied the three families with food and clothing for several months; it was even expected that a pretty sum of money would be made of some objects which they proposed selling at their next journey to the Cape Town.
The insects and plants we collected here were most of them entirely new to us, nor did I find them again in any part of our travels. Among other things, we killed a very large snake, with a perfect lemon-coloured skin, regularly spotted with black; it measured about five feet in length. We were never more molested by birds of prey, particularly on the second day, when we had killed a young ox, some portion of which having been given to our Hottentots, they, according to their custom, had cut the flesh into small pieces, and hung it about upon the bushes to dry. A vast number of eagles and vultures collected about our camp, and took away piece after piece, if the people were not constantly there to watch them, and drive them away. These birds even accompanied us in our return quite to Agtebruintjeshoogte.

On Saturday morning our messengers arrived for the last time from Geika, bringing with them an ambassador from him who spoke broken Dutch. The King through him eagerly excused himself for not having come to meet the Commissary-general, but his auxiliaries from the Tambuckis were not arrived, nor were even his own followers all assembled. He earnestly wished that it might please the Grootbaas* of the Christians to proceed a little day’s journey farther into the country, of which, if notice was sent him, he would not fail immediately to come and meet him.

Our ambassador confirmed what was said by Geika’s, and added that the King was apparently exceedingly mortified and ashamed. He had, however, discovered that the aspect of things had changed within a few days, and that Jaluhsa was on his march to submit to his sovereign, and unite with him against Sambeh. Conga was not at first disposed to side with either party, but had rather gone upon a hunting match to keep clear of both; a messenger was however sent after him by Jaluhsa, earnestly to press his return, to which at length he yielded. Both of them had accordingly sent orders to all their adherents who were dispersed about the colony to follow them over the Great Fish-river. We had before had intelligence of a misunderstanding among the rebels, and probably this was the reason why the interview which had been desired by the Commissary-general with them had been evaded. We recollected besides the messenger from Conga, whom we had seen at the Rietfontein’s-river, and who brought orders to the Caffre hordes there to

* Great Master, for which see page 118.
return. It seemed therefore probable that intrigues for separating themselves from Sambebe were then going forwards, and that the making their intentions known was only deferred till the arrival of our Chief.

Geika’s ambassador assured us that his master, notwithstanding these things, had no intention of relaxing in his preparations. He did not yet know how to have perfect confidence in the Chiefs, and he was firmly resolved that all who did not submit to him freely should be compelled to submission by force. He hoped in this to be supported by the commander of the Christians, who was visiting his country, and did not doubt that he would either come still farther to meet him, or wait three or four days, beyond which the King felt assured that his coming would not be delayed. At the question how strong Geika’s party might be, the Hottentot interpreter held up the two fore-fingers of his right hand, then bent the first down at the second joint, and said that the whole finger was Geika’s force, and that the proportion of that of his enemies to it was only as the half finger.

How much soever the Commissary-general and the whole company wished to be personally acquainted with the interesting King of the Caffres, yet there were many reasons which influenced our Chief to decline either waiting longer, or going farther into the country. It was due to the views of the Dutch government not to suffer himself to be longer enticed forwards; indeed it seemed very clear that the courtesy hitherto shewn to the King had excited in him a confident hope that the Christians would take a part in the contest in his favour. A refusal of this support would probably not be very well relished by the King, and might make the interview disagreeable. By returning, all solicitations from him on the subject would be avoided, and with respect to the other party, who, on account of their situation, were always to be feared, every thing would be obviated which might give them cause of suspicion that there was any idea on the part of the Christians of breaking the peace. Besides, as the rebels seemed now willing to submit peaceably, it was better to leave things to be settled among themselves, especially as by our journey into the country both would be pretty well convinced that we could turn the balance in favour of either, whenever we had a mind. Another thing to be considered was, that we really were not provisioned for so long a stay. Our bread began to fail, and we had not more than two days forage for our horses remaining. Even if we could have resolved
ourselves to live for some days entirely upon animal food, and to suffer our cattle to run the hazard of being reduced to want, still it seemed by no means certain that the irresolution and hesitation of the Caffres might not require a farther and farther delay, which would place us in a very awkward predicament.

The Commissary-general, therefore, sent back the King's messenger, charged to say to him that to the Dutch nation, and to the government of the colony, nothing was so sacred as their promise; that he had himself punctually complied with all that had been desired of him, and it was not without concern that he found the King not adhering to his word. He had expected him to have shewn more respect for the Dutch nation, and for the Regent of the colony, a man double his own age. He should certainly at present return into his own domains, but he should not the less be always the sincere friend of all peaceable well-disposed Caffres. He was extremely concerned not to have seen and talked with Geika, and have given him the presents which he had intended for him. He expected the King would act mildly towards his conquered enemies, and would take all possible precautions to prevent the peace of the colony being disturbed.

The messenger seemed altogether astonished and embarrassed at being the bearer of such a message, and summoned all his little eloquence to his aid to exculpate his master to the Commissary-general, and to prevail upon him to delay his departure yet a few days: but as he saw that a beginning was already made in breaking up the camp, and that the resolution to depart was therefore irrevocable, he forbore to say anything more than that this answer would afflict the King beyond measure, and he should not know how to deliver it to him.

He was then hospitably regaled, and some provisions were given him for his journey back, after which he departed, having first seen the vanguard of our caravan set off. We, ourselves, commenced our journey immediately after him, and arrived at night at the spot on the side of the Great Fish-river, where, some days before, we had taken a short rest at noon. In our route we met a large rhinoceros, but frightened at the sight of our cavalcade, and at the cracking of our waggoners' long whips, he hastened away, and was in vain followed by some of our jägers. His back rose
above the bushes, and we could see him for a considerable time running with almost inconceivable swiftness. It is scarcely possible to overtake one of these animals when he flies, or even to pursue him, for he treads down all the shrubs and bushes that oppose him with the utmost facility, while they are sufficient entirely to stop a man and horse. He is, therefore, seldom pursued in the open field, but the hunter steals into a thicket, where he lurks against the wind, and seeks out the animal, who sees as ill, as he hears and smells well, and gets so near that a shot may be reasonably expected to hit him. The distance at which the aim is taken is about thirty paces, and the part aimed at is the eye, the only one where the skin and the bones are thin enough for the ball to force its way through to the brain.

If the aim is missed, the animal commonly rushes raging forwards, searching for the offender, and if he sees or smells him, he bends his head to the ground, closes his eyes, and pushes on with his horn upon the ground. It is then easy to escape from him, by stepping nimbly aside, and sliding by the animal, who still pushes with rage onwards; but attention must always be had to keep on the side against the wind, so that the animal may not catch the scent. I have seen rhinoceros hunters who have assured me that they have contended in this way with one of the monsters for four hours together, till his rage was at last quite spent, and he was easily killed. The most common manner of hunting these creatures, and all large animals from whom resistance is to be apprehended, is to watch them on a moonlight night to the places where they go down to the rivers to drink, and there lurk among rocks or bushes, where they must come so near that the shot cannot miss.

We followed entirely the same route in our return as that by which we had gone, and on the thirtieth of January arrived late in the evening at the Modderfontein, after having gone through a very fatiguing journey of sixty-eight hours. In the latter part of our way, however, we had the pleasure of witnessing some farther good effects arising from the train of negotiation which had been so long carrying on, and this, combined with what we previously knew, gave good reason to hope that the end proposed would at length be completely obtained. As we encamped, for the last night, not far from the Zuure Velden, we remarked, on the heights around, abundance of fires, such as are customary to be made by night among the Caffres when
They are on their wandering parties, and the next morning we saw numerous herds of cattle, with some hundreds of men descending into the plain below. As we met with them, and questioned them, they told us that they had been followers of Sambeh, but had now separated themselves from him, and were on their way towards Geika's dominions. They were tired of the unceasing warfare in which they had been so long involved, and sincerely desired to submit to their lawful King, especially as they knew that the Grootbaas of the Christians was with him at that moment, and had promised him his support. They would willingly have crossed the Fish-river immediately, and not remained any longer in the colony, but that they had here and there cattle dispersed, which they must first collect together, and then all they wished was to stay till they knew that Geika and Sambeh were entirely reconciled. They were, however, informed that this could not be permitted, and if they did not leave the colony immediately, their cattle would be all taken from them, and not restored till they had crossed the river. They did not seem discomposed with these menaces, but said, that as peace was made they were sure they should not be driven away. That the colonists should think their remaining in the country was a reason for renewing the war with them was a thing which they could not by any means comprehend; the Christians were their friends, they repeated continually, and they wished to remain quietly among them, till their own land was restored entirely to peace.

It seemed, however, in any case, that much had been gained by the minds of the revolted people being far more disposed to peace and submission; and the presence of the Commissary-general had undeniably, as it appeared, had a considerable influence in producing this good effect. In fact, very soon after, an entire reconciliation took place between Geika, Conga, and Jaluhsa; the preparations against Sambeh were, however, continued, and he remained, as before, within the boundaries of the colony. Some single hordes belonging to the other Chiefs still, also, continued to annoy the colonists of the borders. All the endeavours of Captain Alberti, by repeated menaces and exhortations, to induce them to quit the colony were in vain, and to drive them away by force seemed not advisable, even if there had been a disposable force sufficient for the purpose. The Dutch government was, therefore, obliged to content itself
with being upon a half friendly footing with them; to rest satisfied with seeing that they had sufficient respect for it not to make farther encroachments, and to consider their being suffered to remain in the colony, on any terms, as a particular favour. In this situation did our relation with the Caffres remain, till the time when the colony was again taken by the English. As to any thing farther relating to the subject we are yet to be informed.
CHAP. XXV. 

Bruintjeshoogte.—Uniformity and Poverty of the Lives led by the Colonists there.—
Camdeboo.—The African Horses, and the Manner of refreshing them upon a Journey.
—The Melk-river.—The Sandau Mountain.—Arrival at Graaff-Reynett.

On the thirty-first of January we rejoined our ladies at the farm of Berend Greiling, and here we ourselves rested for a day, previous to our departure for Graaff-Reynett. We were now in the midst of the district of Agtebruintjeshoogte. To the east this district is bounded by a considerable mountain overgrown with wood, which on that account is called the Bosberg. In the midst of this mountain a high ridge rises towards the west, which is properly the Bruintjes-hoogle, so named, because, at the time when this country was first colonized, a Hottentot Chief was established here, who called the new settlers in mockery Bruintjes, the proper meaning of which is Brownkies or little Browns. That part of the district which lies south of this hill is called the Agtebruintjeshoogte, while the farms lying on the other side, towards Graaff-Reynett, are called Voorbruintjeshoogte.

This whole country is exceedingly propitious to the feeding of cattle, although it has as arid an appearance as most other parts of the colony. Probably a number of wholesome and nourishing plants grow here, which are scarcely visible as the eye is transiently cast over the surface of the ground, yet which are easily found by the cattle. This part of African husbandry, I mean a knowledge of the native plants proper for the feed of animals, is exceedingly neglected; it may even be presumed that by more accurate researches into their properties, the origin of many diseases to which the cattle are subject, and which are now considered as wholly enigmatical, might be traced. It appears to me extremely probable that they may arise from the animals being suffered to feed on plants pernicious to them. At present the proprietors of the lands are satisfied with knowing that such a tract of land is unhealthy, and such another healthy, without investigating the cause of either quality. The inhabitants of Bruintjeshoogte qualify the neighbourhood of
the Boschberg as good, because a number of plentiful springs rise about the foot of the mountain, considering this as the only requisite to render any spot in Southern Africa fertile.

Before the invasion of the Caffres, this district, notwithstanding its distance from the Cape-Town, was one of the richest in the colony; and the abundance of cattle, sheep, and horses, bred in it was almost incredible. But in no part have the colonists suffered more severely; and four or five families are now to be seen living close to each other in miserable huts, because they have not yet the means of rebuilding their houses. At some single farms alone has any attempt been made to resume the culture of their lands, and of their gardens; and it was not without the utmost difficulty that we could procure a scanty supply of bread-corn, and of forage for our horses. Corn was, indeed, never a great object of cultivation among the farmers here, although the country is very propitious for the purpose, but a great obstacle has been presented in the difficulty of finding a market for it.

Mr. Barrow asserts that the inhabitants of this district first gave occasion to the war with the Caffres, and if the colonists were really the aggressors, the fault may very naturally be imputed to them, as they were the immediate neighbours of the savages. It is, indeed, very probable that if this district had been inhabited by men of cultivated minds and sound judgment, who had understood, according to Mr. Barrow’s sense of the words, how to manage the Caffres, the war might never have taken place. But he says, that these people were only descendants of uncouth adventurers, who, when any differences arose with the savages, had no other idea than of doing themselves justice by the law of force. The colonists here are, however, of no other descent than their fellow-countrymen spread all over the territory, nay, of most colonists in all parts of the world, for it is seldom the most polished part of the population of any country that seek their fortunes by establishing themselves in newly-founded colonies, and it may very well be made a question whether any persons under similar circumstances (among such at least as were likely to be found in them) would have acted otherwise.

But the English author misleads his readers very much when he represents the inhabitants of Bruintjeshoogte as a band of European adventurers,
of soldiers who had deserted, of discarded sailors, and the like. They are African colonists like the rest, many of them descendants from old established families at the Cape Town. Here and there it is very probable that some may be found who were servants or schoolmasters from Europe, and came hither as adventurers to seek their fortunes. Among the colonists of Africa, as all the world over, are some individuals of extremely light principles and character, but there also are many thoroughly upright, honest, worthy men, and those even among the most zealous opponents of the English government. But in the present stormy times, it has become the fashion to decide upon a person’s moral worth almost entirely according to his political principles; a traveller ought, however, to be so much of a cosmopolite as to divest himself of all national prejudices, before he thinks of giving his travels to the world, and not to condemn every one whose modes of thinking and acting do not entirely correspond with his own.

The place where we were now resting is one of the most considerable in the country, and, in comparison with many others, suffered very little from the Caffres. Eleven families were now collected here, five of whom were living entirely with the owner till their own places could be re-established; a part of the rest had come with us from Algoa bay; the others had only come upon a visit to the Commissary-general. The number of the latter kept continually increasing, since all the neighbouring colonists who had any complaints to urge against each other, and against their Hottentots, or any reclamations to make of cattle, which had been stolen by the Caffres, now thronged hither. I found my patient here again, she having in my absence consulted an old woman who practised in the country with much reputation. The latter, in hopes of receiving some presents of medicines to recruit her almost exhausted stock, now came and did me the honour of putting forth to me all her doctoral science. She seemed to value herself not a little upon her knowledge, and had a confidence in the infallibility of her art which is seldom to be found in those regularly bred to it. She had some very curious and amusing notions with respect to the causes of certain diseases, and no less extraordinary cures for them. For the rest, she had a very competent degree of skill in midwifery, and seemed well acquainted with the properties of many of the native plants.
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

Here we were again assailed with complaints of the Bosjesmans, of whom we had not now heard for a long time. They inhabit very much the solitary and mountainous country north-east of these parts, and annoy the district very much by killing and stealing their cattle, and often murdering their herdsmen. These crimes are the more grievous since they are frequently perpetrated through mere wantonness, not for the purpose of plunder. A short time before, one of the farmers who were now assembled here, when he went out in the morning, found near his house his whole herd, consisting of forty oxen, together with two hundred sheep, several dogs and horses, and some Hottentots who were employed to guard them, all murdered, not a single one having escaped.

On the second of February we proceeded on our journey, going northwards. We passed the Bruintjeshoogte about noon, and rested till the heat of the day was over, at a poor little spring on the other side. We crossed two small beds of rivers in the afternoon, the Vetkuil and Blyde, but there was not a drop of water in either. They flow sideward from the Boschberg, not the Sneeuweberg as Mr. Barrow says, and empty themselves into the Zondag's-river. In the evening we arrived at the farm of Charles Rasmus, upon the Vogel-river, near which our camp was pitched. Here again the Bosjesmans had been recently marauding, and taken away a considerable number of cattle from the colonists. They lurk by day about the clefts of the Boschberg, and in the evening their residence there was announced to us by fires on the declivity of the hill. It was a good mile from us, and the light of the fires appearing among the trees with which the hill is covered had an uncommonly beautiful appearance. We were assured that in the dry time of the year this spectacle was by no means uncommon, and occasioned sometimes a great deal of damage among the trees; yet this appeared rather the effect of carelessness and thoughtlessness among them than done from premeditated purposes of destruction.

When the perpetual dangers in which the solitary inhabitants of this district live are duly considered; when we reflect that they are continually in apprehension of the inroads of these most uncouth of all savages, of the Caffres, who swarm in the neighbourhood, and of bands of christian deserters and fugitive Hottentots who are roving about, it is scarcely to be
comprehended how they can have any pleasure in existence. In making an estimate besides of the portion of happiness dispensed to them, many other things are to be taken into the account. The frightful drought of the country, in which often not a drop of rain falls for three months together, where only here and there a little muddy spring, or a stagnated pool in the otherwise dried up bed of a river offers drink either for mankind or for the cattle; where, except the thinly scattered mimosas, whose delicate leaves scarcely afford any shade, not a bush is to be seen; where a continued contest is to be maintained with wild beasts as well as wild men;—these must all be taken into the estimate, and in order to have their due weight allowed them must have been seen. An eye witness alone can properly judge of the joyless state of existence to which these people seem doomed. He cannot, without a great degree of astonishment, contemplate the force of habit, and witness what privations men are capable of, to whom, from their earliest youth, everything beyond what will satisfy the mere wants of life has been totally unknown.

Yet it is much easier to comprehend how the present generation can be satisfied here, than how the first settlers could ever think of establishing themselves in so inhospitable a waste. That character must have been peculiarly framed, which could abandon all those enjoyments the mind receives from social intercourse, all the delights and advantages of friendship for a situation where really nothing was to be found but what is requisite to satisfy our first physical necessities. One should be almost tempted to consider complete indolence as the prevailing feature of such a character, and to pronounce that all other considerations must have been sacrificed to the indulgence of it; for this country would be wholly uninhabitable, were it not for the nourishment it affords in such abundance to the sheep; but these yield such extraordinary produce, that with a tolerable flock a whole family may be entirely supported without the owner being obliged to contribute the least exertion of his own. From two thousand sheep a thousand lambs may be calculated upon annually, after allowing all deductions for what may die or be stolen. Six hundred wethers are requisite for feeding a family the year through, including the slaves and Hottentots, and in many a colonist's family no other food but mutton is ever tasted: four hundred will then remain for sale to the travelling butchers, which are worth about six hundred dollars.

American Traveleis in Southern Africa.
and that money supplies the remaining wants of the family. All the trouble that the colonist has is to see that his Hottentots go out with the flocks in the morning, and that the sheep are brought home safe at night. Some, indeed most of them, visit their flocks in the course of the day, and in the time of lambing they sometimes stay with them the whole day. The remainder of the time passes in trivial household employments, or in frequently repeated devotional exercises, only a little variety is sometimes sought in the chase.

In parts favourable to the feeding of cattle the lot of the inhabitant is somewhat happier, for such countries are also favourable to agriculture, and sufficient corn may be raised to supply the family abundantly with bread. Milk besides affords a very pleasant and wholesome article of food, and from the butter which is annually carried to the Cape Town a handsome capital is in time amassed. In most places the litter is left useless to dry away in the kraal, but an active farmer will collect it, and by the liberal use of it procure excellent garden products, and perhaps so large a quantity of corn, that besides what is necessary for his own use he will have some left for sale. Yet again it must be observed that these fair appearances may be at any moment destroyed by the robberies of the Bosjesmans, the inroads of the Caffres, a sudden storm, or the murrain among the cattle; and the latter seems produced equally from want of water during the great heats in some places, and from the cold and damp of winter in others. It is only the extreme facility of produce that can in any degree counterbalance these contrarieties.

Is it surprising that men, who not only have no excitement to activity, but who would, if disposed to exertion, often find that it had been exercised wholly in vain with regard to themselves, by degrees learn to think of nothing but indulging the natural propensity of their nature to indolence; that they grow constantly more and more indifferent to the higher enjoyments of the mind and heart, and sink gradually into a sort of demi-savages, seeming to live only to satisfy the wants which they have in common with the whole animal creation, of sleep and food? One medium for supplying the latter want is here offered so bountifully by nature, that her other gifts are so much the more inexorably withheld. Man holds out his hand to receive her bounty without admiring it; he suffers the other privations to which he is doomed without feeling them as privations; therein consists his principal source of
happiness, that he does not know the value of those things of which he is deprived. In an almost unconscious inactivity of mind, without any attractions towards the great circle of mankind, knowing nothing beyond the little circle which his own family forms around him, the colonist of these parts passes his solitary days, and by this mode of life is made such as we see him. We may compassionate, but we ought not to be angry with him, for the character of a man is not formed by himself; it arises from the circumstances under which he is placed; it is derived in great measure from the nature of the country which he inhabits. It is with these things always in mind, that I wish my readers to form their judgments of the character of the African colonists, and if they will comply with this stipulation, I trust that in the sequel I shall render it more justly appreciated than it has been hitherto.

We now crossed the arid and widely-stretched plain of Camdeboo, which towards the west is lost in the Great Karroo, and has all the characteristics of that country, such as they were described in the ninth chapter of this work. It is only in the neighbourhood of the mountains, particularly the Snow Mountains to the north, from which flow some considerable rivers, that the climate is milder; the heats are never so violent, and the district is consequently much more habitable. Our road led us soon again over the Vogelriver, and here we were obliged to supply ourselves with water for the whole day, since not a drop was to be met with again till the Melk-river, a distance of ten hours. When we had filled our vessels, and our cattle had drank plentifully, we proceeded on our way.

It is difficult for an European to form an idea of the hardships that are to be encountered in a journey over such a dry plain at the hottest season of the year. All vegetation seems utterly destroyed; not a blade of grass, not a green leaf is any where to be seen; and the soil, a stiff loam, reflects back the heat of the sun with redoubled force; a man may congratulate himself that being on horseback he is raised some feet above it. Nor is any rest from these fatigues to be thought of, since to stop where there is neither shade, water, or grass, would be only to increase the evil rather than to diminish it.

Yet the African horses are so well accustomed to hardships, although they have in fact much less innate strength than the European, that it is incredible what a length of way they will go, in the most intense heat, without either
food or drink. It is, however, customary for the riders to dismount at intervals, when the saddles are taken off and the animals are suffered to roll upon the ground and stretch out their limbs for a short time; this they do with evident delight, and after they have well rolled, stretched, and shaken themselves, they rise up and go on as much refreshed as if they had had food and drink given them. On arriving at a farm, the invitation of the host, who comes immediately to the door, is, "Get off, Sir, and let him roll." A slave then appears, takes the horse and leads him backwards and forwards for a few minutes to recover his breath, and he is then unsaddled and left to roll.

These rollings were then the only refreshment we could offer our horses, and both they and their riders were, when towards evening they arrived at the Melk-river, exceedingly exhausted. In the midst of the parched bed of the river is a pool of water, which never dries even in the greatest heat, probably from being supplied by subterraneous springs. Near it is a farm now inhabited by an old man, Curt Grobbelaar by name, with his equally aged wife.

The fatigue we had experienced this day from the excessive heat determined the Commissary-general to travel the remaining ten hours to Graaff-Reynett by night. We stopped, therefore, the whole day at the Melk-river, and when the moon rose proceed on our journey. We set out soon after midnight, and next morning it was so exceedingly cold that we were very glad to put on our cloaks, thinking it fortunate that we had them with us. The country through which we travelled appeared, as far as could be judged by the light in which we saw it, less dry and barren than the former part. Both to the right and left were farms scattered at intervals, and about half way we passed through a considerable thicket of mimosa. Our guide, who did not seem particularly courageous, although he filled the office of a Field-commandant, told us that this wood was full of lions: in the preceding week seven had been seen together, only one of which was killed. People avoid as much as possible, he said, travelling the road by night, since if the draught oxen smell the lions they are terrified, and run away with the waggons. We, however, escaped their attacks, and at break of day saw the Spandau mountain in Graaff-Reynett before us.

This mountain, like many others in the country, till within a few years had no name. An old Prussian soldier, by name Werner, who lived at Graaff-
The Spondan, Mountain near Gruffyd's Reynell.
Reynett, gave it that which it now bears, as a remembrance of his native country: its summit is very remarkable from being surrounded by two circles of rugged broken pieces of rock, forming almost inaccessible natural barriers like those of a fortification.* At its foot, an hour from Graaff-Reynett, we were received by the Field-commandant Gerotz, who besides exercised the temporary office of Landdrost, with his suite: they were according to the usual custom of the country all dressed in short jackets with pantaloons, but had each a sword or sabre by his side. On entering the village we saw the Batavian flag flying, and the Commissary-general, as representative of the States, was complimented with a salute of one and twenty guns, fired from three small pieces.

* The annexed plate gives a view of this mountain, and presents a very accurate idea of the peculiar character of the African landscape scenery. These parallel layers, these naked mountain ridges, these dry beds of rivers with the thinly leaved mimosas on their banks, are scenes which are, alas! but too often repeated in this country. In the distance is seen the village of Graaff-Reynett, which indeed does not here assume the cheerful appearance that really belongs to it, and farther in the background is the inhospitable plain of Camdeboo. The river through whose dry bed a colonist with his Hottentot servant is riding, is one of the numerous and nameless branches of the Zondag's-river, which never has water in it but after the impetuous rains that accompany the thunder storms, and then but for a very short time.
CHAP. XXVI.

Description of Graaff-Reynett.—The Character of the Colonists of these Parts, and the Circumstances which occasioned the Dissensions that prevailed there, both before and after it came under the English Government.—Regulations made by the Commissary-general for the Restoration of Order and Tranquility.—Losses sustained by the district in the Caffre War.

The village of Graaff-Reynett was founded in the year 1786, by Governor Van de Graaff, and was called from the examples of Stellenbosch and Zwel lendam, after the names of himself and his wife, the latter being of the family of Reynett. About twenty houses, with the gardens between, built in a straight line, form a tolerably broad street. The inhabitants of these houses are a smith, a waggon-wright, a saddler, a carpenter, and other handicraft workers, who gain a very good livelihood; there are also some little traders, but their stock of wares appeared very scanty. The drosty, or habitation of the Landdrost, was the oldest and worst house in the village; and the church, although rebuilt only eight years before, at the expense of the congregation, was in very indifferent repair. At the end of the street were the remains of the English barracks, which formerly served as a sort of fortress. At the unfortunate period of the last contest between the villagers and the Hottentots in the English service, they were set on fire, and two of the houses reduced to ashes. Melancholy traces of the calamities by which these parts were so long distracted were nowhere more evidently discernible than here. They not only appeared in the destruction of the public buildings, but were still more manifest in the unexampled disorder that had been introduced into every part of the administration of the district, and the change wrought in the manners and modes of thinking of the inhabitants. It appears, therefore, not irrelevant to my purpose to investigate somewhat more amply than has yet been done the occasion of these dissensions.

Even before the drosty of Graaff-Reynett was established, the inhabitants of the country were some of the most factious and turbulent of the whole
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

They lived in so remote a part that it was almost impossible for the government to provide effectually for the laws being properly enforced, and they were besides almost all foreigners of perturbed minds, who here sought a home. If a soldier who had served out his time, or an European who had not talents sufficient to get his bread in the Cape Town, wished to establish himself as a colonist, this was the part to which all such were sent. During the rapidly increasing population which took place between the years 1760 and 1780, several colonists’ sons sought in this country, so propitious to the feeding of cattle, to establish themselves with herds of their own; and the success they met with attracted others to do the same. The then government was certainly guilty of an error in being too careless and easy in granting lands to almost any one who applied for them, without regard to the views or principles of the applicant.

The assembling together of so many uncultivated men in so remote a country, where every one, without any attention to the laws, acted only according to his own pleasure, could not fail of producing bad effects upon the general character. To the many failings which, no doubt, might previously be imputed to them, the emigrant Europeans, who were commonly from among the lowest ranks in the mother country, brought a new list of vices till then unknown among the Africans, or from which they had been withheld by their bigotry, often overstrained, though useful in this point of view. The contentious spirit, always too prevalent among the colonists, and which commonly has for its object some difference regarding the boundaries of their respective properties, broke out here into lamentable family divisions, which were attended with the most degrading consequences. Without the restoration of some severe civil regulations, and the introduction of some intermediate authority, which could constantly watch over the people, it seemed inevitable that every generation would go backwards in civilization, and that they would, at last, sink nearly as low in the scale of human nature as the former savage inhabitants of the country. The foundation of the drosty at Graaff-Reynett became, therefore, a measure of indispensable necessity; indeed, in order to have had all the effect that was to be wished, it ought to have been established ten or twenty years sooner. Perhaps, however, that was scarcely possible, as this part of the colony was not then
sufficiently populous to support the keeping up a magistrate of its own with all the appendages necessary to it.

For want of one, the evil had now taken an unfortunately deep root, and circumstances occurred which increased it still farther. In the first place the mechanics who were sent as inhabitants of the newly-established village were almost all Europeans, since no free Africans ever apply themselves to mechanical arts; and among these strangers were not many, who were likely to improve their new associates by their example. The government were besides particularly unfortunate in the first persons they fixed upon to fill the new magistracy. They were either weak men, who from indolence suffered things to go on in their usual course, or men who acted with an ill-judging zeal, not knowing how properly to regulate the firmness and uprightness necessary to be united in the judge and regent of such a district. They were in fact people to whom the government, for some reason or other, thought it necessary to give appointments, and as none could be found for them in the Cape Town they were sent hither; or they were persons whom they wished to send to a distance in hopes of keeping them quiet. They ought rather to have been rising persons of merit, who should have been taught to consider the station as a step to a better appointment, if they conducted themselves properly in this. Every fresh person was terrified with the toils to be gone through in the new and as yet but imperfectly organized government, and seeing how much ought to be done, shrank from all attention to business; besides, the melancholy life led in this solitary region, the nature of the climate which disposes to inactivity, and the distance from the superintending power, all contributed more and more to confirm the propensity to negligence and inattention.

The dissatisfaction of the colonists was soon by these means strongly excited, and every new instance of neglect of their interests incensed them more and more against the government, and its servants, the landdrosts. From the very imperfect instructions given to the latter, a certain degree of arbitrary proceedings was on their side almost unavoidable, while restless spirits did not fail on every such occasion to represent them as acts of tyranny and despotism. In minds so prepared, a spirit of tumult was without difficulty excited. The separation of the American colonies from the Mother Country had already
awakened many wild projects among certain ill-organised heads in the colony, which, to those acquainted with the helpless situation of the country in itself, could not appear otherwise than wholly laughable; and the subsequent revolutions in France and Holland occasioned an universal ferment all over the colony. Parties of Loyalists and Patriots were formed, which were rendered formidable from the then weakness of the government. The speeches made by the demagogues in Holland, in their popular assemblies, coincided entirely with the sentiments of most of the citizens of the Cape Town, where the old system was not very popular; but as long as they saw those in authority continue to cherish opposite sentiments, they had not courage to shew themselves openly.

Nothing then remained but to blow the spirit of discontent and resistance which they saw rising among the rough colonists into an open flame; while the latter, from their ignorance and credulity, were easily won over to opinions so perfectly accordant with their principles. Many European adventurers in the district of Graaff-Reynett, among whom the names of Pisani and Delport stand recorded in the history of the colony of the Cape, with particular horror, suffered themselves to be made in some measure the tools of those who wished to disturb the public peace; but they were, besides, themselves ambitious of being popular leaders, and were ready to do any thing which by exciting general confusion might afford a hope of their own private ends being more effectually attained. In the year 1794 the commotions in Graaff-Reynett fairly broke out. The then Landdrost Meinier, who had not been a very mild regent towards his subjects, was constrained to depart, and a popular government was immediately organised, which, though the seat of it was at Graaff-Reynett, extended over other parts of the colony. A commission of some members of the government, who went into the country endeavouring to restore peace in a mild and reasonable way, returned to the Cape Town, after the first interview with the ringleaders, wholly discouraged; at the same time, if they had been disposed to do that by force which they had sought in vain to obtain by gentleness and persuasion, the means were wanting, since an attack from the English was to be apprehended at any moment.

The peasants therefore were, of necessity, left to pursue their mad career unmolested; they held primary assemblies; they wore the national cockade; they chose from among themselves a president and secretary who could
scarcely read or write, and deliberated with a like important air upon affairs of state as upon the affairs of their own private families. The protocol of these assemblies, which still exists in the archives of the drosty, exhibits a very curious picture of their proceedings, to which, how much soever they endeavoured to ape those of the French popular assemblies, nothing similar can any where be found. Yet it must be mentioned, to their credit, that during the whole time this state of anarchy continued, no real horrors were perpetrated, no cruel sentences were inflicted either of death or of corporal punishment. The phrenzy, however, continually spread wider and wider. In the districts of Bruintjeshoogte, of the Zwartkops-river, the Zwartheberge, and the Sneeuweberge, societies were formed, nay, even some individuals from Koub, and the Roggeveldts, associated themselves together under the Shiboletth of liberty and equality. Some of the peasants, in their journeys to the Cape Town, went so far as publicly to insult certain members of the government, and others, who were considered as of the Orange party, while the weakness of the higher powers was such that it was necessary even to permit like instances of audacity to pass unnoticed.

Matters were in this situation when the colony was taken by the English, as many of the best intentioned people at first believed, to preserve it as a possession for the Prince of Orange. This only created in the distant parts a more determined spirit of resistance against the new government, nor was that spirit diminished when the real views of the new possessors more clearly appeared. Lord Macartney required an oath of the collected inhabitants of the colony to remain true and faithful subjects to his Britannic Majesty; a requisition, which in a military possession, a country still not united to the dominions of its conquerors, was esteemed hard, and must even appear impolitic. For, even supposing it to have been taken, those inhabitants of the colony who really preserved an attachment to their Mother Country could scarcely have considered it as binding, if the expedition of the Schout-by-Nagt had succeeded, and some thousands of Dutch had been landed upon the coast; from those of the inhabitants who were retained in places of public trust, such an oath must naturally be required, but that it should be exacted from private persons not only in the Cape Town, but all over the country, and that in case of refusal they should be commanded to quit it, was a thing wholly unprecedented. It besides proved at once to the new
subjects that no confidence was placed in them, and this embittered beyond measure those who were previously too well disposed to tumult and disorder.

Emboldened by the little opposition they had hitherto found from the weakness of the Dutch government, the people of Graaff-Reynett had the courage formally to refuse taking this oath. The tone however of the leaders was wholly changed. Instead of the revolutionary propositions they had hitherto held, they now only talked of attachment to their Mother Country. What drove them to opposition was no longer the Orange principles; it was to the English that they declared themselves decided opponents;—instead of enemies to the old order of things, they were now determined foes to the new. A detachment of English soldiers sufficed however to overthrow all their plans: scarcely did they shew themselves, before their determined opposition was no longer thought of; they submitted quietly, and promised obedience. This was the propitious moment when the peace and happiness of the district might have been assured. The race of human kind there might even have been improved if a person of understanding and judgment had been placed at the head of them; one who knew how to gain the respect and affection of men unaccustomed to restraint, and to rule them with paternal decision. Instead of that, the unfortunate idea was adopted that they must be governed with energy, and the same Meinier was sent there anew as Landdrost, who from his ill-timed severity had occasioned the breaking out of the discontents. Mr. Barrow, Lord Macartney’s secretary and counsellor, accompanied him, to instal him into his resumed office, and this journey gave occasion to those valuable remarks with which the literary world of Europe is so well acquainted.

The newly reinstated Landdrost had a terrible score of offences received from the peasants to forget, if he would rule them mildly, while they must equally lose the recollection of his former proceedings, if they were to obey him willingly. It was not difficult to foresee that this was a degree of moderation at which neither side was very likely to arrive; while to increase the evil, it was before the Landdrost that the detested oath was to be taken. It would have been much less insupportable if this ceremony had been to take place before an Englishman born. It became then very soon evident that the authority of the Landdrost could not be maintained without a military force.
Sir James Craig had organized a body of Hottentots, and these were the troops selected to humble the colonists—to watch over and control them. It is impossible not to censure the imprudence of such a measure. How great soever might be the faults of the colonists towards their Hottentots, this was not the way to promote better behaviour in future. At the same time that an opportunity was given to the Hottentots to gratify a spirit of revenge, which ought rather to have been discouraged than promoted, the colonists were inflamed to a positive hatred of their former servants, and had too much pretence given for greater severity in their future conduct towards them. Besides, there were many among the Hottentots who had received much kindness from their former masters, and they were now placed in such a situation as to subject them to the reproach of repaying their kindness with ingratitude. The colonists were, moreover, from this measure constrained to forego the hired services of the Hottentots, and to purchase slaves at a very high price, or let their establishments fall entirely to the ground.

Spacious barracks were built at Graaff-Reynett for the Hottentots, the erection of which plainly shewed that the possibility of a revolt was a thing speculated upon, and in case of a powerful attack, they would be secure in these buildings. The Hottentots were well fed and well paid; they were even treated abundantly with their favourite brandy, and revelled in a sort of affluence, while the situation of the colonists sunk every day lower and lower. The government of the Landdrost was carried on in conformity with the principles he laid down when he had been in office before; it was with a firmness bordering on ferocity, at least so it must appear to the subjects, and it failed not to alienate their minds from the new government more and more every day. Several of the colonists, rather than take the oath, fled, part of them to the Caffres, part to some distant solitary region: these were out-lawed, a traffic with the Caffres for their lives was even attempted, and others were banished from the colony. It might be considered as one of the fortunate consequences of these events that Pisani and Delport were among the number of the latter. They were transported to Holland, and represented themselves there as martyrs to their patriotic principles. The first however became in a short time discontented, and fled to France, where he attempted to come forwards as a writer upon the Cape.
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

For two years the people of Graaff-Reynett were kept down by means of the garrison, but about the end of the year 1798 an occurrence happened which gave the signal for an open revolt. A certain Zacharias Van Jaarsveld was put into prison by the Landdrost on account of some money which as a trustee he had misapplied, and was to be transported to the Cape Town, and delivered over to the College of Justice there. Though he had himself always avoided taking any part in the disturbances, some of his friends were among the most discontented, and fourteen of them entered into a solemn agreement to free him from the hands of justice. The project succeeded so far, that they overpowered the escort which was to carry him to the Cape, and brought him back to Graaff-Reynett. There a number of the other colonists joined them, and the question was no longer confined to freeing the prisoner—the Landdrost was required to redress other grievances, over some of which he had not of himself any power. As their force was too considerable for the Landdrost to act in open opposition to them, he retreated into the barracks as his only asylum. The number of the discontented in the mean time kept constantly increasing; they went round the whole country exciting it to tumult, and in Graaff-Reynett itself, made use of a house directly opposite to the barracks as a place of assembly for the ring-leaders.

Whether it was apprehension of these tumultuary movements ending in a real attack, or hope to impress the insurgents with terror, the Landdrost was pleased to fire upon the house: many of those assembled there were wounded, and soon after the house broke out into flames. The colonists indeed fired again upon the barracks, but no important consequences occurred, and they soon returned into the village without undertaking any thing farther. Their natural phlegm, the fear of inevitable punishment, if they engaged in any decisive act of force against the Landdrost, want of necessaries to provide for so large a number of men, perhaps also want of union among themselves, compelled them to peaceable behaviour; while a stronger detachment of English which soon arrived dispersed them entirely. Nine of the most turbulent were seized and carried prisoners to Algoa bay, whence they were sent by sea to the Cape Town. The College of Justice there, in the sequel, condemned them to death, but the sentence was not yet executed when information of the peace of Amiens arrived. The English commander then judged,
honourably enough, that in consideration of the good understanding restored between the two powers, the pretence of adherence to the Mother Country, which had been assigned as the principal motive of their delinquency, ought to be suffered to have its weight, and left the final decision of the process to the Dutch themselves. By them a four years imprisonment was determined to be sufficient punishment, and the delinquents were in the end set at liberty, at the same time that a general amnesty was proclaimed. But in order that the Dutch government might not be supposed to consider them as entirely innocent, their restoration to freedom was accompanied with solemnities which demonstrated that it was regarded as an act of favour shewn them, not as an acquittal to which they had an indisputable claim.

Soon after the above occurrences in Graaff-Reynett, that is in the year 1799, the English government judged it proper to name a new Landdrost in the place of Meinier. But the distrust and discontent of the colonists had risen to so great a height that it was become impossible to restore tranquility. More than sixty families under the conduct of Rensburg had emigrated; the Caffres had established themselves in the whole southern part of the district; more than half the farms were forsaken and destroyed; dearth and murrain succeeded, and carried the misery to its acme. Those among the colonists who had remained did not cease upon every possible occasion to show a spirit of disobedience to the government; and notwithstanding their unfortunate circumstances, to thwart and do little acts of enmity towards it in various ways. The Landdrost in the end was wearied out, and returned back to the Cape, and in his place the Field-commandant Gerotz, a worthy old Swabian, from mere good-will, but without any great capacity, took upon himself the administration of the public business. The government seemed scarcely any longer to think it worth while to concern itself about these people, especially after intelligence was received that the colony was to be restored to the Dutch, and quietly abandoned them to their fate.

Under circumstances so unfavourable, the restoration of order in this district was one of the first and most anxious cares of the new Dutch commander. After having concluded peace with the Caffres, General Janssens next repaired to Graaff-Reynett. He found the country in the most melancholy condition, half the inhabitants reduced to extremities by the Caffres, others in perpetual
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA.

strife with the Bosjesmans, few in a situation to pay the most trifling impost. The chest of the district was empty, the books of accounts were in the most lamentable disorder, the public buildings were destroyed, and presented nothing but a sad monument of crimes; the most important posts were filled by people wholly ignorant and devoid of capacity. Nothing but the unbounded confidence of the colonists in the benevolent views of the government towards them could afford a prospect of rescuing them from so forlorn a condition, and reinstating them in any thing like comfort and prosperity. Yet their rude and perverted ways of thinking abated in some measure the hope that it would be possible, at least immediately, to inspire them with a love of order, and a sense of submission and subservience to the laws. It seemed as if they had been too much accustomed to live without respect for any earthly power to be easily brought back to a due respect for that under which they were now to live. Their reciprocal irreconcilable spirit of discord and enmity towards each other, their wholly perverted ideas of right and wrong, their extravagant notions with regard to liberty, their total want of true religious principles, though making much external profession of piety, their perfect ignorance in short of all social duties, of all social virtues, had placed them in a most unfortunate situation both for themselves and for the government.

The total seclusion of the colonists from general intercourse with the world, and with civilised life, their confinement to the little circle of their own families, the easy manner in which the first necessities of our nature are satisfied, are very disadvantageous to them under many points of view; and notwithstanding their simplicity of manners, their general purity of morals, and their ignorance of many of the greater crimes to which the European nations are subject, they appear, taken in the aggregate, even to impartial observers, much rather under an unfavourable than under a favourable point of view. Selfishness, lawlessness, hardiness, intolerance, and a thirst of revenge, are the reigning vices in their character, which will perhaps hardly be thought atoned by a disposition to be easily satisfied, by a spirit of economy yet united with unbounded hospitality, a firm adherence to truth, and a great respect for religion. But what is most to be deprecated in the character of some among them, is the harshness with which they treat their slaves and Hottentots, and in others, the bitterness and irreconcilable animosity with which they carry on their differences among each other.
An unfortunate practice among them is that every personal calumny, every derogatory assertion, every reputed incroachment, is taken down in writing, and established by witnesses, that the offender may perhaps, years after, be judicially pursued for it. Every colonist has by him a large packet of such kind of papers ready at any moment to be produced and brought forwards against an enemy. Such private differences become the concern of the whole society, since every one who can write subscribes these papers, Verklaarings, as they are called, on one side or the other. The whole matter sometimes of one of them is that such a one, at such a time, called such another a graceless fellow, or spoke evil of him behind his back. Many of these testimonies were laid before both the Governor and the Commissary-general upon their journeys, but no where in greater abundance than in Graaff-Reynett. Every one had here his enemy, and brought against him the bitterest complaints, whether he was a member of the government or a private person; no one would acknowledge himself in the wrong, and it was always those who stood the most in need of forgiveness themselves that cried the loudest for prosecution and punishment. Although a general amnesty was proclaimed by the government, and the remembrance of all offences which arose only from political opinions was exploded, daily complaints were made that such or such had been guilty of factious measures, or had sought to place the conduct of former landdrosts in the most odious lights.

Such complicated and deep-rooted evils could not be remedied in a moment. The Governor, however, rejoiced that by his journey he had acquired a more accurate knowledge of the district of Graaff-Reynett, and of its actual situation. He exhorted the inhabitants in the most energetic manner to live in peace and concord among each other; he endeavoured to introduce some order in the government, and at his return to the Cape Town, consulted earnestly with the Commissary-general upon the means of repairing the present, and obviating future evils. The carrying into execution the resolutions taken for this purpose was one of the primary objects of the Commissary-general’s journey. The hitherto secretary of the district of Zwellendam, Stockeström, a man who had all the qualities and all the knowledge requisite for occupying so arduous a post, had been prevailed upon to accept the office of landdrost, and his arrival was expected at the same time with ourselves.
The Commissary-general was particularly anxious to provide during his stay efficient assistance to the new landdrost in all the other offices of the administration. He paid great attention to the state of the finances, and allotted a portion of the imposts which had been usually paid into the general treasury of the colony to be now paid into the chest of the district. He himself arranged the account books, and made many excellent regulations for the future administration of the finances. Instead of the miserable habitation which now served as the drosty, a handsome dwelling was ordered to be built, as well for the habitation of the landdrost, as for holding the courts of justice. The plan for the building was laid out, and the funds necessary for its completion were to be furnished by the government partly as a loan, partly as a present. The whole was completed the same year.

The church had during the troubles been used as a magazine, and as barracks and stables for the cavalry, and was therefore in a very dilapidated state; it was now repaired, and a sum of three hundred dollars was given to the congregation to put it into proper order for the performance of divine service. It was also determined that till a regular preacher should be appointed solely for Graaff-Reynett, the minister from Zwellendam should come twice in the year to stay there for a certain time. It was the intention to send for some liberal-minded well-informed pastor from Europe, in hopes of leading future generations from their errors, and teaching them more salutary ways. In order farther to promote tranquillity and good order, a decree was issued on the twelfth of February, that since the district of Graaff-Reynett was too extensive for one jurisdiction only, it was in future to be divided into two, and a new drosty was to be founded in the neighbourhood of Algoa bay.

The ruins of the barracks and other disastrous monuments of discord were cleared away, and in their place the ground for a street was laid out, intended to accommodate the new settlers. The most important differences among the inhabitants were adjusted, and the parties solemnly reconciled with each other, while no warnings and exhortations were spared to induce them to change their conduct in future, to make them understand that they owed their misfortunes to their own perverted views of things, and must act in a very different manner towards the government and towards each other if they would wish to avoid a renewal of them. The sequel has shewed that
all these pains were not taken wholly in vain, and if as yet no striking change appears in the principles and manners of the inhabitants, at least the outward manifestations of the inward sentiments are restrained, and they have been taught to respect the civil authorities.

The village of Graaff-Reynett lies in a desert, naked, and arid country, almost entirely enclosed by mountains, for which reason in the summer months the heat is almost insupportable. The Zondag's-river flows directly behind the village with a considerable fall from a declivity, so that the water might easily be conducted, by means of small channels, into the fields and gardens, which would give the whole spot a much more cheering and lively aspect, besides increasing to an invaluable degree the produce of the soil. It would, indeed, have been extremely ill-judged to place a village here, had it not been for this facility of supplying it with water. Farther upwards, upon the Zondag's-river, are many much more fertile plains, but the trifling fall of the river, and the depth of its bed, would have rendered it impossible in the dry season to supply the neighbouring fields with water. As the sources of the river are in the Great Snow Mountains, it never entirely dries, yet there are many examples of the supply of water being too small to permit of all the fields being benefited by it.

The cultivable part of the valley is, however, but of inconsiderable extent, and on this ground it may well be made a question whether the village can ever be made to support an extensive population. The climate is, on account of the heat and the drying north-wind, which blows here for a great part of the year, neither agreeable, nor particularly healthy; at least in no place did I find so many sick. Dysenteries, agues, inflammations in the eyes, and eruptive disorders, were in almost every house, and I never found hysterical complaints more prevalent. A ci-devant ship surgeon had established himself in the village, but he complained to me that although he was the only professional man in the district, and there were a great many people ill, he had scarcely any practice. Six little boxes covered with dust, and three little phials, contained his whole stock of drugs, and by a present of jalap, I had the happiness of supplying all his wants for some time to come.

The only place of any consequence is the garden of Werner, the old Silesian mentioned above, in which are a great variety of fruits, particularly most delicious grapes: they were now just ripe, and we found them, as well
as the other fruits, exceedingly grateful after having been so long without
tasting any. The wine made here is of a middling quality, but may, if the
grapes are carefully picked before they are pressed, as Werner does, be very
much improved. This cheerful old man has lived here ever since the drosty
was founded, and has gained a very good livelihood by his profession of a
tanner. His style of living, measuring it according to the general fashion
of the country, may be called brilliant; indeed I have observed that the spirit
of hospitality so general among the colonists is no where more conspicuous
than among those who are Germans born. I have often remarked that my
fellow-countrymen in Africa do not reconcile themselves very easily to the
solitude in which they must necessarily live. The love of society seems to
cling more closely to them than to the colonists of any other nation, and
in none is it so evident how dear to them is the sight of an European traveller.
I must however condemn them in this respect, that none seem more easily
to forget their native country and its manners and customs. Even in the
Cape Town, except one little circle in particular, of very amiable German
families, the Germans associate little together: they speak Dutch among each
other, and do not receive a fellow-countryman with more delight and cordiality
than any other stranger.

It is indeed true that most of them owe their being here to unpropitious
circumstances attendant upon their youth, which do not leave upon their
minds pleasing associations connected with their latest recollections of their
native country. With every succeeding year any recollections grow fainter
and fainter; the intelligence from home is less and less frequent, and the ties
which connected him with his native soil are proportionately weakened, as
he forms others under the new sun to which he is transported. Indeed, those
are far happier who become wholly Africans, than others who retain a too
fond remembrance of the climes they have quitted: to the former the priva-
tions of early joys are felt the less deeply in proportion as the manifold ad-
vantages to be found in their new abode are preferred. It speaks very much
in favour of this country, that examples of being home-sick rarely occur.
We may generally observe that Europeans of the lower ranks and with little
pretensions are soon satisfied here, and easily forget their native country, while
persons of polished educations and refined feelings experience a painful void,
and a longing after their home, which prevents their ever finding themselves wholly satisfied elsewhere.

During our stay at Graaff-Reynett we had intelligence from Algoa bay, and from the Caffre borders. The latter confirmed the news we heard on our journey, that a reconciliation had taken place between King Geika and the rebel chiefs, Jaluhsa and Conga, the latter having voluntarily submitted to the former. It was added that Sambeh’s adherents constantly diminished, and it was hoped that he also would submit, or at least that he would be obliged to quit the colony.

The Field-cornet Rasmus of Agtebruintjeshoogte came hither himself to inform us that the Caffre horde which we had met on the thirtieth of January, on the repeated threats that their cattle would be taken away from them, and not restored till they had crossed the Fish-river, had now actually quitted the domains of the colony; another horde following their example had also returned. The importance of this intelligence, and of keeping upon a friendly footing with the Caffres, was never more evident than in the spot where we now were. For if the sight of so many houses in ruins, of so many fields desolated, of so many families wholly impoverished, had shewn us in very striking colours the lamentable consequences attending a Caffre war, the conviction was inconceivably increased by seeing the catalogue of the losses sustained by the inhabitants of this district, which was hung up in the drosty, taken according to the oaths of the sufferers. Not more than two-thirds of them had given in their account, and yet the list amounted to eight hundred and fifty-eight horses, four thousand four hundred and seventy-five oxen, thirty-five thousand four hundred and seventy-four cows and calves, thirty-four thousand and twenty-three sheep, and two thousand four hundred and eighty goats.

When it is considered that the great wealth of the colonists in this country consists in their cattle, and that the subsistence of the whole colony, even of the Cape Town itself, depends very much upon the supplies derived from hence, it will be apparent of what importance such a loss must have been. In fact, in the year 1800 there was so great a scarcity of cattle, that the English government was obliged to send commissioners to the Briquas to purchase a supply. This end was however in great measure unattained,
and the principal advantage derived from the experiment was the gaining a considerable knowledge of the Beetjuans, a remarkable tribe, till then very little known. Even now the price of horned cattle is beyond all comparison higher than before the war, and from the rapidly increasing population, it will be essentially necessary for the general welfare that the districts where cattle are reared should remain for many years in undisturbed peace.

END OF PART THE THIRD.
APPENDIX.

Remarks upon the Language of the Koossas, accompanied by a Vocabulary of their Words.

There is no doubt but that the situation of a savage nation, the degree of civilization which exists in it, and above all, the relationship which it bears with other nations, can never be accurately understood, and properly estimated, without a competent knowledge of its language;—without understanding equally the mode of pronouncing it, its structure, and its compass. The number of wants and ideas existing among a people, whether that number be great or small, as well as their relative situation with the countries by which they are surrounded, can never be so efficiently determined as by procuring a collection of their words, the mediums whereby those wants and ideas are expressed, and those relations are defined. But in order to render such a collection truly valuable, it must always be examined with a reference to the innate purposes for which language was given us, considering well the combinations and inflexions of words through which people arrive at a reciprocal exchange of ideas. The more arbitrary a language is, in the use and combination of words, the less it is reduced to fixed rules, so much the more vain appears the attempt to give a just idea of the manner of being, or of the minds of those by whom it is employed.

Among a people where no such things exist as the palpable signs of language, who lead beside a nomade life, and are divided into numerous tribes, at whose rise and fall new dialects arise and old ones are lost—among such a people the language has in it nothing permanent, it shares the fate of those by whom it is spoken, it changes without being improved. He, therefore, who would catch and describe the spirit of it has no easy task, especially if that man be a traveller who has only had an opportunity of knowing one or two of the tribes. The language of savages is never any thing more than a medium of communication among them; it cannot have any higher aim; it can hardly be said to have attained what is properly called spirit, and is therefore incapable of proving all that may be proved by the polished languages of Europe.

Nay, farther: let any one be ever so well acquainted with the language of a single Caffre tribe, he still cannot form an accurate judgment of the manners and modes of thinking among the people in general. This is not to be effected unless he has attained a competent knowledge of the neighbouring dialects, and found a medium whereby to compare what is permanent in each, with what
APPENDIX.

is fluctuating. By these means only can the universal characteristic of the Caffre language be determined, and the end proposed in the investigation be accomplished. As it is, however, scarcely to be expected that this comprehensive knowledge will speedily be obtained by any one who has at the same time the powers and opportunity to impart it clearly and scientifically, I will venture to hope that this Essay may not be wholly useless. I must flatter myself that it may smooth the way for the future happier Inquirer, who has the same desire to investigate the Caffre language upon the spot; that what I am able to bring forward may, to a certain extent, lighten his task.

I must premise that it is now three years since I published, in the first volume of the Archives for Ethnography and Languages, a comparison of the most important languages of Southern Africa. In it I expressed myself fully upon the difficulties there appeared to me in investigating them, and explained the manner in which I thought those difficulties were the most effectually to be overcome; endeavouring, at the same time, to point out in the clearest manner possible the greater or less affinity which they bear to each other. In that work the remarks upon the language of each separate people followed the description of their customs and manners; and, as I hope, I thus made them subservient to ascertaining perfectly the degree of cultivation at which each is arrived. I shall, notwithstanding, here bring forward my whole collection of words, since I only there produced some of the leading ones.

I have described, above, the language of the Caffres as full-toned, smooth, and pleasing to the ear, formed chiefly of simple sounds, the words for the most part not exceeding two syllables. It is from the slow, distinct manner of speaking, from the frequent recurrence of open vowels, and from the clear intonation of the last syllable, that the pleasing sound of the language seems to arise. It has almost the sound of Italian, and is not difficult to be pronounced by Europeans of any nation, at the very first hearing it: a German finds no difficulty in writing it down with the characters of his own language, so as to preserve exactly in his memory the right pronunciation. These general properties of all the Caffre dialects will apply equally to that of the Koossas, although in one respect they differ from the other tribes, that they have a certain degree of clatter in their manner of speaking to which the other tribes are entire strangers: this they have probably acquired from their frequent intercourse with the tribes of Hottentots in their neighbourhood, particularly with the Gonaquas, for such a mode of speaking has already been mentioned as universal among the Hottentots.

This clatter arises, as in the Hottentots, in the lowest degree, from moving the tongue very quick behind the upper fore teeth, in a greater degree by the same movement behind the upper back teeth, in the greatest degree by turning the tongue so that the back of it touches the gums. The principal difficulty in imitating this sound is, that a letter must be pronounced at the same moment with the movement of the tongue. The still stronger stroke of the tongue which occurs in the Hottentots' language, does not prevail among the Koossas; at least it is very rarely heard, and only in words which have been transferred from the Gonaqua language into theirs. I distinguish these sounds by the numbers 1, 2, 3, over the syllable which is so pronounced, 1 denoting the lowest degree of it, 3 the highest.

The generality of the Caffre dialects differ again from that of the Koossas in the total absence of the rattling ɹ, which makes them particularly soft and smooth. In some few words decidedly
APPENDIX.

Hottentotish the r is found, but in pronouncing them they generally substitute an t. The Koossas also use the f with its sister sounds v and w, which are never to be found in the dialect of Beetjuan. There is a certain lisp in all the Caffre dialects which I have endeavoured to distinguish by the Greek circumflex " over the syllable where it occurs. It is produced by thrusting the point of the tongue against the gums, sometimes more slightly, sometimes harder, and takes place principally in speaking an s, or sj, or tj. With an l, sl, kl, or tl, there is a positive stammering, as is the case sometimes in a failure of the organs of speech: this sound, therefore, particularly at first hearing it, exceedingly displeases an European ear.

The full, proper, hissing sound of the German sch, as well as the softer tone of the French x, do not occur at all in the Caffre dialect; nor is there any thing like an x. After k, p, and t, in many words a sharp aspiration follows, a distinct h, which therefore, where it is found in the words particularly distinguished, must not be dropped. The diphthongs au, ou, eu, and ai, which abound so much in the Hottentot dialects, and occur under so many different modes of extension, are wholly foreign to the Caffre language. On the contrary, in every syllable is a simple vowel, clearly pronounced, and not encumbered with many consonants. In the Koossa dialect u is the vowel that occurs the most frequently; o the least so.

The Koossas speak slowly and distinctly, in short sentences, between every one of which they make a longer or a shorter pause. Their enunciation is singing and rhythmical, the accent resting on the last syllable of every word, and particularly upon the last word of the sentence. In expressions of sorrow their body remains quite still, their arms and hands without motion; but the head, in pronouncing the last word of lamentation, is stretched significantly forwards, either towards the spot or the object in question, and then the mantle is closed together with their hands over their breast. Their gesticulation is therefore not exceedingly expressive, but their eyes are extremely so. Their whole meaning may often be read in their eyes, at the same time that the muscles of the face are no more moved than is necessary for pronouncing the words.

As they speak in short sentences, so is the construction of their language simple, and easier to be comprehended by literal translation than that of the Hottentots; the latter being overloaded with arbitrary interlocutory syllables. They have no proper article, no auxiliary verbs, no inflexions either of their verbs or substantivs: this the annexed collection of examples will clearly prove.

The simple, abstract proposition I am cannot be expressed in their language. Is a circumstance to be related, it is sufficient to put the personal pronoun to the word descriptive of the circumstance, without any intermediate verb. The verb without the pronoun always signifies the third person. Their personal pronouns vary according to the time intended to be marked. From these changes in the pronouns is determined whether the question is of the past, present, or future, so that their verbs are conjugated without auxiliaries, or without any changes in their terminations. A word to which particular expression is intended to be given is repeated several times over in rapid succession. These repetitions are often truly frequentative, signifying that an action was performed repeatedly, very quick, or with great force. Among the Koossas the repetition falls principally upon the verbs; among the Beetjuans upon the adverbs.

The dialect of the Koossas has this peculiarity, that before speaking many words, particularly substantivs which begin with consonants, they close the lips so that a sort of sound like an
APPENDIX.

\( \text{n or } n \) is produced: it is in general not more than the sound of \( n \). Before many words beginning with a vowel, a whole syllable will be introduced, as \( \text{am, om, um, or in} \). The arbitrary manner of bringing in this syllable by hearing it often is clearly understood; but it has the effect of perplexing a person who is not thoroughly acquainted with it, when he hears the other Caffre dialects, where the same words are used without the previous syllable. It seems as if the deliberately-speaking Koossa would assist by this the solemnity and distinctness of his enunciation: it is as if in order to gain time he shuts his mouth, for the sole purpose of opening it afterwards. As elisions ought to be carefully avoided throughout, I have uniformly, wherever two different vowels casually fall together, introduced an \( n \),—the true \( n \) ²φλεκτικαν Some other particular remarks will be better made in the way of notes to the Vocabulary.

A considerable number of the words in this Vocabulary were collected by myself in the course of my travels; but it has been much improved by the additions I have received from friends. For the best part I am indebted to the information of Vander Kemp, who, during his long stay at the Cape Town in November, 1805, was unwearied in answering all the questions I put to him, and giving me every possible satisfaction upon the subject. The Commissary-General had previously favoured me with a list of Caffre words which he had collected, whence I have in some sort enriched my Vocabulary. Alberti's work, so full of information in many respects, contains so little with regard to the Caffre language, that it is not worth mentioning. It scarcely need be observed how little earlier travellers, Sparrmann, La Vaillant, and Mr. Barrow, have noticed it. I have endeavoured to exculpate my work from being liable to the same observation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VOCABULARY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OF WORDS FROM THE LANGUAGE OF THE KOossas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Man                              Uhm tō.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Men                                Um u hm tō.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Where I have used the short \( o \) at the end of a word, it implies that the sound is half sunk, so that it seems almost doubtful whether it ought to be an \( o \) or a \( u \).—Author.

An observation made in a note to page 292 must here again be repeated, that these words being given according to the ideas that the sounds conveyed to a German ear, it is probable the orthography would have been in many instances given differently by an English writer. As for example: the \( u \) in German has a very different sound from the \( u \) in English, it is nearer to the sound of our \( oo \), though not exactly resembling it. A person accustomed to the mode of pronouncing among the lower classes, and indeed of some among the higher ones, in Yorkshire and the other northern counties, will, from their pronunciation of the \( u \) in the words \( but, butter, &c. \) have a very accurate idea of the manner in which it is pronounced in German. It hence appears probable, that where the \( u \) occurs in the following Vocabulary, an English writer would rather have spelt the words with the \( oo \).—Translator.
APPENDIX.

A People, a Tribe ........................................... Gabaantö.
The Nation, all the Tribes collectively ................. Gapaabaantö.*
A Husband ..................................................... Indóda.
A Wife .......................................................... Umfási.t
A Father ......................................................... Bao.

A Mother .........................................................
(Uhma.
(Kunina.
(Njoko.
Paternal Grandfather .......................................... Injánja.$
Maternal Grandfather ........................................ Ithika.||
Grandmother ................................................... Umtoáná.
A new-born Child ............................................ Bessána.
A Child, in general .......................................... Umtoáná. Î
A young Man .................................................... Indodána.
A young Girl ..................................................... Kakasána.
A Virgin .......................................................... Toombi.
A pregnant Woman ........................................... Umi thi.
A barren Woman .............................................. U'mo oló.
An elder Brother ............................................. U'mkíuch.**
Younger Brother ............................................. Omnináwe.††
Sister .............................................................. Udédá, or Dadédá.
Nephew, Brother's Son ................................... Umánáko.
Niece ............................................................ Umsláwe.

* The plurals and the collectives are formed by doubling a syllable, commonly the first, probably from analogy, with the repetitions of the verbs mentioned above.
† Asi is universally a feminine termination. Among those Caffre tribes who have the ʀ, instead of asi its Barry.
‡ These five words for mother were given us at different times, and by different persons, but the two first seem most in use.
§ Here again it must be observed, that the j in German is pronounced like the English y, so that an English writer would probably have written this word Inganga.—Translator.
|| The reader is requested here to recollect the meaning of the numeral over the syllables as given above. It is also to be observed, that as the Germans drop the ʀ wherever the _th_ come together, this word should probably be pronounced Ihka.—Translator.
†† _Ara_ is the diminutive termination. Umtoáná signifies really a little man.
** By ch and _k_ I mean to express two different sounds of the _k_, the first of which comes nearly to the sound of the _c_; they cannot be more properly exemplified than by the German words_leer, and Lehren._ There is the same difference as in French between _ch_ and _s_; as in _pier, cet, beauté_; the final letter in each of the latter words having exactly the sound which I have represented by _ch_.
†† The _s_ in German is pronounced like the English _z_, so that we must, according to this rule, probably substitute the _v_ in pronouncing all words where we find the _s_.—Translator.
APPENDIX.

Cousin ........................................... U-čh tu.
Uncle ........................................... Ba olumi.
Aunt ........................................... Ma olumi.

Limbs and Parts of the Human Body.

The Head ........................................... Um klo go.
The Hair ........................................... In uccle.
The Forehead ...................................... I w u h n s i.
The Temples ....................................... Is ńlaw ū n u.
The Cheeks ........................................... Is ib e e l e.
The Jaw ........................................... K a n du ih du.
The Eye ........................................... A me e s j o.
The Eye-lashes ................................... A m m a s s i.
The Ear ........................................... E c l e h b e, or S i n z e h b e.
The Nose .......................................... P o o m l u, or U m p o o m l u.
The Mouth ......................................... M l o o m u, or U m l o o m u.
The Tongue ....................................... M l u m e.
A Tooth ........................................... S s i h n j u.
The Teeth .......................................... A m m a s s i h n j u.
The Lips ........................................... L e e b e.
The Chin .......................................... I s i l ō ē.
The Beard ......................................... I n d ō ē.
The Neck .......................................... I n t a m o.
The Windpipe ................................... U m k a l a.
The Breast ....................................... I s i f u b a.
The Breasts of a Woman ....................... I b e e l e.
The Shoulder-blade .............................. I g a l a b a.
The Back ......................................... U m s l a t t n a.

* These two words are derived from Bao and Mao, Father and Mother.
+ Where the oo occurs, it is intended to represent a sound similar to the French au; the o may be sounded like the ou in the English word "throat."
† These words are given as a specimen of the effect of the m, which is often pronounced um, introduced before a word beginning with a consonant, as noticed above. It is to be observed that the augmentative m commonly precedes words beginning with a labial letter, whereas n precedes the dental ones. Before g, s, and s, both sounds are equally used.
§ The word Amma, as here used, always represents a collective idea: thus Ammakoośina is the whole nation of the Koosas; Tumblae is a gut, Amma-thumbe the whole intestines.
|| The o at the end of this word is half sunk or suppressed, and in the Caffre pronunciation is neither long or accented, but appears little more than a sort of modulation of the e.
APPENDIX.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The Belly</th>
<th>Ossiesso</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Arm</td>
<td>Umkono</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Elbow</td>
<td>Kunehha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Hand</td>
<td>Isanga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Finger</td>
<td>Omnu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Fingers</td>
<td>Imintu *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Thumb</td>
<td>Isithunha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Nail</td>
<td>Insipu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Hip-bone</td>
<td>Ingala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Thigh</td>
<td>Umlensi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Knee</td>
<td>Idoolo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Ankle-bone</td>
<td>Ukong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Knuckle</td>
<td>Okweele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Foot</td>
<td>Jénjáo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Heel</td>
<td>Istheende</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Toe</td>
<td>Osowane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Toes</td>
<td>Ammasowane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Great-toe</td>
<td>Ubonsí, or Ithubjénjáó</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Thumb of the Foot.

Names of Beasts.†

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Game, or wild Animals in general</th>
<th>Sammakáti</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A Baboon. (Cynocephalus Ursinus)</td>
<td>Imfeene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green Ape. (Cercopithecus Glauces)</td>
<td>Imkáo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lion</td>
<td>Guinjáma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panther. (Felis Pardus)</td>
<td>Ingwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leopard. (Felis Jubata) ‡</td>
<td>Ilosí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wild Cat. (Felis)</td>
<td>Booldá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyena. (Hyæna Croenta)</td>
<td>Unngjúka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jackal. (Canis mesomelas)</td>
<td>Pungnutjó</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Notwithstanding all the trouble I have taken, I have not been able to discover a determined rule for the formation of the plural. As I have observed in a former note, many plurals are formed by repeating the first syllable of the singular twice over; and Amma expresses a collective, but in the instance before us of the fingers, we do not find the plural formed in either way.

† I hope to render a trifling service to naturalists who may hereafter travel over South ern Africa, in giving here a list of names of the animals that inhabit the Caffre country, according to what they are called by the natives, with those assigned them in the scientific classification.

‡ Not the leopard of the system which is comprehended under Felis pardinus, but what the colonists call Luipaard.
APPENDIX.

Dog.  (Canis familiaris)  
Bitch  
Red Weasel.  (Viverra Caffra)  
Honey Badger.  (Gulo melilocus)  
Pole-cat.  (Mustela Zorilla)  
Civet-cat.  (Viverra Civetta)  
Elephant  
Rhinoceros.  
River-horse.  (Hippopotamos)  
Horned Cattle in general  
A Bull  
A Cow  
An Ox  
Cattle without Horns  
A Calf  
A young Calf  
Lean Cattle  
Fat Cattle  
Buffalo.  (Bos Cafer)  
Eland.  (Antilope ores)  
Blue-deer.  (Antilope lenophæa)  
Wood-deer.  (Antilope sylvatica)  
Roebuck.  (Antilope cinerea)  
Reed-deer.  (Antilope syring)  
Red Roebuck, probably new  
Mountain Antelope.  (Antilope pygarga)  
The Gazelle, the Duiker.  (Antilope græmisi)  
The small Antelope, the Oribi,  (Antilope pygmaæ)  
A Ram  
An Ewe  
A Wether  

* With regard to the different species of Viverra in Southern Africa great errors seem to exist, which, however, cannot here be set right.

† Futa’si. This fat: also butter.
‡ These, probably, the name of Empoplios, given to this animal by some writers.
§ According to the observations of Vander Kemp, and of some other zoologists, the blue-deer, which is now scarcely to be seen within the boundaries of the colony, still abounds in the Caffre country.
¶ The name of the deer differs only from that of the reed-deer by the aspiration of the first syllable. In pronouncing the latter phahnsi care must be taken to give the aspirate to the h, not to pronounce the word as if it began with f.
APPENDIX.

A Lamb ............................................. Itholelimifu.
A Goat ............................................... Imbuhri.
A Quagga ........................................... Quagga.
The Zebra ........................................... Daau.*
A Horse ............................................... Haassi.
A Hog ............................................... Ihaagwu.
A Wild-boar. (Sus aethiopicus) ................. Guluhwe, Inguluhbe.
The Ant-bear. (Orctoperus capensis) .............. Inyagu.
A Hedge-hog. (Hystricristata) ..................... Innacenda.
A Mole. (Georychus capensis) ..................... Inthusko.
A Mouse ............................................. Impuku.
A Seal. (Phoca vitulina) ........................... Ingusha.
A Whale. (Physeter macrocephalus) ............... Umneenga.

Names of Birds.

A Bird ............................................. Intaka.
A Cock ............................................ Kukuduna.
A Hen .............................................. Kukukasi. +
A Pheasant. (Phasianus gallus) ................... Kukukwinjane.
The Vulture. (Vultur peronopterus) ............... Kalanga.
The Falcon. (Falco parasitus) ..................... Umouwas;
The Ostrich ......................................... Inngiba.
The Black Crow. (Corvus Afer) ................... Kwawa.
Jackdaw. (Corvus albicollis) ..................... Ithboguhlui.
Parrot .............................................. Koneenc.
Luri. (Corythaix Persa) .......................... Guluhwi.
The Honey-cuckoo. (Cuculus indicator) † ........ Intaka buhs.
A Crane ............................................ Jenndowe.
The yellow crested Heron ......................... Heem.
The wild Peacock .................................. Zeeme.
A Partridge ........................................ Isfangu.
A Duck ............................................. Dada.

* The zebra is called by this name in almost all the Hottentot dialects.
† At the time of the first Portuguese discoveries in Southern Africa, the Caffres had tame fowls.
‡ This bird lives chiefly upon wild honey. He seeks out the bees' nests, and gives notice when he has found one, by a cry of tscherr tscherr, which indicates to the inhabitants that a nest is near; thence his name of Indicator.
APPENDIX.

Names of Reptiles, Fish, Insects, &c. *

A Tortoise ........................................... Inguhlo.
A Frog ............................................... Izeele.
A Toad ............................................... Gongode.
The Leguan ........................................... Taam.
The Salamander ...................................... Ukhuchu.

Three different sorts of Lizards

A Serpent in general .............................. Njóka.
The grey Wood Snake ............................. Naamba.
The yellow striped Snake ......................... Nuhsu.†
The green Water Snake ........................... Khaandi.
The large Pof-adder ............................... Ichamba.
The Mountain-adder ............................... Inthango.
The Cobra-capella ................................. Phimpi.
The four-footed Snake ‡ ......................... Kabeh.
Fish in general ..................................... Tlaansi.
A Lobster ........................................... Inkála.
A Fly ................................................ Upunkáne.
An Ant ............................................... Bovani.
A Worm that bites or stings .................... Isibongu.
A large green Fly into which this Worm changes ... Sbáo.
A Worm which is probably the Larve of a Phryganea,
or something of that kind ........................... Tuhnatsjana.
A Bee ............................................... Injuhssi.
A Louse ............................................. Jentowala.
A Flea ............................................... Jentowakuhmba.
A Butterfly ........................................ Inslaguhs.
A Scorpion .......................................... Duudoání.

* I follow here entirely the names given me by Vander Kemp; it would be very difficult to ascertain the proper scientific names.
† This is the snake mentioned in Chap. 24th, which we found while we were encamped in the Caffre country waiting for Gcika.
‡ Perhaps the coluber sauroida mentioned by Nernich in his Lexicon der Naturgeschichte, as a snake having much resemblance to a lizard.—TRANSLATOR.
APPENDIX.

Parts of Animals.

A Horn ........................................ P'ho ndo.
An Elephant's Tusk .......................... P'hondo ung lövo.
Hair ........................................... P'öja.
The Skin of a Beast .......................... Isikhumba.
Feathers ..................................... Insiba.
Tail-feathers ................................. Itsjoba.
The Tail of a Bird or Quadruped ............ Umsila.
The Wing Feathers ............................. Usiba.
Flesh ......................................... Jamma, or Injamma.
A Joint ........................................ Thaambo.
A Marrow-bone ............................... Um mongo.
The Lungs ...................................... Ip'hunga.
The Breath ..................................... Upefuhmla.
The Heart ...................................... Ip'hápü.
The Stomach ................................... Luhssu.
The Kidneys ................................... Sinso.
The Liver ...................................... Isbihndi.
The Intestines ................................. A mma thumba.
Ox-dung ....................................... Pulongo.
The Bladder ................................... Isihnja.
An Egg ......................................... Kanda.
Milk ........................................... Anna assi.
Fresh Milk ................................... Lubihshi.
Sour Milk ..................................... Khaka.
Butter, or Fat ................................. Futa.
Honey ......................................... Obuhssi.

Names of Trees and Plants.

A Tree ......................................... Im mihti.
The Cripple Tree. (Protea conocarpa) ...... In tsassa.
A tall Tree, with Fruit resembling Plums, perhaps the Zizyphus mucronatus ............... Ing onja.
The large Thorn .............................. Ummuhunga.
Another sort of Thorn, both species of Acacia ... Immieenga.
The Cat-Thorn ................................. Um kacocka.
A sort of Cassia. (Schotia speciosa) ........ In gaam.
Hassagai-Tree.  (*Curtisia faginea*)  I n s l a k u s j á n e.

Monkey's-Cord.  (*Cynanchum obtusifolium*)  L u h s i.

A Gourd  P u h s i.

The Calebash, or Bottle-Gourd.  (*Cucurbita lagenaria*)  L i s e e l ó a.

The Caffre Water-melon  I t h a n g a.

The Caffre Millet.  (*Holeus Sorghum*)  E e m a s o m b a.

The Straw of the Millet  S e h l e.

An Aloë  I k h á l a.

The Plant they use for Tobacco  I t h ú b a.

A large Reed  I n g ó n g ó l o.

A sort of Sugar-cane  J e e n f e.

A Plant which the Caffres use as a sort of Spoon*  U m p h ā m b o.

A certain Root eaten by the Caffres  N o n g o.

Grass  I n g b á, T ī j a n i, U h t j á n u.

Rushes  I m m i h s i.

A Mushroom  K o á n e.

Wood  K u h n i.

Small Wood for Firing  T s a a s s a.

Ashes  U t h ú t u.

A Leaf  I n g a b i.

The Bark  K o s a.

The Seed  B e e u.

Gum  I n s l a k a.

Rosin  T i n a.

---

**Things relating to the Earth and the Heavens.**

Clayey Earth  U m d ó h n g e

Sand  T l a b a t i.

Copper  B a n g á l a.

Brass  Z u m b i t s l ō p e.

Iron  Z u m b i l i n j á m e.

Stone  I l i è t ī j ē h.

---

* Albe'ti gives the following description of this plant, and the use made of it: It has a flat stem, about an inch broad and two lines thick, with fibres woven very hard together. The stem is cut off in the broadest part, and beat with a stone, till the fibres separate, and make a sort of brush; this is dipped in the milk, and conveys a good deal at a time to the mouth. They also use muscle-shells as spoons. The Beetjuans, who are farther advanced in civilization than the Koossas, cut spoons in the form of ours very tolerably out of acacia wood.
APPENDIX.

Heown Stone .................................................. Bongótoa.
A rounded Top of a Mountain ................................. Intába.
A Mountain terminating in a Ridge at the Top .......... Mangó.
Jagged Pieces of Rock ....................................... Iliwa.
A steep, or nearly perpendicular Rock .................... Udonga.
White Ant Heaps ............................................. Siduhla.
A Cleft, or Gulley in a Rock ................................. Umfuula.
A Valley ....................................................... Kheebi.
Earth, Terra Firma ........................................... Umsíaba.
Sea .............................................................. Loaanse.
The Foam of the Sea ........................................... Amása.
A River ........................................................ Umlaambo.
A Ford for passing a River ................................... Swu ku.
Water ........................................................... Ammaansì.
Fire ............................................................. Umlito.
Flame .......................................................... Furtha.
Smoke .......................................................... Uhmisi.
Shade ........................................................... Umthunsi.
The Sun ........................................................ Lelanga, or Ilanga.
The Moon ....................................................... Jujanga.
The Stars ....................................................... Kwinkweies.
The Evening Star .............................................. Ngaandi.
The Morning Star .............................................. Ikwees.
The Seven Stars ................................................. Islimeela.
Night .......................................................... Upsuheh.
Day .................................................................... Imine.
Morning ........................................................ Gomso.
Evening ......................................................... Kwakuhísu.
The Heavens ...................................................... Isuhlu.
A Cloud .......................................................... Ammáfu.
Thunder .......................................................... Laduduhma.
Lightning ........................................................ Abanceka.
Rain ............................................................. Infuhla.
A Rainbow ....................................................... Umjama.
Snow ............................................................ Seele.
Rime, Hoar-Frost ............................................. Inkolosâne.
Fog ............................................................... Inkuhugo.
Wind ............................................................ Moja.
Drought ......................................................... Khomehle.
APPENDIX.

The Dwelling-Place, Household Furniture, &c.

The Village, the Kraal ......................... Ikhája, or Umslaante.
A House, or Hut ................................. Insíuha.
The Cattle Fold .................................. U'thango.
A Door ............................................ Umkango.
A Window ........................................ Isikhóba.
The centre Post of the Hut ........................ Isitsikhóba.
The Side Poles ................................... Tonga.
The Mats for sleeping upon ....................... Ukhukó.
A Mat for eating upon .......................... Isitwewe.
The earthen Pot for keeping their Liquor ........ Tsjała.
Any other Kind of earthen Pot ................... Imbisa.
The Cover of the Pot ............................ Isikitwe.
A Bottle Gourd .................................. Kokombi.
The Shell of other sort of Gourds ................ Indehebe.
A Milk Basket ................................. Sihtsja, or T'shuhngi.
An Axe ........................................... Zimbi.
A Knife ......................................... Tsjechmi.
A Case for a Knife .............................. Isithsjeetsja.
A Wooden Spade ................................ Slakhulo.
A Spoon ......................................... Igabbehka.
A Brush Spoon ................................... Usmitonsa.
A Tortoise-shell Box ............................ Umkëeke.
A Needle, or Bodkin ............................. Silanda.
A Bag ........................................... Innóhu.
The Sticks for striking Fire ..................... Veethe.
A Looking-Glass ................................ Nádi.
Money ........................................... Mali.
The Hottentot Gorrah, a Musical Instrument .... Ihádi.
A small Reed Pipe .............................. Uombaandi.
A Hassagai ...................................... Umkhonto.
A Hassagai with a quadrangular Shaft ......... Isagga.

* A word learnt from the Hottentots. When they first saw the Europeans read, they called the book by the same word Nádi, adding cthétha; that is to say, a speaking looking-glass. They have since distinguished a looking-glass by the addition of a'hangeela, which signifies for looking into.

† This is the same as the Persian word for money. The Koossas, however, had the word from the Hottentots, by whom it is called Mali.
APPENDIX.

A Handful of Hassagais ............. Siggále.
A Kirri ................................ Indúku.
The Bogesman's Bow .................. Sipêeta.
The Bowstring, made of Sinews ........ Ummuht'á.
An Arrow .............................. Umtólo.
The Shaft of the Arrow ............... Udihsa.
The Point of the Arrow ............... Ingahla.
A Gun .................................. Mpuh.

Articles of Cloathing, and Food.

A Mantle of Ox Hide ................. Inguhbo.
A Mantle of a Wild Animal's Skin .. Uneebë.
A Woman's under Garment .......... Inkjö.
A Woman's Head-Dress .............. Ngonsë.
A Shoe, a Sandal ...................... Jetangwo.
Metal Bracelets ...................... Uhskölo.
Ivory Bracelets ...................... Khaga.
Finger or Toe Rings ................. Pseesana.
Joints of Animals worn as Ornaments .. Lubeengo.
Beads .................................. Igaláka.
Victuals .............................. Kuhlsa.
Bread .................................. Isonka.
Cooked Millet ........................ Kóbi.
Salt .................................... Tjua.
Millet Wine ........................... Inguhja.
The weaker Liquor from the Millet . Tjalōa.
Millet Vinegar ......................... Tjala.

Proper Names, Titles, &c.

A Man of their own Country ........... Koossa, or Kaussa. *
A Woman of their own Country .......... Koossakási, or Kaussakási.

* Pronounced so, as in some sort to imitate the report of a gun.
+ It must be observed, that the au in German is sounded much like the English or, so that an Englishman would probably have written Kowssa rather than Kaussa.—TRANSLATOR.
### APPENDIX

A Hottentot ........................................... *Umlaød*
A Bosjesman .......................................... *Umlöød, or Batöa*
A Namaqua ............................................. *Damma*
Namaqualand ........................................... *Dammeene*
A White Man, a Colonist .............................. *Umluhungo*
The King, the Lord .................................... *Inkossi*
The Queen ............................................... *Inkosakasi*
A Servant .............................................. *Igosso*
An Enchanter, a Magician ............................. *Geicha*
An Enchantress, a female Magician .................. *Geichakasi*
A Friend ............................................... *Umsilobo*
A Comrade ............................................. *Vandini*
An Enemy ............................................... *Imindi*
A Thief ................................................ *Indefajo*
A Rascal ............................................... *Gwiga*

### Diseases

Sickness, Pain ........................................... *Silónda*
A Fever ................................................ *Geisakwe*
An Eruption ............................................ *Ukweekwe*
The Small-Pox .......................................... *Ingagáka*
Pimples ................................................ *Int'húba*
A Cough ................................................ *Kofeela*
Flatulence ............................................. *Suhsa*
Hunger ................................................... *Lamba*

### Adjectives

Handsome .............................................. *Jenkle*
Strong ................................................. *Ammaansla*
Weak .................................................... *Thatháka*
Sick .................................................... *Fah*
Alive, Living ........................................... *Lichihse*
Dead ..................................................... *Puhla*
Pleased .................................................. *Tsala*

* It remains to be proved hereafter, whether by this name is to be understood the Dammaras, of whom very little is at present known; or whether it is not intended by this name to describe all the tribes of Hottentots on the western coast, that being the part where the Namaquaos inhabit.*
APPENDIX:

Afflicted ........................................ Dammile.
Obedient ........................................ Kováó.
Disobedient ....................................... Akosa.
Sensible, Spirited ................................. Wimba.
Slothful ........................................... Keena.
Drunken ........................................... Jangeela.
Hungry ............................................. Lambole.
Aged ................................................ Indala.
Young ............................................... Ikhoboka.
Rich ................................................... Fih.
Crooked, in action, unjust ....................... Guelna.
Upright, in action, just ......................... Longa.
Upright, sincere ................................. Longile.
True ................................................... Janísa.
False ............................................... Khökandile.
Good ............................................... Kajekke.
Bad ................................................... Kuhmba.
Angry ............................................... Kuhmbile.
Sweet ............................................... M'maandi.
Sour ................................................... Immuhnje, or Muhng.
Sharp ............................................... Ameer.
Corrupt, Putrid ................................. Anuka.
Warm ............................................... Sjuh, or Suhsu.
Hot .................................................... Tsjibu.
Cold ................................................... Trabba, or Ingihle.
Cold Weather ....................................... Godoole.
Large ............................................... Kuhlu.
Small ............................................... Intoanna.
Full ....................................................... Isele.
Much ................................................... Siniénzi.
Little ............................................... Tuani.
Dark, with relation to Colour .................. Kuhssúma.
Light, with relation to Colour ................... Khoanja.
White ................................................... Tslope.
Black ................................................... Linjáme.
Red ..................................................... Pongwu.
Yellow ............................................... Libiklu.
Green ............................................... Luhsasossa.
Blue ................................................... Ingwíwu.
Grey ..................................................... Ichoana.
APPENDIX.

Verbs. *

To give .................................................. Pah, Nika, or Eetha.
To take .................................................. Thabata.
To buy, to exchange ................................. Theenka.
To pay .................................................. Sana.
To keep .................................................. Beeka.
To conceal .............................................. Fakka.
To seek to obtain any thing, to beg ............... Fuhna.
To find .................................................. Fumana.
To will .................................................. Whma.
To keep .................................................. Beeka.
To conceal .............................................. Fakka.
To seek to obtain any thing, to beg ............... Fuhna.
To find .................................................. Fumana.
To will .................................................. Whma.
To think .................................................. Bhula.
To believe .............................................. Sanga, or Khoola.
To trust, to have confidence in ...................... Dschla.
To love .................................................. Thanda.
To hate .................................................. Sondoa.
To hope .................................................. Ingana.
To praise ............................................... Koota.
To lie. To speak untruth .............................. Khoikiessa. †.
To swear ............................................... Fuhnga.
To deal justly ......................................... Longiessa.
To learn ............................................... Funda.
To be taught .......................................... Fundessa.
To see .................................................. Pona.
To point to .............................................. Khangela.
To hear .................................................. Kova.

* All verbs end in a; most of them, particularly the purely active, are radical, and commonly of only two syllables. The derivatives have more syllables, ending in ana, ela, or essa. The neuters are for the most part the same as the adjectives from which they are derived, as Lamba, hunger, Lamba, to be hungry,—Kuhmba, bad Kuhmba, to be wicked,—Tsala, pleasing, Tsala, to be pleased. It is the being preceded by a pronoun which distinguishes the verb; the intermediate auxiliary verb is, however, not spoken; it is only understood.

† Among these, Nika has a very peculiar signification. It is partly used in the same sense as the other two, but sometimes, according to what accompanies it, signifies to permit a thing to be given to you. As, for example, with the first person, Di Nika is sometimes to be understood not I give, but give me; and with the second person future, O Nika is not to be understood thou shalt give, but thou shalt be given, that is, something shall be given to thee.

‡ These examples, as well as some others, shew the manner of forming the derivatives. Khoka is at the same time a lie, an untruth; and to lie, to tell untruths. Khokandle signifies false. Khokiessa is properly, according to Vander Kemp, to be habituated to framing lies. Longa is upright; relating to action, just. Longile is sincere; Longiessa, to deal justly, to be just in our dealings.
APPENDIX.

To understand ........................................ Deewa.
To speak .............................................. T'heeta.
To call .................................................. P'his'a.
To count, to reckon ................................. Bal'a.
To sigh .................................................. P'huhmla.
To blow ................................................ Wuth'ela.
To be hot ................................................ Igala.
To sweat ............................................... Pita.
To dream ............................................... T'honga.
To weep ............................................... Lila.
To sleep ............................................... Lala.
To cut .................................................. Siga.
To shiver, to break to shivers .................. T'janda.
To bind ................................................ E'eba.
To hack with an axe ............................... Gaula.
To dig ................................................ Limm'a.
To plant ............................................... Bina.
To sow Seeds in the Ground ..................... T'jala.
To cook ............................................... Peeka.
To sew with a Needle ............................. Thuhng'a.
To milk ................................................ Singa.
To make, applied to Substances ............... E'ensa.
To loosen any thing that is tight bound .... Geima.
To cover, applied to sensible Objects ......... Winga.
To close up .......................................... Fala.
To unclose, to loosen, to set at Liberty ...... Fula.
To open, to unfold ................................ Kila.
To fold together ................................... Sung'a.
To break any thing to pieces .................. P'hula.
To smear over any thing ......................... T'hambiessa.
To work Iron ......................................... K'handa.
To go hunting ........................................ Singeela.
To snare .............................................. Amb'a.
To hold fast .......................................... P'hamba.
To strike .............................................. Peeta.
To thrust ............................................. K'haba.
To kill ................................................ Pulaba.
To die .................................................. Fila.
To fight ............................................... Ilsa.
To throw the Hassagai ......................... Bieensa.
To run .................................................. Dsjidima.
To swim .............................................. Slamba, or Dad'a.
APPENDIX.

To dance ........................................... Du da.
To go ............................................... Ha mba.
To sit ............................................... Tsíala.
To rise up ......................................... Vuka.
To come ............................................. Issa.
To stay, to remain with .............................. Imáa.
To go on a Journey ................................... Kúduka.
To carry any thing away .............................. Múkiéssa.
To bring in ......................................... Gi nuiéssa.
To empty ........................................... Su hssa.
To hear ............................................. Peesa.
To eat ............................................... Jesíá.
To drink, or to be drunk ............................. Tseela.
To suck up ......................................... Ola anja.
To entertain any one as his Host ...................... P'huka.
To smock with a Pipe ................................ Sjáila.
To smock, as the Fire does .......................... M'muhsa.
To marry ............................................ Msee ka.
It rains ............................................... Fula.
It thunders ......................................... Du duhma.

Pronouns.

I ............................................................. Mína, or Múna.
Thou .................................................... Öcna.
He ....................................................... Luhmtó.
We ....................................................... T'ína.
Ye, or You ............................................ Nína, or Níni.
They ..................................................... Luhmtó.*

These personal pronouns are only used when it is intended to point out the person with
particular emphasis. In the common mode of speaking, the personal pronouns used with the
verbs are different, and are changed according to the time intended to be expressed, instead of
the verbs changing by inflexions, as the following table will shew:

* This word, for the third person, comes apparently from Uhmtó, a man; and the L stands, as it were, in
the place of the demonstrative article, as if to say, this man, these men.
APPENDIX.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRESENT</th>
<th>PAST</th>
<th>FUTURE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Dia</td>
<td>Di, or Indi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thou</td>
<td>Uja</td>
<td>Ube</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>Ebe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>Sija</td>
<td>Sibe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ye</td>
<td>Nija</td>
<td>Nibe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>Paja</td>
<td>Ebe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The regularity and consequence in the formation of these pronouns of time is well worthy of remark. The characteristic for the distinction of the person lies in the consonant; as, for example, the first person singular in all begins with D; the first person plural in S. N distinguishes the second person, B or P the third. On the contrary, the time seems pointed out by the vowel: A for the present, E for the past, and O for the future. Certainly a very simple and happy combination. This form of personal pronouns supersedes, in the language of the Koossas, the use of auxiliary verbs, of which they have none. In the language of the Beetjuans, which differs in some respects from that of the Koossas, there are auxiliary verbs, and the only inflexions in verbs are formed by them. Here and there also, in the Koosa language, Di ku, I go, occurs as an auxiliary in the formation of the future. For the rest, the pronouns are sometimes placed before, sometimes after the verb: I could not, however, make out whether there was any fixed rule for doing this, or whether the application is wholly arbitrary.

Mine ............... Eaam.
Thine .................. Saam, Ako, or Lako.
His ....................... Khaluhté. *
Ours ................... Aéthu.
Yours and theirs, the same as .... Thine and his.

These possessive pronouns are joined to substantives; as, for example, Umfas' eaam, my wife; Inkomo lako, thy ox; Inslih-áethu, his house; Le, Lo, or Lento, is a sort of article which is sometimes placed before substantives, but is also used as a demonstrative pronoun; as, for example:

What is that? ................................ Ni-lé? or Intoni-lo?
This, that ..................................... Lehs'.
Who, which .................................. Bani, Kobani.
What ................................. Ni, or Inina.
These, which ............................... I-i.

* That is to say, to this man, or for this man.
APPENDIX.

This way which goes directly out..................... Isdeke, i longilejo, i enkile.
None................................................. Ak'hu.
No one, nobody ................................... Ak'hu-u-uhmtü.

Prepositions.

For .................................................. K'ha.
To .................................................. A u.
Speak to him...................................... Theta au lé.
Of, or from ......................................... Vel, vela.
By ....................................................... Khan.
Above ............................................. Peesuhlo.
Underneath .............................. Paaëntsì.
Within ........................................... Ginna, Kuhse.
Deep in ............................................. Lombo
Deep in the water ............................ Lombo-n-amaassi.
Without .......................................... Ak-haku.
With ................................................... Né, na, n'.

Ne', or n', are, properly speaking, only used to join together two substantives; as, Induda-n-Umfusi, husband and wife; Induda-n-Indja-kasi, a dog and bitch; Phuhga-nin-am-muaz, a basket with milk.

Adverbs.

To-day ............................................. Namsìa.
To-morrow ......................................... Gomso.
The day after to-morrow ....................... Gomso-omnje.
Yesterday evening .............................. Isöli.
This evening ...................................... Pesöli.
Daily ................................................ Umśla-jonke.
Now ..................................................... Kaloko.
Never ................................................ Pagati.
Where .................................................. Epi, or opu.
There .................................................. Appa.
Wherein ............................................. Phína.
Whither ............................................. Vel-Aphína.
Therewith .......................................... Appája.
Thither ............................................. Vel-appája.
Here ..................................................... Lindajo.
Hither ................................................ Najo.
How ..................................................... Sin.
APPENDIX.

How large? ........................................ Sin-k'ha ka.
How much? .......................................... Singa.
So much ........................................... Sinjens-jé.
So as ................................................... Gansjé.
As hot as fire ...................................... Tsibugansjé-umlilo.
A little .............................................. Innáni, or in kháni.
Slow, low, (in speaking) still, quiet ........... Gósli.
Quick, loud, harsh ................................ Konce ne.
Wherefore? .......................................... Kkéh, or Unani.
Yes ..................................................... Hé, ewé, or ewah.
No ....................................................... Haai.
Not ..................................................... Aikó, or an.
That is far off ..................................... Eonaantó.
Why ..................................................... Ma.
But ...................................................... Uh.

Interjections.

Mere exclamations, as O, ah ...................... Wa.
To express astonishment .......................... U, a n.
To express disapprobation ........................ Oo i h.
The oath commonly used ............................ Non.
By Chachabé ........................................ N on Chachabé.*

Numerals.

One ................................................... Ihnje.
Two ................................................... Mabini, or Sombini.
Three ................................................. Mat'hatu.
Four ................................................... Mani.
Five ................................................... Maslanu.
Six ................................................... Sikana.
Seven .................................................. Sit'handatu.
Eight ..................................................
Nine ................................................... T'huomme.
Ten ................................................... Sjúme.

* See page 254.
APPENDIX.

When a Koossa would express a number, he commonly, as he speaks the numeral, at the same time raises the like number of fingers. Sometimes, however, the numeral is not mentioned; the action of raising the fingers only is used. Many, as has been already mentioned, cannot even name the numerals. Vander Kemp, notwithstanding the length of time he remained among them, never could learn any term for eight; and among the Beetjuans I could not learn any words for the numbers five and nine: much less have they the means of expressing higher numbers, as twenty, forty, a hundred. Mr. Barrow, indeed, gives them, but he appears to have been deceived by his interpreter, for none among the Caffres, of whom we enquired how they called eleven, twelve, twenty, &c. seemed at all able to comprehend what was meant.

Specimens of their Modes of speaking.

From where.
I come from Guakubi .................. Di vela Guakubi.  
I from Guakubi.
What is your name? .................. Nigma lako.  
What name thine.
I am a Colonist .................. Mina Umluhngo.  
I Colonist.
Where is thy wife? .................. Epi-n-Umfasi lake.  
Where Wife thine.
I have no wife .................. Aiko-n-Umfasi.  
No Wife.
Let us sit down .................. Masi-tslale.  
Why we sit.
I came on horseback .................. Di I, isa come, né with haassi, horse.
I come from the wood .................. Divelé slat’hina.  
Give me milk to drink .............. Dinike dit’sel ammaas.  
I give I drink milk.
Give me bread .................. Dipesonka.  
I give bread.
Milk is in the basket .................. Ammaas ase t’huhungéne.  
Corn is in the bag .................. Eemasomba as innowene.  
The milk is thick .................. Ammaas aruthile.  
I am going to milk .................. Dia kusinga.  
Are you going to milk? .............. Uja kusingana.  
Cut me a piece of meat .............. Di segeel’ injamma.
APPENDIX.

Roast it for me .......................... Do uschla.
Cook it for me ........................... Do p'bekehlle.
The fire does not burn ....................... A-nhtsje umlilo.
The hut is on fire ......................... Ins'iuh i a-ehtsja.
The fire smokes ........................... Umlilo uoms'i.
The fire goes out ........................ Umlilo ugnile.
Stir up the fire ......................... Kwase la umlilo.
The food is hot .......................... Ukuhla usjus'u.
The food is cold ........................ Ukuhla ku ph'ole.
The food is salt ........................ Ukuhla s'ufa t'ja.
I must speak to thee ..................... Di sa u kutjeela.
Do you not hear? ........................ Aik'hova.
I do not understand .................... An diwa.
Do you take it? ........................ Uje soana.
I do not comprehend it ................ Au di kaas.
Speak loud, that I may understand ... T'heeta ka khakulu di es'olh
I understand it ........................ Di sihle.
What tidings do you bring? ............ Usako t'hi nina.
The enemy comes ......................... Jesa Impi.
Let us go ................................ Hamba si hamb'e.

Go we go.
Run quick ................................. Dsjidima koneene.
Go home ................................ Ku duka.
I am weary ................................ Di dini we.
I will strike thee ....................... Dia ku peeta öëenna.
I go strike thee ......................... I go strike thee.
Wait upon me ............................ K'haud li énde.
Give me tobacco to smoak .............. Na di tsel it'huba.
Give I drink tobacco ................... Give I drink tobacco.
You where ................................
We live at Sjami ......................... Thin appaja Sjommi.
We there Sjommi ......................... We there Sjommi.
Have you any wife? ..................... Un Umfasina.
I have ten children ..................... Di sjume abanto anabaam
I ten people children .................. I ten people children.
The woman is very rich .................. L'umfaas'ufi ble hakubhu.
Woman rich great ........................
The day breaks .......................... Kwiaasa.
It is very early ........................ Kuhssa essa.
The sun rises ............................ Ilanga liésa.
It breaks through ....................... Lia phuma.
APPENDIX.

It is windy to-day .......................... Uko moja namsi.ea.
The sun goes down .......................... Lelanga zona.
The brother comes back ..................... Buja Umkilu.
He ran quick ............................... Ebe kitsimihle.
That is good ............................... Tjapi'le.
You say right .............................. Uja ti'apa.
Bind the calf fast .......................... Neeb' inkonjane.
The cow has calved ........................... Iseele inkomor.
The sheep is come home ..................... Isimmfusza kuduka.
The little calf is gone ....................... Inkonjane siarikile.
Shall you kill an ox? ...................... Kheela oenna Kheelani?
I will not ................................. An di vuume, or an di k'baandi.
The dog has bit me .......................... Indiumihle inzja.
I (past) bitten dog .......................... Iwzja le i lumajo do kupulaba.
Dog that bites I (future) kill .......... Iwzja le i lumajo do kupulaba.
Let us now rise ............................. Ma si vuka kaloko.
I am ready ................................. Di k'wele.
I have not enough ........................... An di ka sluti.
It will rain ................................. Eaku fula.
Let us go over the ford ................... Masuele iswuka.
The river is full ............................ Umaaambo usele.
The river runs ............................... Umaaambo ihamba.
No, the river is empty ...................... Haai umaambo uhtsibile.
The river is still ........................... Umaaambo i ahtsibile.
A storm is coming on ....................... Lea kuse bekcele.
It thunders ............................... Usuhlu la duduhma.
Let us go home .............................. Hambane kuduka.

These little specimens will suffice to prove by accurate comparison, that in this language many affinities may be traced with the ancient ones; I must, however, confess, that here and there the combining of words is obscure to me, and particularly that I cannot wholly understand the meaning of many of the intermediate syllables. In these, the language of Southern Africa abound so much, and their sense is so little defined, being often very different in one case from what it is in another, that it cannot be attained by learning single words only, it must be sought by learning whole phrases.

But however incomplete may be this Vocabulary, and the remarks annexed to it, I yet hope that by it I may have given some insight into the degree of cultivation that exists among the Koo'sas, and smoothed the way to future researches; that I may, with respect to enquiries into the Caffre languages, as well as on many other points, have rendered myself useful to future travellers. No nation is so savage as not to see, with more favourable eyes, a foreigner who endeavours to express himself in their language; and this feeling, therefore, might be expected from the Caffres, even supposing them the most wild and untamed people upon the earth.
INDEX.

A.

Abbe, the Dane, his remarkable fate, 178.

Adler Pof, an extraordinary species of serpent, 36.

African Farms, a sort of little states within themselves, 47.

Alberti, captain, his work upon the Caffres, 249, note—His account of the dissensions among the Caffres different from Vander Kemp's, 293, note—His account of an embassy to the Caffre king, and presents made to the latter, 321, note—His negotiations with the Caffres, 328—Great confidence placed in him by the Caffres, 330—He accompanies the Commissary-general into the Caffre country, 334.

Algou-bay, description of the settlement there, 232.

Aloe, manner of preparing it, 169.

Aloe perfoliata, numbers growing together, 161.

Ammanvloaia, a tribe of Caffres, 250.

Augste's Rest, name given by the travellers to a romantic spot, 207.

Ausspanplattcn, the meaning of the word explained, 19, note—Usefulness of these places to the colonists, 21.

Author, the, his desire to visit Southern Africa, 2—He engages as tutor to the son of Governor Jansens, 3—His preparations for his journey, 16—His arrangement of plants and insects at the Teefontein, 32—He loses his way in pursuit of insects, 46—Disappointed of shooting a hippopotamus, 54—The retentive of the colonists on his power of curing diseases, 86, and 327—His visit to the muscle cave, 178—His interesting progress through the Kaffir's eelief, 190—His disappointment at searching in vain for the body of an elephant, 225—His visit to the Lead mine at Van Stadens's river, 229.

B.

Barbar's Kraal, why so called, 194.

Barrow, Mr. defectiveness of his map, 36, and note—His want of liberality in the description he gives of the African colonists, 48—He accuses the colonists wantonly of cruelty to their own, 66—His mistaken ideas concerning the Nolita lake, 198—In an error when he considers the colonists as the aggressors in the Caffre war, 200—His account of the Caffres, an exceedingly good one, 250—Mistaken in his representations with regard to the colonists of Bruinjeshooge, 300.

Batls, warm ones in the Brand-valley, 148.

Bosjesman, society of the united brethren there, 151.

Boys, along the Southern Coast of Africa, similarity of them, 201.

Beauty, extraordinary instance of it in an African girl, 176.

Berg-river, plan for making a canal from it to Saldanha-bay, 40.—Hippopotami found there, 49—Month of the river, 51—Mode in which it was passed by the travelling party, 53.

Berg-valley, a remarkable ravine there, 71.

Bethelsdorp, missionary institution there, 237.

Blaise St. Bay of, the name by which Mossel-bay was formerly known, 181.

Bokkeveld, the lower, number of sheep fed in it, 84—The country much infested by the Bosjesmans, 85.

Bosjesman woman, her hideous and disgusting appearance, 56—meaning of the word Bosjesman, ib. note—Compromise made with them by the people of the Lower Bokkeveld, 85—A visit made by two of them to the travelling party, 114—They are a distinct race from the Hottentots, 116—Description of them, 117—A remarkable instance of the hatred borne by them to the Caffres, 276—Enormities committed by them in the Bruinjeshooge, 302.

Brakfontein, a place near the Cape Town, 19.

Brand-valley, a hot spring there, 148.

Breast mountain, why so called, 92.

Brigues, a youth of that nation, 113.

Bruinjeshooge, a remote district of the colony, why so called, 359—Fit only for feeding sheep, 360—The colonists here were not the aggressors in the Caffre war, ib.

Brush, a sort of one used as a spoon by the Caffres, Appendix, 12, note.

Buys, Conrad, a colonist, extraordinary account of him, 210—Defended against being a stimulator of the Caffre war, 296—Married to Geika's mother, ib.—The chief Caffre chief refuses to make peace with their king unless Buys is dismissed from his service, 312—He comes to meet General Jansens, 318—The General insists on Geika's dismissing Buys, 326—His aversion to the English, 326—His return into the colony, 330.

C.

Caffres, the desolate state of a farm destroyed by them, 157—First rencontre of the travellers with them, 217—Their agility in throwing the hassgaai, 218—A mock fight represented by them, ib.—Their weapons, ib.—Their dance, 219—Their rush baskets, ib.—Instance of the distance at which they can hold a conversation so as to be distinctly heard, 224—Their morn-
blesome hunting parties in the colony, 230—
Origin of the name, 241, and note—Characteristics of these people, 243—Their probable origin, 245—Extent of the country, 248—
Dissension among the Caffre Chiefs, 293—
Their quarrels with the colonists, ib.—Ravages committed by them, 294—They surround General Vandeloeu, 295—Driven back by a colonist party, ib.—Their dread of the water, 307—Their dislike of the English, 328—Negociations of Captain Alberti with them, ib.—
Their eagerness to plunder the author's medicine chest, 338—An instance of modesty among the girls, 339—Manner of travelling when a horde removes, 341—A rebel horde returning, 357.

Caffre Chiefs, dissensions among them, 290—
Several of them revolt against King Geika, 292—The rebellious ones invited to a conference with General Janssens, 303—Their interview with him, 311—Articles of agreement made with them, 313—Not very willing to accept his mediation for reconciling them with Geika, 315—Their fear of returning into their own country, 329—Very desirous of living on good terms with the Christians, 331—Messengers sent by the Commissary-general to desire a meeting with them, 334—Their arrival expected in vain by him, 342—Reconciliation of some of them with Geika, 382.

Camdeboo, a desert plain, fatigue of crossing it, 365.

Cannon, astonishment excited in a Caffre by the firing of one, 308.

Cattle-places, why so called, 55.

Chambeu-river, arduous passage of it, 223—
Beautiful country on the other side, 224.

Chama, a plant used by the colonists in making soap, 124.

Chronic diseases, more prevalent in the colony than acute, 88.

Colonists, their journeys to the Cape Town, 20—
Wrongfully accused by Mr. Barrow of cruelty to their oxen, 66—In general unjustly treated by English and French travellers, 74—
Kindness shown by one to the travellers when they had lost their way, 81—The diseases to which they are principally subject, 88—
Amenity of those in the Hantam district, 93—Remarkable for never swearing or using abusive language, ib.—Disputes about the boundaries of their property, 108—Extraordinary instance of boorishness in one, 131—
The colonists remarkably temperate, 167—
Solitary and inactive life led by those of Bruintjeshoogte, 361—Character of those in Graaff-Reynett, and causes why so unamiable, 577.

Colony of the Cape of Good Hope, its distracted state when taken by the English in 1795, 4—
Lamentable state of some parts at the arrival of Governor Janssens, 302.

Colossal, a whole family remarkably so, 150.

Columns, extraordinary natural colossal ones on the mountains, 55.

Commissary-general De Mist determines to visit the distant parts of the colony, 6—
Persons accompanying him on his journey enumerated, 9—Preparations for his journey, 11—His departure, 17—His anxiety to render justice to the Hottentots, 220—He sets out to meet the rebel Caffre Chiefs, 334—But expects them in vain, 342—His efforts to establish order and prosperity in Graaff-Reynett, 378.

Commission for improving agriculture, 92.

Conga, a Caffre Chief, his rebellion against King Geika, 292—Sends to inform General Janssens that he is coming to meet him, 310—Reconciled with Geika, 382.

Corporulence, a remarkable instance of it in a young woman, 73—Another extraordinary instance of it.

Crooked, or Kromme-river, account of it, 216.

Cuculus Indicator, or Honey Cuckoo, why so called, Appendix, 9, note.

Cyclops, comparison of the premises of one of the colonists to their den, 136.

D.

Das, a little animal described, 71, and note.

Deaf and Dumb, a young man and woman born so, 131—Another remarkably deaf and dumb man, 212.

Delport and Piirani, two turbulent colonists, 371.

Delaire, Mr. J. A. appointed Commissary-general at the Cape of Good Hope, 2—His daughter resolves to accompany him on his voyage and subsequent journey, 10.

Deserters, several English ones, met by General Janssens in his journey, 318—Account of some others, 330.

Diana's bath, a romantic spot so named by the travellers, 206.

Disease most prevalent among the colonists, 88.

Dispositions, origin of those that prevailed in Graaff-Reynett, 368.

Doom-river, a night passed in the open air upon its banks by the travellers, 70.

E.

Elands, or large antelopes, hunted by the colonists, 97.

Elephants, their great affection for their young, 211—Indolent search for the body of one, 225—Manner in which a colonist was killed by one, 226.

English, impolicy of their conduct to the discontented colonists, 209—Much disliked by the Caffres, 328—How described by Buys, 56.
INDEX.

Englishman, trade carried on by one, 182.
Envoy, sent by the Governor to propose peace to the rebel Caffres, 303. — Hospitality received by them, 306.
Extraordinary instance of dexterity in killing a bird with a whip, 31.

F.
Farms, manner of fortifying them against the Caffres, 305.
Fascinating power of snakes, an instance of it, 292.
Fatiguing route of the travellers after losing their way by night, 82.
Field Commandants, their office, 109, note.
Field Cornets, their office, 87, note.
Firing guns, a compliment paid by the colonists to persons of consequence, 28. — New-years day celebrated by firing them, 213.
Fish, remarkable impressions of them in the slate-stone, 95.
Flamingos, a very large troop of them in Saldanha-bay, 41.
Flies, troublesome ones in the Rietvalley, 19. — Curious method practised in some parts of the colony of catching flies, 120.

G.
Garris-river, fine scenery about it, 173.
Geikia, named as king of the Koossa Caffres, 291. — Takes his uncle Sambhe prisoner, 292. — And releases him, ib. — Several chiefs rebel against him, ib. — His people take no part in the quarrels with the colonists, 295. — His request to the colonist Rensburg to assist him against his rebel subjects, 310. — His eager desire to meet the Governor, ib. — He sends to request of the Governor a guard to meet him, 319. — His arrival at the Governor's camp, 220. — His person described, ib. — Delighted with the European dress, 321. — Conference between him and the Governor, 323. — Articles agreed upon between them, 325. — His answer on being solicited to put Buys and Rensburg to death, 327. — He appoints a meeting with the Commissary-general, 347. — But does not keep the appointment, 352. — Afraid to come, and wishes the Commissary-general to come farther into the country, 353. — Reconciled with Jaluhsa and Conga, 382.

German mode of reckoning distances, 6, note. — Number of Germans in different parts of the colony, 202. — Easily reconciled to living in the colony, 381. — Exceedingly rejoiced to see a stranger countryman, ib. — Those settled in the colony do not associate much together, ib.
Gilbenhuis, a deaf and dumb man, 212.
God-Hope, Cape of, restored to the Dutch by the peace of Amiens, 1. — Its distracted state when taken by the English, 4. — And when restored to the Dutch, 392.
Gourd, a musical instrument made of one, 94.
Graaff-Reynett, why so called, 368. — Description of the village, ib. — Origin of the dissensions that prevailed there, ib. — New buildings directed in the village by the Commissarygeneral, 379. — Diseases more prevalent there than elsewhere, 380. — Garden of Werner there, ib. — Losses of the inhabitants in the Caffre-war, 382.
Griesbok, or grizzled-deer, 72, note.
Grootkloof, description of, 24.
Guns, large calibre of the African ones, 315.

H.
Halle medicines, very much in favour with the colonists, 89.
Hautan mountain, description of it and its particular fertility, 90. — Amenity of the colonists there, 93.
Hardness of hoof acquired by the African horses, 27.
Harnessed Antelope, or Antelope scripta, described, 165 and note.
Harpischords, made by a man at the Cape Town, 168.
Hartbeestfontein, a very fertile spot for feeding sheep and cattle, 98.
Hassagai, a Caffre weapon, 218.
Helena St. Bay of, 51.
Herrenhuters, or united brethren, an excellent society of them, 151.
Hippopotami, found in the Berg-river, 49. — Decree against their being killed, ib.
Hoetes-bay, a part of Saldanha-bay, 37.
Holiday, an Englishman, desolate state of his farm from the inroads of the Caffres, 196.
Honey Cuckoo, or Indicator, account of, appendix, 9, note.
Horned-snake, the poison used by the Bosjemen for their arrows, 95.
Horses of the Cape, various kinds of them, 27. — Hardness of hoof acquired by them, ib. — Mode of refreshing them in arid parts by letting them roll, 356.
Hottentots, extremely dexterous in driving the waggons, 14. — A battalion of them raised by Captain La Sueur, 18. — Abode of them living in the colony as in their own country, 69. — Not slaves, or purchased by the colonists, 118, note. — Their extreme address in tracing animals, 121. — A philosopher Hottentot, 214. — Anxiety of General Janssens, and of the Commissary-general, to render them justice, 220. — Impolicy of employing them against the colonists, 274.
Hot-spring, one in the Brand-valley, 148.
Hunting parties of the colonists beyond the borders, objections to them, 97. — Troublesome ones of the Caffres, 238.
INDEX.

I.

Idiot, three in one family, 64.
Indicator, a bird so called, and why, appendix, 9, note.
Indigo, a plantation of, in Southern Africa, 60.
Institution of the Herrenhuters, or united brethren at Bavianskloof, 151—That of the missionary VanderKemp, near Algoa bay, 205.
Islands in Saldana-hay, 44.
Ixia and Iris, the bulbs eaten by the Hottentots, 83.

J.

Jaarsveld, J. van, of Graaff-Reynett, imprisoned, and why, 375—Rescued by the disaffected colonists, ib.
Jalaka, a Caffre chief, his rebellion against King Geika, 292—An ambassador comes from him to General Janssens at Algoa bay, 305—Reconciled with Geika, 392.
Janssens, General J. W. appointed governor of the Cape of Good-Hope, 3—Resolves to visit the distant parts of the colony, 5—His reception by a number of colonists on his way to meet the Caffre chiefs, 368—Endeavours to restore order in Graaff-Reynett, 376.

K.

Kaiman's Cleft, a very remarkable mountain pass, 190.
Kaiman's-river, erroneously so called, 180, note.
Karrao, the great desert so called, striking prospect from the mountain directly above it, 112—Description of it, 121.
Klaas Steurman, leader of a band of Hottentots, comes to meet General Janssens at Algoa bay, 303—The general visits him in his kraal, 311—His assiduity in endeavouring to establish peace with the Caffres, 315—Killed by the bursting of his gun, 305.
Kloeverdal, the place of Van Reenen, 24.
Kini, a Caffre weapon, 218.
Knives, manufacture of them among the united brethren, 155.
Komberg, a mountain, why so called, 111—Remarkable view from it, ib.
Koossas or Kwaass, a particular tribe of the Caffres described, 251—Their diseases, ib—Their proneness to superstition, 253—Education of their children, 260—Courts and marriages, 261—Infidelity in marriage, 264—Their respect for their parents and for old people, 265—Their burying, 267—Training their cattle, 268—Modes of hunting, 269—Cultivation of millet, 271—Their hospitality, 272—Their dresses, ib—Their weapons, 275—Their hatred to the Boschmans, 276—Their wars, 277—Their works of art, 279—Ludicrous calculators, 280—Their memories very strong, ib.—Not long lived, 281—Extent of the Koossas tribe, 282—Rivers of the country, 283—Climate, 284—Their government, 286—Administration of justice, 288.
Kraal, numbers of them belonging to a farm, 107—Meaning of the word, ib. note.
Kromme, or Crooked-river, account of it, 216.
Kuhnia rhinocerotis, a plant that denotes sweet fields, 63, note.

L.

Lamsickete, a species of murraion among the cattle, 49—A cow afflicted with it, 148.
Laubscher Conrad, his place at Uylekraal, 30—His extraordinary dexterity in killing a bird with his whip, 31—Jacob Laubscher's farm and patriarchal household, 47.
Lead-zeins near Van Stade's-river, 229.
Leather, mode of preparing it for cordage, 73—Great quantities tanned by the colonists, 124.
Legplants, why so called, 99.
Leguan, a very large species of Lizard, 189, note.
Lichens, many found in the muscle caves, 180—Trees extremely overgrown with them, 188.
Looeri, or Touraco, a beautiful bird, 193 and note.
Longo-kloof, a remarkable pass among the mountains, 208.
Louz, the brothers, return from their journey to receive the Commissary-general, 71.

M.

Macartney, Lord, impolitic oath enforced by him upon the colonists, 372.
Maley Slace, a remarkable instance of one living to a very great age, 50—Another remarkable instance of the kind, 168.
Mandarine Apple, a very fine species of sweet orange, 57 and note.
Matjiesgoed, a sort of rush of which mats are made, 87, note.
Meinier, the landdrost of Graaff-Reynett, deposited, 371—Restored by Lord Macartney, 372—Again superseded, 376—Solicits Geika to put Buys and Rensburg to death, 327.
Mimosas, deformed by insects, 313.
Mirage, the, seen by the travelling party, 160—and described, ib.
Missionaries, mischief done by them in Rookezand, 113—More on the same subject, 145.
Mooi-verloren, a desolate valley, 84.
Mountains, southern chain of, their advantage, 134.
Mountain Pass, a very fine one at the entrance of the Bokkeveld, 127—Another very remarkable one called the Kaiman's Cleft, 159.
Moravians, or united brethren, a society among them, 151.
INDEX.

Mossel-bay, description of it, 177.
Mossel-bay, account of it, 178.
Museum at Paris, a curious antelope sent to it by General Janssens, 317.
Music performed by slaves among the colonists, 28—A performance of it among the Hottentot Christians, 153.
Musical instrument, a remarkable one at the habituation of a Hottentot, 91.
Murder, a horrible one of a colonist's family, by his slaves and Hottentots, 100.
Murderer's hole, a place so called by the colonists, and why, 207.
Murray, an Englishman, trade carried on by him, 182.

N.
Necabaneh, an envoy from the rebel Caffre chief, Conga, comes to meet General Janssens at Algoa bay, 306—His astonishment at hearing a cannon fired, 308.
Namaquas, a man of that tribe, 70—A Namaqua partridge, 87.
Names, the same given to many different places in the colony, and why, 76, note—Names of places in Southern Africa, changed by the Dutch in planting the colony, 181.
Nurdone, a high mountain, 77.
Necessaries for travelling in Southern Africa enumerated, 11.
Neva-Lake, erroneous idea of Mr. Barrow concerning it, 198.

O.
Organ, one built in the colony, 168.
Oribi, or pygmy antelope, 219.
Ostriches, large number of them together, 110.
Ouweniqueland, one of the most fertile spots in the colony, 184.
Oxen, numbers requisite for drawing the wagons in Southern Africa, 13—Their dreadful exertions in ascending mountains, 64 and 191.

P.
Paradise, probably the original name of the valley of Zwellendam, 164.
Physician, account of one settled at Zwellendam, 181—Another at Graaff-Reynett, 379.
Piknienskloof, a mountain very difficult of ascent, 64.
Piketberg, remarkable natural columns on its summit, 55.
Pissart and Delport, two turbulent colonists, 371.
Place, the meaning of the word as used in Southern Africa, 18, note.
Plans for the improvement of Saldanha-bay analysed, 40.

Plettenberg's-bay, description of it, 201.
PoX-Adder, a remarkable kind of serpent, 35.
Poison of the horned-snake used by the Bojjesmans for their arrows, 93.
Poles, desertion of several from the Dutch army, and their strange mistake about the situation of their country, 221.
Polyphemus, a colonist likened to him, 137.
Population, an instance of its great increase, 113—Another, 147—Another, 172.
Poverty of the houses in the Lower-Roggeweld, 105.
Prammeberg, or Breast-mountain, why so called, 92.
Précocity of European products in Southern Africa, 60.
Prince, a colonist, the manner in which he was killed by an elephant, 226.
Prinsloo, a Hottentot, his activity in recovering property stolen from his master by the Caffres, 331.
Prussian Soldier, an old one named Winnekas, his hard fate, 213—Another Prussian soldier, by name Werner, 366.

Q.
Queen Mother of the Koossats' tribe, her great influence in the country, 296—Proof of judgment shown by her, 297.

R.
Ravine, a remarkable one in the country about the Berg-valley, 71—Another very extraordinary one, called the Kaiman's Cleft, 191.
Reefs, very dangerous ones below the sea on the Southern coast of Africa, 202.
Rhinoceros, the horn of, believed an antidote to poison, 86—Mischief done by these animals to travellers, 351—Manner of hunting them, 355.
Rice, a plantation of, in Southern Africa, 60.
Riet-valley, near the Cape-Town, Hottentot battalion there, 18—Another place so called, belonging to Mr. Jacob Laubcher, 48.
Roggeweld, middle, great want of trees there, 105—Poverty of the houses, ib. —Little Roggeweld, a terrace above the Karroo, 114.
Roodezand, remarkable descent of the mountain into the valley, 138—District and village described, 141.

S.
Saldanha-bay, arrival of the author and his party there, 33—Description of the bay, 35—Plans for its improvement analysed, 40.
Salt-lake, one near the western coast of the colony, 77—a more remarkable one on the southern coast, 335.
INDEX.

Salt-pans in the Groenekloof, 25.
Salt-pits, quantity of it in the ground, 67.
Savages, a Caffre chief, rebels against his nephew and king, 292.
Schade, a colonist compared to Polyphem, 137.
Schutte-berg, a remarkable mountain, so called, 132—Meaning of the word, ib. note
Scorpions, black ones particularly venomous, 80—Great number of scorpions among some ruins, 319.
Shadows to be found in Southern Africa, 69.
Ships, in Saldanha-bay, 44
Shields, a Caffre one described, 218.
Silvareiver, why so called, 193.
Slater, John, Le Vaillant's friend, 29—His aged mother, 30.
State, houses in the Rosgorgold built of it, 106.
Stave, a remarkably old Malay, 50—Another, 168.
Snake, its pursuit of a mouse and fascination of it, 220—A curious lemon coloured one caught, 353.
Soldier, an old Prussian one at Saldanha-bay, 45
Sound-field, why so called, 63, and note.
Southwind, its deleterious effects, 349.
Spandumountain, description of it, and why so named, 366.
Spanish sheep introduced into the colony, 81.
Spoonbrush, used by the Caffres, Appendix, 12, note.
Springbok, or mountain deer, described, 310—
A perfectly white one taken by General Janssens, and sent to the Museum at Paris, 317.
Spurting snake, or spugslang, curious account of, 95.
Streetfields, why so called, 62, and note.

T.

Table-bay, seen at a great distance, 52.
Tva, very much drank by the colonists, 106.
Teefontein, the estate of Mr. John Van Reenen, 31.
Termes fatale, or white-ants, curious account of them, 62, and note
Theron, a colonist, his kindness to the travellers when they had lost their way, 81.
Thigh-tongues, a dainty in the colony, described, 97.
Tholy, a Caffre chief, comes to visit General Janssens, 310—Makes a second visit, 315.
Thunberg, the traveller, grateful recollection of him by a colonist, 86.
Thunderstorm, a very remarkable one, 222.
Torrents of rain, instance of destruction occasioned by them, 344—

Travellers, the, lose their way by night, 78—
Kindness shewn by a colonist on the occasion, 81—Fatiguing route the next day, 82—They lose their way by night a second time, 174—
Uncomfortable night spent by them in a half-ruined farm, 227.
Travelling, different in Africa from other countries, 7.
Tree-snake, one caught by the party, 160.
Tribes, different Caffre ones enumerated, 297.
Twenty-four-rivers, fertile district of, 58.

V.

Vander Kemp, the missionary, his institution near Algoa bay, 233—Extraordinary account of him, ib.—Wretched state of the institution, 238.
Vander Merwe, a remarkably tall family of that name, 150.
Van Reenen, his place at the Klavervalley, 24—
Mr. Jacob Van Reenen's Travels into Caffria, 25—Attention of the brothers Van Reenen to agriculture, ib.—A fine stud of horses at his place, 25—Mr. John Van Reenen's estate at the Teefontein, 31—Another remarkable stud belonging to the same person, 91—Daniel Van Reenen's fine breed of horses, 165.
Van Stade's river, and lead mines near it, 229.
Verklaring, papers of impeachment against each other kept by the colonists, 378.
Vultures, the travellers often followed by them, 130.

U.

Uitenhage, the family name of the Commissary-general, a new district to be called by it, 234.
Unicorn, improbability of its existence, 167.
United Brothers, Society of them, 151.
Uylekraal, the house of Conrad Laubscher, 30

W.

Waggon used for travelling in Southern Africa described, 13—Manner of floating them over the deep rivers, 54—Curious mode of getting them through the Kaimau's Cleft, 191.
Waterfall, one described and recommended to the attention of travellers, 144.
Werner, an old Silesian, his garden at Graaff-Reynett, 380.
White Ants, extraordinary account of them, 62.
Witsemberg, a remarkable mountain, 138.

Z.

Zoetemelk, fertile valley of, 158.
Zellendam, description of, 163.

THE END.